



MANAGEMENT PLAN THE ŠALEK CASTLE RUINS, SLOVENIA

February 2020



The Local Cultural Heritage Management Action Plan was drawn up within the scope of the HICAPS and RUINS projects, which are co-financed by the Interreg Central Europe programme.

Participants

Prepared by Velenje Museum, represented by Mojca Ževart, director
Created by Rok Poles
Municipality of Velenje Helena Knez, Patricija Halilović, Urška Gaberšek, Branka Gradišnik, Marko Vučina, Darja Plaznik, Jernej Korelc, Rudi Vuzem, Bojana Žnider, Drago Martinšek
ZVKDS OE Celje (Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage, Celje Regional Office) Danijela Brišnik, Breda Krajnc, Urška Todosovska-Šmajdek, Milana Klemen, Lucija Čakš Orač
Šalek Tourist Association Marija Brložnik



muzej
VELENJE



MESTNA OBČINA
VELENJE



REPUBLIKA SLOVENIJA
MINISTRSTVO ZA KULTURO

Index

5	Part I: GENERAL OVERVIEW
5	Use and reuse of cultural heritage
6	Use and reuse of ruins: a short (Eurocentric) historiographical excursus
13	Part II: POSSIBLE USE AND REUSE OF THE ŠALEK CASTLE RUINS
16	Documentation of the Šalek Castle ruins
16	Geographical position
21	Material elements of the Šalek Castle ruins
27	Testimonials
27	Sources: reports on Šalek Castle, old depictions and maps, folk tradition, ...
82	The history of Šalek Castle
111	Location genesis (landscape analysis)
111	Cadastral analysis
115	Geological development of the landscape matrix and natural elements, crucial for settlement
115	Cultural landscape development
121	Facility genesis
121	Development and collapse stages of the ruins
126	Castle building composition analysis
133	Non-material heritage bound to Šalek Castle (motifs review)
135	Explanation
135	Analysis of Vischer's depiction of the castle
139	Castle's collapse
140	A flat (2D) reconstruction of the castle's appearance and architectural details
142	Computer generated spatial (3D) reconstruction of the castle's appearance
145	Determining the meaning and value of the heritage
145	Artistic significance
147	Historical significance
153	Social/symbolic significance
153	Scientific/research significance
153	Heritage significance
154	Heritage proclamation/legal protection
156	Protected area in spatial acts
157	Protected area in land register
158	Ownership of the area
160	Condition assessment
162	Problem identification
162	Archaeological research
163	Urgent renovation and development
163	Possible changes on the level of building details
168	Building level castle ruin reconstruction (architectural reconstruction)
173	Landscape level castle ruin reconstruction
177	Forest edge/forest area management
178	Interpretation possibilities (interpretation potential)
179	Additional events possibilities
180	Increasing the involvement of the ruins in traditional events
181	Inclusion in non-Slovenian programmes for heritage popularisation
182	Electronic information platform and a wholesome castle ruins graphic image
184	Temporary interventions

186	Part III: MANAGEMENT PLAN
186	1. INTRODUCTION
187	2. DOCUMENT SUMMARY
187	3. GENERAL DESCRIPTION
188	4 STARTING POINTS FOR THE MANAGEMENT PLAN PREPARATION
188	4.1 European acquis
188	4.2 Slovenian legal basis
189	4.3 Other documents and expert bases
190	5. PARTICIPANTS IN THE MANAGEMENT PLAN PREPARATION AND EXECUTION
190	5.1 Participants in the preparation of the Management Plan
190	5.2 Participants in the execution of the Management Plan
191	6. CULTURAL HERITAGE - situation analysis and evaluation
191	6.1. The Šalek Castle ruins - artistic and architectural monument - description
194	6.2 Location and ownership of the monument
196	6.3 Broader context of the monument
143	6.4 Values and significance
196	6.4.1. Historical significance
196	6.4.2. Aesthetic significance
196	6.4.3. Scientific significance
196	6.4.4. Social significance
196	6.5 Analysis and evaluation of the situation
197	6.6 Protection and development measures
198	6.6.0 Baseline maintenance work
198	6.6.1 Safety of visitors and inhabitants
198	6.6.2 Legal status of the area
199	6.6.3 Information, guidance (infrastructure)
200	6.6.4 Contemporary arrangement of the environment and better utilisation of the area (interventions at the architectural detail level)
201	6.6.5 Castle integrity, tourist infrastructure (building level interventions)
204	6.6.6 Authentic access (reconstruction of landscape in imagined and actual image)
207	6.6.7 Intangible heritage (mythological path)
208	7. STRATEGIC AND OPERATIONAL MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES
208	7.1 Vision for the development of the Šalek Castle ruins
208	7.2 Strategic objectives for the development of the Šalek Castle ruins
208	7.3 Operational management objectives for the Šalek Castle ruins development in the 2019–2024 period
208	8. MANAGEMENT STRUCTURE, FUNCTIONS AND RESPONSIBILITIES
208	8.1 Manager
208	8.2 Technical Committee
208	8.3 Competencies, decision-making and implementation processes, implementation monitoring, duration of the plan
210	9. MEASURES FOR PROTECTION AGAINST NATURAL AND OTHER DISASTERS
211	10. ACTIVITIES PLAN WITH FINANCIAL FRAMEWORK
220	References (Literature)
223	Part IV: APPENDICES, EXCURSES
223	IV. 1: About a sundial that could also be used at night
229	IV. 2: Why is St Christopher from Šalek depicted as the provincial prince
233	IV. 3: Damage restoration tender after the castle fire in 1676
237	IV. 4: Further research possibilities

Part I: GENERAL OVERVIEW

Use and reuse of cultural heritage

CULTURAL HERITAGE:

Cultural heritage is the goods inherited from the past, defined by the community as a reflection and expression of its values, identities, religious and other beliefs, knowledge and traditions.¹ Heritage is divided into **tangible** and **intangible**.

TANGIBLE CULTURAL HERITAGE:

UNESCO's *Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage*² classifies cultural heritage into three groups, namely:

- monuments (architectural works, works of monumental sculpture and painting, elements or structures of an archaeological nature, inscriptions, cave dwellings and combinations of features, which are of outstanding universal value from the point of view of history, art or science),
- groups of buildings (settlements), and
- areas (an area whose character is the result of the action and interaction of natural and human factors)).³

In Slovenia, tangible heritage is registered in the registry of immovable cultural heritage and the⁴ registry of movable cultural heritage is not yet established.

INTANGIBLE CULTURAL HERITAGE:

Intangible heritage is intangible goods such as practices, presentations, expressions, knowledge, skills, and related movables and cultural spaces (where this heritage is presented or expressed) that are passed down from generation to generation by communities, groups and sometimes individuals and are constantly recreated in response to their environment, nature and history (folklore, oral tradition, language)⁵.

In Slovenia, intangible cultural heritage is registered in the registry of the intangible cultural heritage. The purpose of keeping the registry is to provide information support for the implementation of heritage protection. The registry is also intended for presentation, research, education, training and development of public awareness about the heritage.⁶

CULTURAL HERITAGE USE:

Cultural heritage is the foundation of European culture, its unity and diversity, its identities. Protecting heritage means preserving it for the future. The best protection of cultural heritage is its respectful use. Heritage in the cultural landscape cannot be avoided (or not used), as we live in the middle of it and use it on a daily basis (language, cultural practices, buildings).

CULTURAL HERITAGE REUSE:

It is only possible to (re)use what has not been used in the interim period. This means, for example:

- in the case of intangible heritage, the rediscovery or revival of forgotten customs and habits or words
- in the case of tangible heritage, such as monuments and landscapes, the restoration or revitalisation of ruins or degraded urban areas.

¹Zvezda Delak Koželj (2009), "Ethnology and Protection of Natural and Cultural Heritage", *Vestnik* (Ljubljana: Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage of Slovenia) XXI: 86, ISBN 978-961-6420-45-7, https://sl.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kulturna_dedi%C5%A1%C4%8Dina, 9/11/2017.

² <http://whc.unesco.org/en/conventiontext/>, 9/11/2017. Official Gazette of the SFRY, no. 56/74

³ European Landscape Convention - Florence Convention, 20 October 2000, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/European_Landscape_Convention, 17/11/2017.

⁴ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/European_Landscape_Convention#cite_note-Convention1-4, 17/11/2017.

⁵ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cultural_heritage, 17/11/2017.

⁶ http://www.mk.gov.si/si/storitve/razvidi_evidence_in_registri/register_nesnovne_kulturne_dediscine/, 17/11/2017.

Use and reuse of ruins: A short (Eurocentric) historiographical excursion

Ruins are the remains of architecture: once complete structures have partially or completely disintegrated over time due to lack of maintenance or deliberate destruction.⁷ A ruin no longer serves its primary role or purpose and will probably never have that role again. Ruins can be either useless or unused, abandoned old spaces without a modern role or lively parts of a new, modern life.

A ruin, recognised as heritage, is a space that is currently incomplete, abandoned, usually no longer maintained, and unlikely to ever perform its original role again or serve any purpose other than interpretation.⁸ The word SPACE means an area, landscape, building or other object, group of buildings or other objects and may include material contents, open space and views.⁹ Although the material tissue of the space is destroyed due to the inevitable exploitation and destructive role of time and the ruin is no longer useful, its tangible and intangible values (associations and significance for the local community) can be preserved.

We follow the creation and disintegration of space in successive overlapping cycles that create a space/cultural landscape as a palimpsest and testify to how fragile buildings and landscapes really are.

Over time, we can observe a different attitude towards the ruins. The ruins may be:

The basis for new building structures, like this Roman amphitheatre, which was transformed into a part of a medieval city. This relationship is almost reminiscent of modern paradigms about the customised reuse of ruins.

The market in the city of Lucca (Italy) inside an elliptically shaped Roman amphitheatre¹⁰



Building material source

(“recycling of buildings”, plundering of walls, ruins as quarries, spolia)

A Roman tombstone used as a spolia in the construction of Ljubljana Castle (Slovenia)¹¹



⁷ <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ruins>, 9/11/2017.

⁸ Johnston, Chris, Ian Travers, Jessie Briggs: Ruins, A guide to conservation and management, Commonwealth of Australia 2013, 7. <http://www.environment.gov.au/system/files/resources/e4e0fb1f-2553-4a3c-b454-2f7d630cdd6a/files/ruins.pdf>, 14/11/2017.

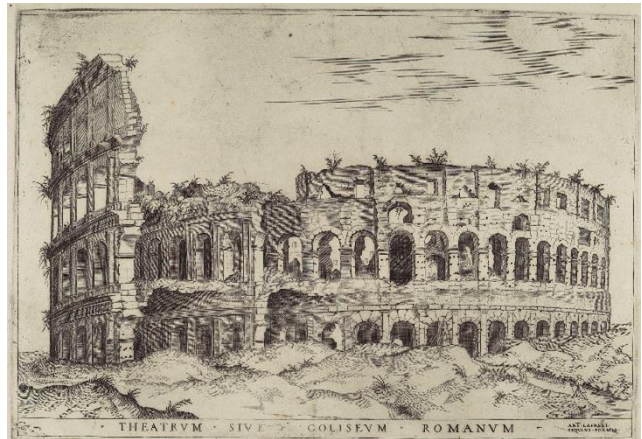
⁹ Burra Charter, a document that defines the basic principles and procedures for the conservation of heritage sites in Australia.

¹⁰ <http://www.bbarenalucca.com/>, 9/11/2017.

¹¹ Photo: Bojan Puhek, <https://siol.net/trendi/kultura/ljubljanski-predor-v-predoru-pod-gradom-foto-425898>, 11/11/2017.

An object of a scientific study, documentation and presentation that finally becomes the source/foundation of a new aesthetics/culture – as in the Renaissance, when the beauty of classical Greek and Roman architecture was rediscovered, or in neoclassicism and Romanticism, who adored, discovered and created picturesque landscapes.

Ruins of the Colosseum in Rome (Italy)¹²



An element of a romantic scenery (newly built park ruins)

Roman ruins" in the Schönbrunn park (Vienna, Austria), around 1800¹³



Excessive Victorian interventions (Gothic renaissance/neo-styles): unnecessary restoration of elements that are worn out, damaged or belong to later stages of the building's development, hypothetical reconstructions of missing elements or even the entire building. The objective was a restoration that achieves stylistic purity and creates a greater impression, and the result was often labelled as a forgery/lie.¹⁴

Carcassonne Castle, France, before and after the restoration work of architect Viollet-Le-Duc¹⁵



¹² [https://www.metmuseum.org/toah/works-of-art/41.72\[1.59\]/](https://www.metmuseum.org/toah/works-of-art/41.72[1.59]/) Engraving, 16th century 10/11/2017.

¹³ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ruins#/media/File:Ziegler_Janscha_001.jpg

¹⁴ *Douglas Kent: Conservative Repair.* <http://www.buildingconservation.com/articles/conservative-repair/conservative-repair.htm>, 13/11/2017.

¹⁵ <http://www.creme-de-languedoc.com/Languedoc/sightseeing/carcassonne-citadel.php>, 25. 11. 2017.
<https://www.reenchantonlaterre.fr/la-cite-de-carcassonne/>, 15/11/2017.

Conscious destruction/deliberate demolition due to changes in cultural practices – iconoclasm

– due to religious, ideological, political, aesthetic reasons,¹⁶ such as abolition of monasteries in England.

The ruins of Whitby Abbey, England¹⁷



Intentional demolition in order to avoid taxation

In some periods, buildings without a roof were not taxed, so the owners removed the roofs from old buildings for financial reasons.

Castle Luknja (*Luegg*). Due to the roof tax, the owner removed the roof after World War I and left the castle to decay.¹⁸



Intentional demolition in war or conflict

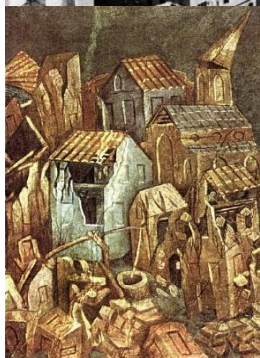
by shelling/bombing/blasting of urban areas, castles... Many castles in Slovenia were already during territorial conflicts of noble families.

Dresden (Germany) after World War II bombing¹⁹



Destruction of built tissue as a result of natural disasters (earthquakes), fires or ecological disasters (Chernobyl) - followed by technical removal of ruins as a part of redevelopment of the area or renovation/reconstruction of special former buildings.

Great Carinthian earthquake 1348 (destroyed 26 cities and 40 castles and churches)²⁰



After the Ljubljana earthquake in 1895, the city had to be thoroughly renovated.²¹



¹⁶ <http://www.tate.org.uk/whats-on/tate-britain/exhibition/art-under-attack-histories-british-iconoclasm>, 13/13/2017.

¹⁷ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ruins#/media/File:Whitby_Abbey_060615.jpg,

¹⁸ https://sl.wikipedia.org/wiki/Grad_Luknja

¹⁹ <https://www.theatlantic.com/photo/2015/02/remembering-dresden-70-years-after-the-firebombing/385445/>, 10/11/2017.

²⁰ Painting M. Wurmser from 1361/62, Karlštejn Castle near Prague in the Czech Republic.

<http://www.arso.gov.si/potresi/potresna%20aktivnost/potres1348.html>, 25/11/2017.

²¹ <https://siol.net/siol-plus/zgodbe/ljubljanski-potres-pred-120-leti-strasno-je-blo-16165>, 10/11/2017.

Degraded urban areas: ruins of modern buildings when maintenance is abandoned due to the decline of industries, changes in technology, resource depletion, etc. Areas of decay are sometimes celebrated and exalted as “ruin pornography”²² in the works of “ruin photographers”, “urban explorers” and other artists who emphasise the romantic/aesthetic/surrealistic aspects of demolished buildings in narratives of the inevitability of urban decay; about economic and ideological failures. The term “rustalgia” was even developed.²³



Leather factory Šoštanj, Slovenia²⁴

Ruins preserved as part of the modern landscape by carrying out modern restoration (preservation of authenticity/genuinity and integrity/wholesomeness)

New additions should complement the old tissue, not parody it, so as not to diminish the authenticity of the building. They should express contemporary needs in a modern language, which helps in avoiding artistic/historical confusion and adds new chapters to the building as a historical document. Contrasts in style and substances work well.²⁵



Old Castle Celje, Slovenia²⁶

Ruins cleaned and supplemented with modern tissue

The new structure simultaneously embraces and protects the original.

Museum Kolumba, Köln, Germany//Peter Zumthor²⁷



²² Exhibition title in Tate Modern, 2014, <http://www.tate.org.uk/whats-on/tate-britain/exhibition/ruin-lust>, 10/11/2017.

²³ Term taken after: Kate Brown Dispatches from Dystopia: Histories of Places Not Yet Forgotten (2015), after: Siobhan Lyons, Debbie does decay: what ‘ruin porn’ tells us about ruins – and porn, The Conversation, 18/8/2015, <http://theconversation.com/debbie-does-decay-what-ruin-porn-tells-us-about-ruins-and-porn-45776>, 10/11/2017.

²⁴ <https://get.google.com/albumarchive/103978736649183900494/album/AF1QipOK6Y-ENP2ronLXsFAQwpWertHNU96loYloXmGV/AF1QipM4uuDBiagaOG0eatTTm8Dzbsq58dv3RCi7H0I>, Sebastjan Kurmansek, 10/11/2017.

²⁵ Douglas Kent: *Conservative Repair*. <http://www.buildingconservation.com/articles/conservative-repair/conservative-repair.htm>, 13/11/2017.

²⁶ http://kraji.eu/slovenija/stari_grad_celje/slo, 10/11/2017.

²⁷ <https://www.archdaily.com/72192/kolumba-museum-peter-zumthor>, 10/11/2017.

The regeneration strategy focuses on preserving the existing tissue with all the patina of years and usage, and supplements it—where necessary—with additions in modern architectural language that should age nicely and blend in with existing structures.

For example: a new studio took the form of the original building, but in a surprisingly modern material, corten steel. The new part of the structure was placed as a separate structure in the shell of the existing ruin, which remained intact.²⁸



Dovecote Studio, Suffolk coast, England²⁹

Literal reconstruction: total physical reconstruction of the ruin, using historical documents and part of the original building tissue.

The 18th-century church was destroyed during World War II bombing. The ruins were left for 50 years as a war memorial. The church was rebuilt in 2005. Over 8,500 original stones were salvaged, and about 3,800 were used in the reconstruction. The builders relied on thousands of old photographs, memoirs of church-goers and church officials, and old orders that defined the quality of the mortar or pigments for the paintings. The rebuilt church is a monument to its own history and a symbol of hope and reconciliation.



Church of Our Lady, Dresden, Germany³⁰

Digitally reconstructed ruins: for scientific purposes and interpretation. Also useful in inaccessible places (or at least not accessible to people in wheelchairs) or in places dangerous due to the instability of ruins.

Using three-dimensional technology, films can be created to present the viewer with an idea of reconstruction of the area in question (films can be published online). 3D glasses can be rented for an enhanced virtual reality experience – to teleport the visitor directly into the Middle Ages.



Tremona-Castello Archaeological park, Switzerland.³¹

²⁸ Michael Davies: New Life for Old Ruins, <http://www.buildingconservation.com/articles/life-for-ruins/life-for-ruins.htm>, 10/11/2017.

²⁹ <http://www.buildingconservation.com/articles/life-for-ruins/life-for-ruins.htm>

³⁰ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dresden_Frauenkirche, 10/11/2017.

³¹ <https://www.ticino.ch/fr/commons/details/Parc-arch%C3%A9ologique-de-Tremona-Castello/109635.html>, 17/11/2017.

Fictitious ruins – computer simulation

A representation of an architect's nightmare created with computer image manipulation programs – there are even tutorials on “how to create modern ruins in Photoshop” ...³²

Ruins of Louvre, Paris, France³³

**Ruins created as an artistic object**
inside or outside.

Cold Dark Matter - Exploded View - Cornelia Parker³⁴

**Ruins as part of modern games: virtual and real**
Creating ruins (with a random organic look) from elements created for a precise fit, such as Lego cubes, is a challenge.

Obviously, the boundaries between interpretational techniques of cultural places and computer games are blurring: a visit to a ruin can be almost like entering a digital game scene.

Fictitious ruins in Lego form³⁵



³²<https://blog.designcrowd.com/article/1002/how-to-create-modern-ruins-photoshop-design-tutorial>, 15/11/2017.

³³ <http://www.telegraph.co.uk/news/2106000/Modern-ruins.html?image=6>, 10/11/2017.

³⁴ <https://www.flickr.com/photos/damiavos/16632422771/in/photostream/>, 15/11/2017.

³⁵ <https://www.flickr.com/photos/lazerblade/9251931984/in/photostream/>, 17/11/2017.

Volumetric reconstruction – just an illustration of former volumes without a new utilitarian function. By marking the edges/skeleton of the building or by illustrating the walls and arched structures (Roman ruins in Can Tacó,³⁶ Basilica of Siponto³⁷).



³⁶<https://www.archdaily.com/373090/adaptation-of-the-roman-ruins-of-can-taco-toni-girones/5193b50ab3fc4b3741000a2-adaptation-of-the-roman-ruins-of-can-taco-toni-girones-photo>

³⁷https://bari.repubblica.it/cronaca/2016/03/15/foto/siponto_di_notte-135555146/1/#1

Part II: POSSIBLE USE AND REUSE OF THE ŠALEK CASTLE RUINS

It is essential to carefully consider the direct and indirect consequences of any intervention in old buildings/ruins, as inappropriate interventions could seriously jeopardise different heritage values. In order to enable quality decisions to be made, an expert procedure has been developed to produce the necessary study, which will be used in the case of the ruins of Šalek Castle in the following steps:³⁸

Understanding the ruins

Understanding spatial tissue and its meanings is an essential first step before making any decisions regarding heritage management.

Recording and documentation

By making a recording, documenting and monitoring the ruin (all existing parts and their condition, including research on the archaeological potential), knowledge and information of the site is preserved and the meaning of the heritage is determined.

- Documentation on the preserved spatial tissue and its components: physical survey of the area and recording (archaeological, topographic, with landscape research techniques, photography, architectural image of preserved buildings, rectified photography (photography with perspective distortions removed), photogrammetry or laser scan...).
- historical documentation of the place and context: historical research (development of the place over time), oral tradition
- Ownership and heritage manager
- Official protection and relevant legislation.

Interpretation/presentation to the public

The explanation justifies the importance of the place—because the ruins are no longer fully preserved, they need to be effectively explained to the visitor so that he can understand them.

- Basic/minimum: a free leaflet written in plain language and translated into English, with a floor plan of the place and points worth visiting marked³⁹
- Advanced/classic: colour printed guide, explanatory boards, audio guides
- Extended/modern: 3D reconstructions shown in movies or with 3D glasses in the field, 3D models, heritage trails.

Assessment of the heritage importance/value

Cultural significance can be the aesthetic, historical, scientific, social or spiritual value of heritage for past, present and future generations.

- Aesthetic value: Aesthetics is related to a person's experience and emotional responses to a space because of its beauty, symbolism, picturesqueness or history
- Historical, scientific or research value: Ruins are sometimes the only physically preserved evidence of important historical events, phases or ways of life, technical achievements, former technologies. Important and new data on a certain aspect of the past can be obtained from the ruins.
- Social value: Strong specific links between community and heritage are the essence of its social importance
- Heritage significance.

³⁸ The structure is based on: Johnston, Chris, Ian Travers, Jessie Briggs: Ruins, A guide to conservation and management, Commonwealth of Australia 2013. <http://www.environment.gov.au/system/files/resources/e4e0fb1f-2553-4a3c-b454-2f7d630cdd6a/files/ruins.pdf>, 14/11/2017.

https://www.heritage.vic.gov.au/__data/assets/pdf_file/0021/61545/CMP_Guide_1278369664770.pdf

³⁹ Sarah Arthur: Heritage Inspired, Developing faith site tourism in South Yorkshire.

<http://www.buildingconservation.com/articles/heritageinspired/heritageinspired.htm>, 13/11/2017.

Heritage proclamation/legal protection

Legal protection is achieved by declaring the inheritance or its inclusion in the relevant heritage registry and spatial planning documents:

- the space needs to be described in such detail that its current state is understandable
- the word “ruin” should be explicitly included in the name so that the current situation is immediately apparent
- it is necessary to carefully define which parts of the space are important and which are not
- spatial integrity must be taken into account
- when the spatial meaning is determined, it is necessary to decide on the system of its management.

Condition assessment

- It is necessary to determine the dangers that threaten the building tissue (risk of collapse or failure of structural parts)
- protection of the ruin from weathering, fire and vandalism
- identifying all aspects related to the safety and health of visitors to the ruin and residents in its vicinity.

Problem identification

- Continuous building maintenance – including maintenance, ongoing repairs, restoration work and reconstruction
- new development – including additions, alterations and restoration of heritage or construction of new buildings/structures around the heritage
- proposed demolition or removal of part of the building
- proposed additional fortifications
- changes in spatial usage, including new uses or happenings
- excavations in the area of potential archaeological sites
- access requirements – including access for the disabled and emergency exits
- fire safety
- occupational health and safety requirements
- hazardous substances management
- energy efficient water and energy usage
- regulation of ownership relations for efficient ruin management
- risks due to special natural events – fire, floods, storms, drought
- protection against theft, arson or vandalism
- public use/tourism
- possibilities for further spatial explanations.

Maintenance and monitoring – principles and management plan

Procedures will be defined for:

- on-going monitoring and maintenance of the site – including defining when and how this will be carried out
- repairs, restoration works and reconstructions – works necessary to eliminate previously identified problems and works restoring the monument to its previous condition
- use – how the space will be managed and how the newly proposed content will be placed
- change management – how changes to existing buildings and the development of new facilities will be integrated
- interpretation – how the importance of the area will be explained/justified, in general and in public
- public involvement – how to involve the neighbours or people who are in some particular way associated with the ruins
- ongoing monitoring – how the interventions will be documented, how the results will be monitored
- management and decision-making – how management structures will work to achieve an effective decision-making process
- defining the necessary work resources.

Intervention plan

The intervention plan defines how and when the activities necessary for the implementation of the principles of protection will be carried out.

Archiving documents and presenting decisions to the public

is an essential part of caring for a heritage site. It is necessary to include:

- complete documentation of the space
- maintenance works minutes (date, performed intervention, contractor, estimated and actual costs, results achieved)
- regular inspections and monitoring (what was inspected, when, what was found, what interventions are needed)
- current issues (new issues, decisions, interventions).

Periodic inspections, audits, updates

In a period of 5–10 years, it is necessary to include changes in the regular process due to:

- new research or data on the importance of space
- changes (e.g. wear and tear) in the condition of the space
- other causes.



Location

Current condition of the Šalek Castle ruins. Photo: web



Location

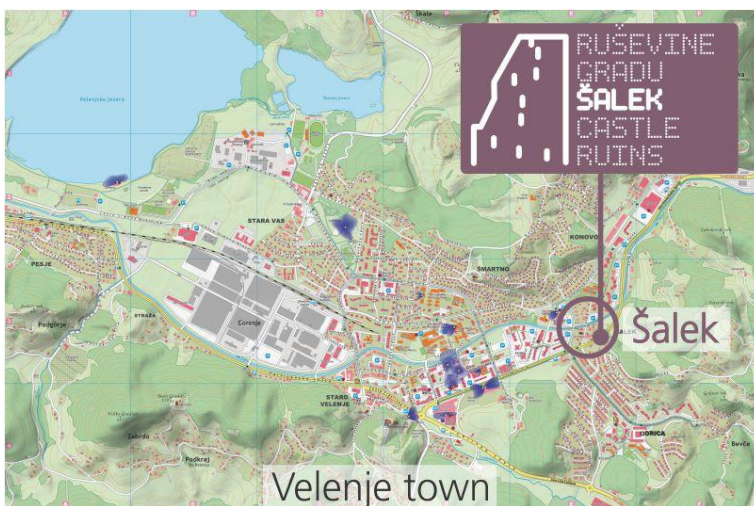
Documentation of the Šalek Castle ruins

Geographical position

The Šalek Castle ruins stand on the northeastern edge of the Šalek Valley. The castle was built on a ridge above the bottom of the valley, where the Paka river meanders from the gorge between Paški Kozjak and Tisnik. Strategically located high above the Šalek Valley, the castle was well protected and dominates the valley.



Position of Velenje⁴⁰ / Šalek in Slovenia⁴¹



Location of the settlement and Šalek Castle in relation to Velenje⁴²

Today, Šalek village is part of Velenje town, but the Šalek settlement is much older than the modern town, created after the Second World War. Šalek was formed under the castle hill around the place where the old road to Carinthia could cross the river Paka without using a bridge.

⁴⁰Velenje is positioned between the cities of Celje and Slovenj Gradec, northeast of Ljubljana (approx. 55km of aerial distance) and south-west of Maribor (approx. 46km of aerial distance), the two biggest Slovenian towns. During Yugoslavian times—after World War II—the city quickly developed from a small settlement under the hill of Velenje Castle into a “socialist miracle” of modern urbanism and architecture — into a modern settlement for miners. During this time, all important public functions in the Šalek Valley were transferred from the previous centre of the valley, Šoštanj, to Velenje. It received the official status of a city in 1959 with the opening of a new city centre and Tito Square. Velenje is the sixth largest city in Slovenia and the seat of a municipality with approximately 30,000 inhabitants. A strong economy, with two of the largest companies being Gorenje (household appliances) and Premogovnik Velenje, is the main reason for pleasant and healthy living conditions in this young city. <http://www.velenje.si/en/>, 7/10/2017.

<http://arhiva.velenje.si/0-www-4/Datoteke/2015/Arch-guide%20Velenje-Poles.pdf>

⁴¹ http://www.osnovnasolasostro.si/ucenci/08-09/9a_Dremelj_Rok/galerija.html, 7/11/2017.

⁴² <http://www.velenje.si/za-obiskovalce/turisticna-karta-velenja>



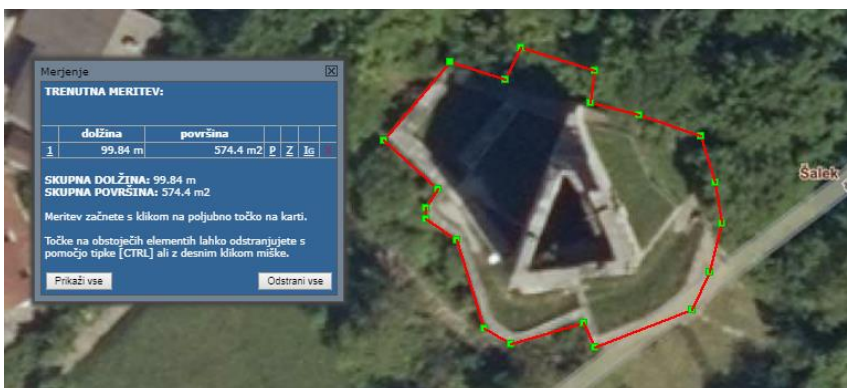
Access to the Šalek Castle ruins from the main road.

The current pedestrian access to the castle is along a wood-paved path with steep stairs. Driving directly to the castle by the car is not possible, because the area of the former access to the castle is currently privately owned (stonemasonry).



Šalek village is about 398m, and the castle is 434m above sea level⁴³.

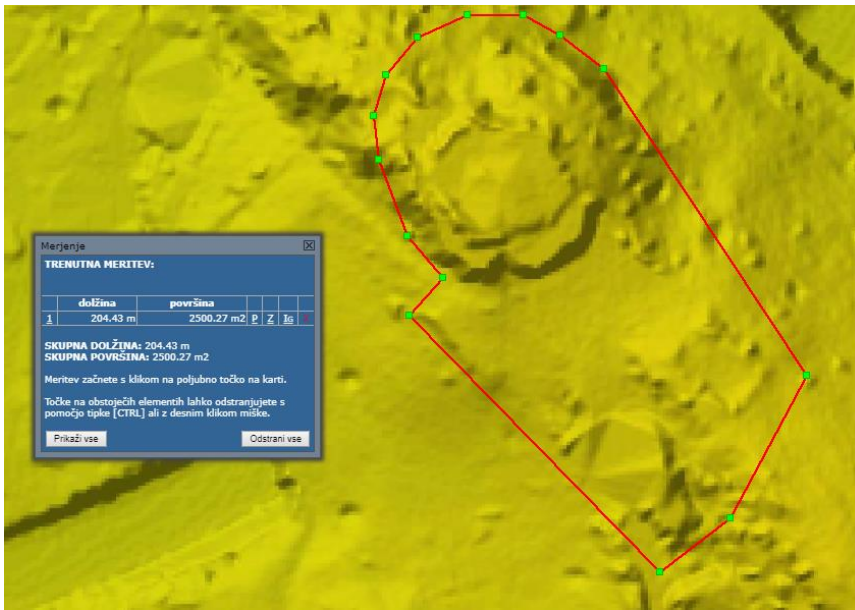
GEOLOGY: Šalek Castle stands on a small peak that ends the hill's ridge, going approximately in the direction north-west – south-east. The limestone rocks are more prominent on the western side, where there are also high natural fissures that probably extend quite deep into the hill's interior. Water erosion looks like a group of small caves. In the area where the building stands, smaller stone solitary confinement cells, covered with clay, are visible on the surface. Centuries of erosion have been grinding the hill and removing the upper layers of rocks, so that before the restoration, the castle's foundations hung over the terrain in several places. The slopes are overgrown and slide significantly into the depths like a ravine, right next to the building or even below it.⁴⁴



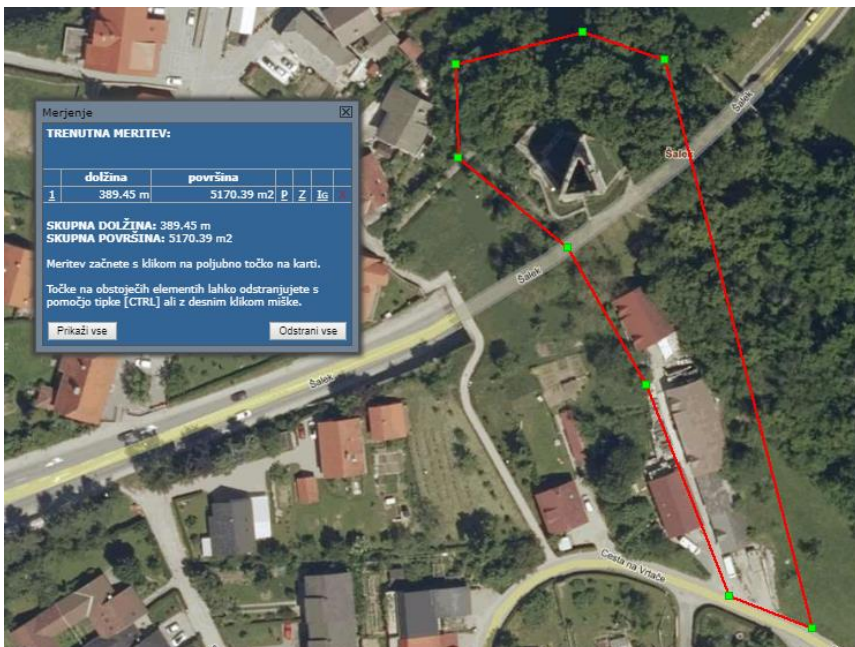
The central area of the Šalek ruin covers about 575m².

⁴³Information taken from: <https://www.geoprostor.net/piso/ewmap.asp?obcina=VELENJE>, 7/11/2017.

⁴⁴ Lojen, Poles, repair, 6, allegedly summarised after: Umek, Čačovič, Predlog.



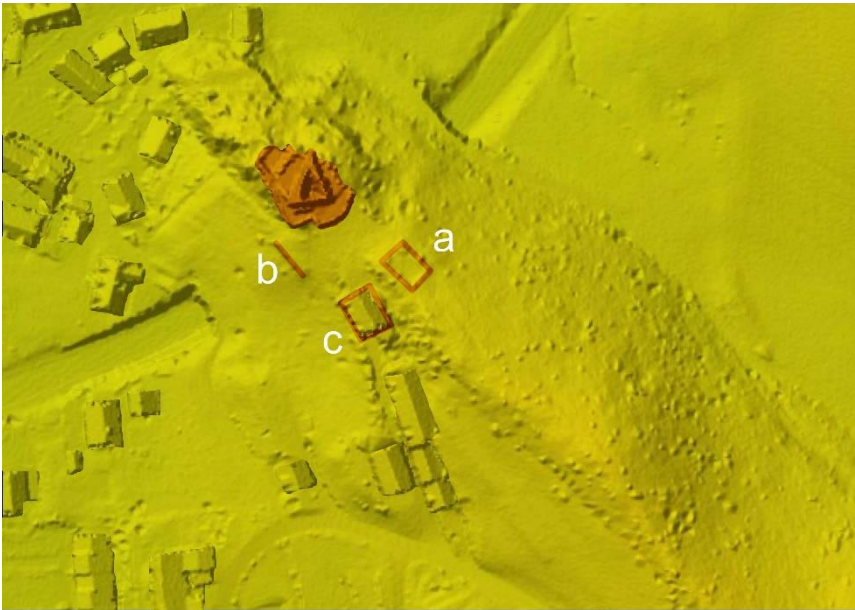
Area of ruins, including ancillary buildings in front of the castle and the former bridge covers about 2,500m².



The area, including the original/authentic access path to the castle and the rocky area around the ruin, which should be a (long-term) part of the managed area, covers about 5,200m².



Castle ruin area, marked on the LIDAR image of the terrain including vegetation.



By combining LIDAR images of bare terrain and surface, buildings can be preserved whilst trees are cleared and the remains of floor structures are exposed.

Southeast of the castle we can see the remains of the destroyed building (a), and on the south side are the remains of a separate wall (b). Another former outbuilding in front of the castle is hidden under a modern residential building (c). By defining these structures, the authentic path to the castle and the location of the former bridge are defined/could be reconstructed.



Remains of an ancillary building in the woods.



Comparison of authentic (white dots) and modern (red lines) access to castle ruins. Blue: position of the former castle bridge.

By covering the Franciscan cadastre through the LIDAR image, the entire original path from the Šalek settlement to Šalek Castle is revealed: it is almost completely covered by a modern road tunnel footpath, continues on the Cesta na vrtače and finally runs through the Podpečan stonemason's yard. The modern footpath to the castle is completely inauthentic and misleading. The beginnings of today's route to the castle can be found in the middle of the 19th century – in the display of the ruins on the poster of the Dobrna health resort (after 1854)⁴⁵ we see a visitor walking towards the ruins directly on the slope below the castle.

⁴⁵ Brišnik, Ravnikar, Šalek Castle, 23.

Material elements of the Šalek Castle ruins

Šalek Castle comprises of a building core, inner wards and an access corridor.

The **building core** consists of:

- first tower = triangular defensive tower (Bergfried, donjon – preserved almost to its original height);
- second tower = residential part of the building (only the basement is preserved);
- inner courtyard between the towers;
- inter-wall and outer strip of secondary buildings inside the wall (preserved floor plan disposition).

Inner wards consist of:

- Castle moat
- Bridge over the moat to the castle
- The ruins of a building in the inner wards
- Individual support walls (date=?).

Access corridor:

- Modern access is via stairs from the southwest
- The primary access was via a serpentinous path that approached the castle from the southeast.

The immediate surroundings of the castle is the castle rock area, which was bare (without forest) practically until World War II.

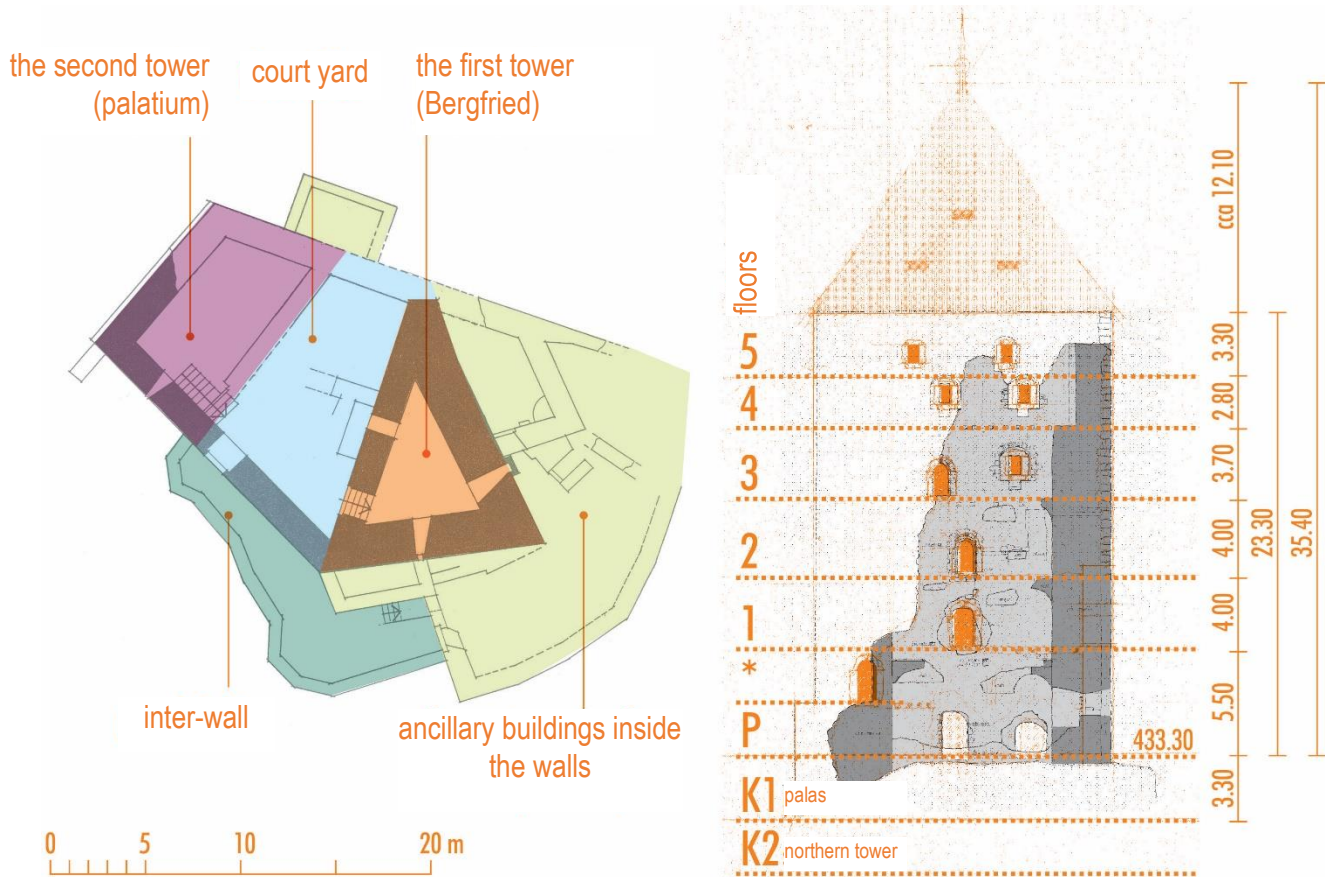
The wider surroundings of the castle is the whole area with quality views of the castle.

Each of the listed areas has its own preserved/potential qualities and it is necessary to determine the regime of spatial management.

The most important part of the ruin is the triangular tower. It had a ground floor and five storeys. The lower storeys were accessible with the help of a wooden staircase, placed outside the tower in the courtyard. This staircase also accessed the residential area and the defensive gallery above the courtyard entrance. The upper two storeys of the triangular tower had a steep internal staircase/ladder for vertical access. The tower had a wooden pointed roof.



Aerial photos of the Šalek ruins.



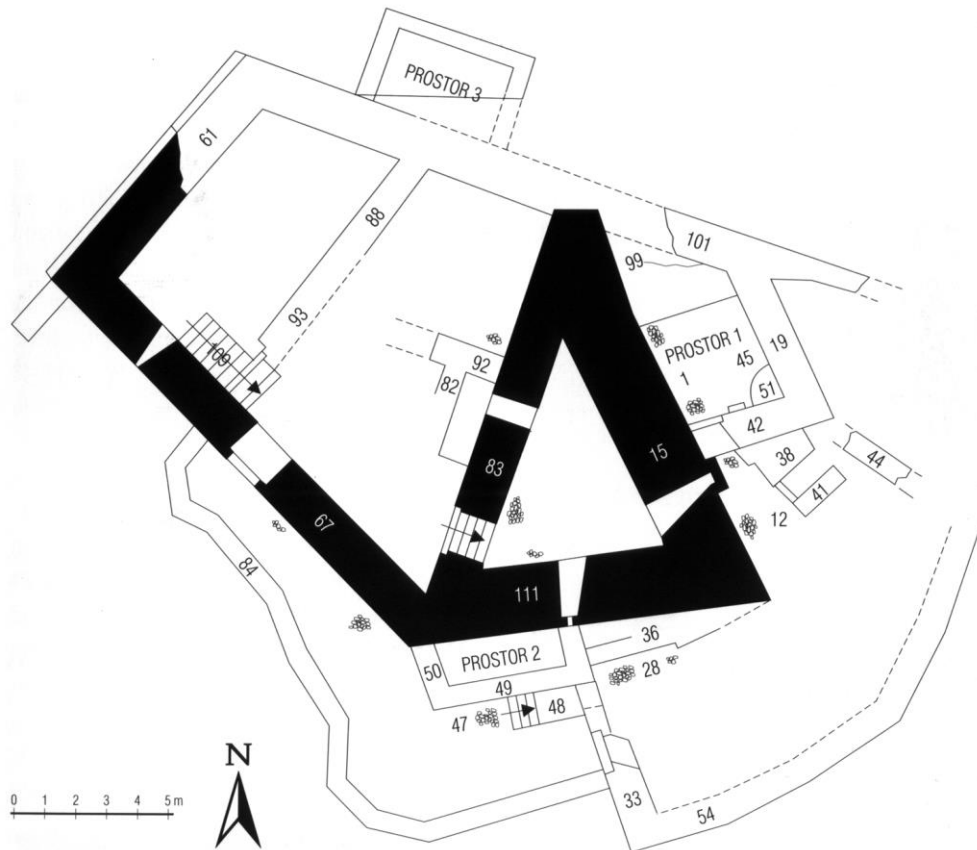
Ground plan and combined façade/cross section with key facility information

	altitude (m)	floor height (m)
roof top	468.70	
wall top	456.60	
5th floor	453.30	3.30
4th floor	450.50	2.80
3rd floor	446.80	3.70
2nd floor	442.80	4.00
1st floor	438.80	4.00
Ground floor	433.30	5.50
1st basement	430.00	3.30
tower height – masonry part		23.30
tower height – roof top		35.40

Table with storey data and castle heights

“Archaeological research has partly confirmed the image of the castle from Vischer’s copperplate engraving – around the tower core compact residential buildings with a chapel can be found. A triangular tower with walls up to 2.50 metres thick, the foundation walls of the residential area, and smaller buildings and walls have been preserved. The excavation-based building sequence shows that the central triangular tower, on which the residential area, chapel and buildings on the east side of the triangular tower rested, and also the walls, were placed on an older foundation, which was later added and incorporated into the castle floor plan. Given it was not an older castle building, the foundation was needed, as they had to create a fortified terrace on a small mound to have the possibility of building a castle. With the help of architectural particles, well-preserved corner stones and only a hint of layering desire in the building, we can place the creation of the castle building in the first half or middle of the 12th century, which is confirmed by rare finds that only increase in number and structural richness at the end of the 14th century. Undoubtedly, the rock mound was inhabited much earlier, as that is clearly evidenced by fragments of hand-made pottery and a pot made in the scroll technique.”⁴⁶

⁴⁶Brišnik, Ravnikar: Grad Šalek, 1999, 73-78.



Ground plan of archaeological research and preserved structures at Šalek Castle, drawing by Ivo Gričar. ZVKDS OE Celje (Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage, Celje Regional Office). Source: Brišnik, Ravnikar: Grad Šalek, 1999, 35.

99 - the oldest wall on the castle hill, extending below the northern corner of the triangular tower

Space 1 leans against the east wall of the triangular tower, with walls **101**, **19**, **42** and has a stone floor. A small water reservoir (**51**) and animal bones were found near wall **19**

Space 2 is a small building (with walls **49**, **50**) near a 115cm wide stone staircase (**48**) in an inter-wall area with a stone floor (**12**, **28**, **47**) and a passage in the wall (**33**) connected to the southern defence wall (**54**, **84**). At the site of the stairs was supposedly a paved ramp. Wall **84**—the south-west defensive wall—is built directly on the rock, so it is not the correct shape and is not preserved anywhere in its original height between walls **38** and **41**, a part of the stone window/door frame is used as the threshold

111 Southern wall of the triangle tower

67 southern foundations of the residential area tower with a passage and firing line connected to the poorly preserved northwestern part of the wall, which allegedly continues towards the wall **101** – the relationship between the two walls is not clear as the northern corner of the triangular tower was severely damaged/partially completely destroyed. **109** - approx. 1.5m high stone stairs to the basement of the residential area tower, paved with stones.

88, **93** poorly built stone wall of the residential area tower basement

82, **92** a stone element functioning as stairs in front of the northern entrance to the triangular tower

15 eastern side of the triangle tower. Fragments of handmade (prehistoric) pottery were found on the east side of the wall.



Image 79: Exterior



Image 80: Exterior facade - NE



Image 81: Exterior facade - S



Image 82: Exterior facade - W



Image 83: Interior facade - SE: the only opening is the door from the interior to the exterior wooden defensive corridor



Image 84: Interior facade - S: 3 openings: two embrasures and a window



Image 85: Interior facade - W: communications were directed to the interior court yard. Two top windows are equipped with sedilias.



Image 86: Interior court yard



Image 87: Basement of the palatium tower



Image 88: Stairs to the basement of the palatium tower



Image 89: Embrasure in the basement



Image 90: Foundations of the building leaning on the northern side of the defensive wall



Image 91: The current entrance is actually a non-authentic gap in the defensive wall.



Image 92: Circularly finished door portal made of tufa.



Image 93: Chimney on the eastern facade of the tower.



Image 94: View through the three-sided tower.



Image 95: Remnants of arches made of tufa.



Image 96: Window with Gothic frame



Image 97: Passage through the northern corner of the tower



Image 98: Embrasure.



Image 99: White lime plaster on the tower facade facing the court yard



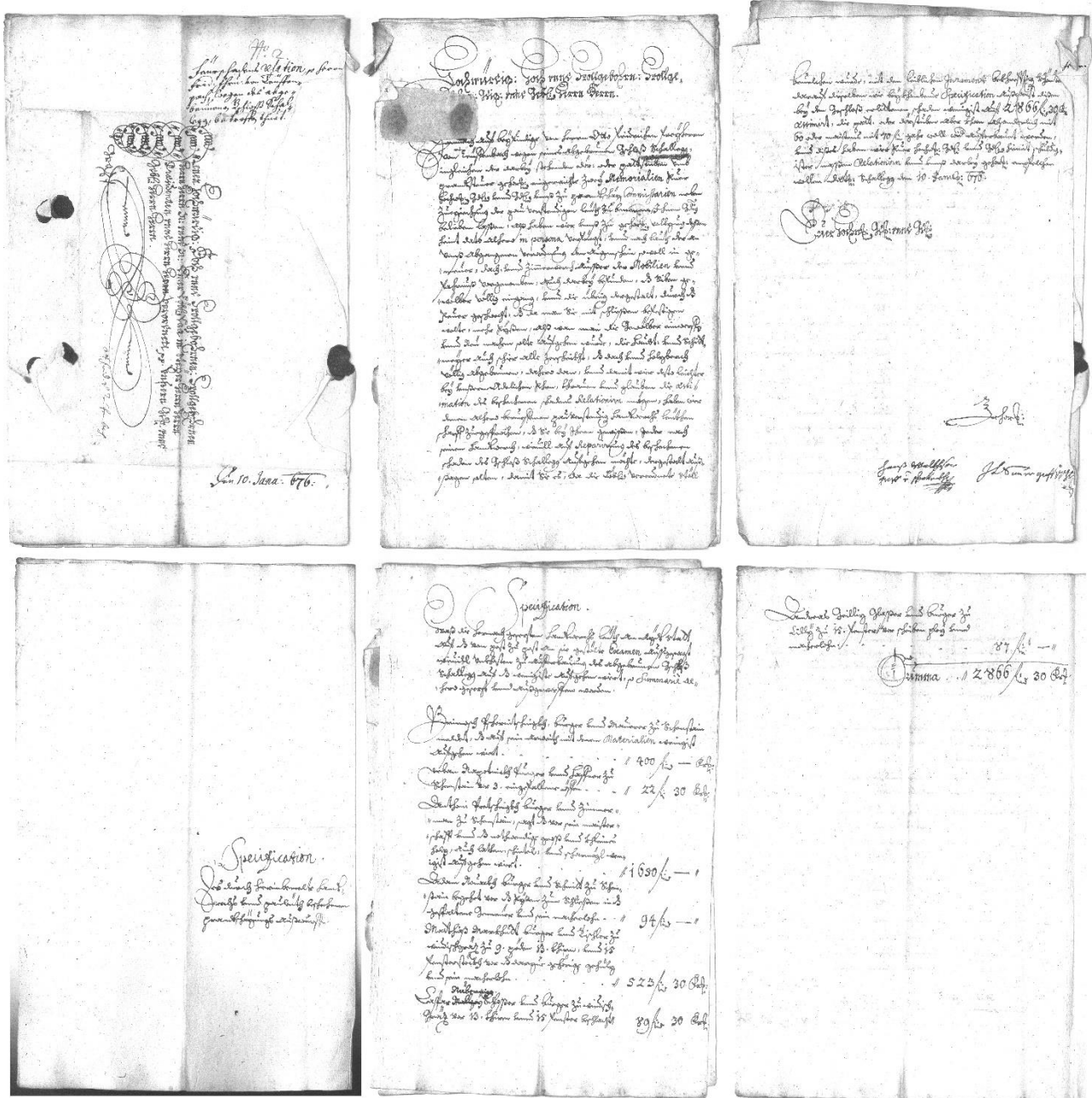
Image 100: building work of the opus emplecton type, clearly visible before the reconstruction: thick wall is made of three layers. First, two parallel walls were erected and the space between them was filled with stones and crushed rocks, quicklime was added and cooled with water - thus the filling changed into a monolithic conglomerate core which is however only poorly linked with stones in circumferential walls, which fall off.

TESTIMONIALS

Reports on Šalek Castle, old depictions and maps, folk tradition...

The reports are listed chronologically, which provides an insight into the development of knowledge/information about the monument and the relationship between information from different authors.

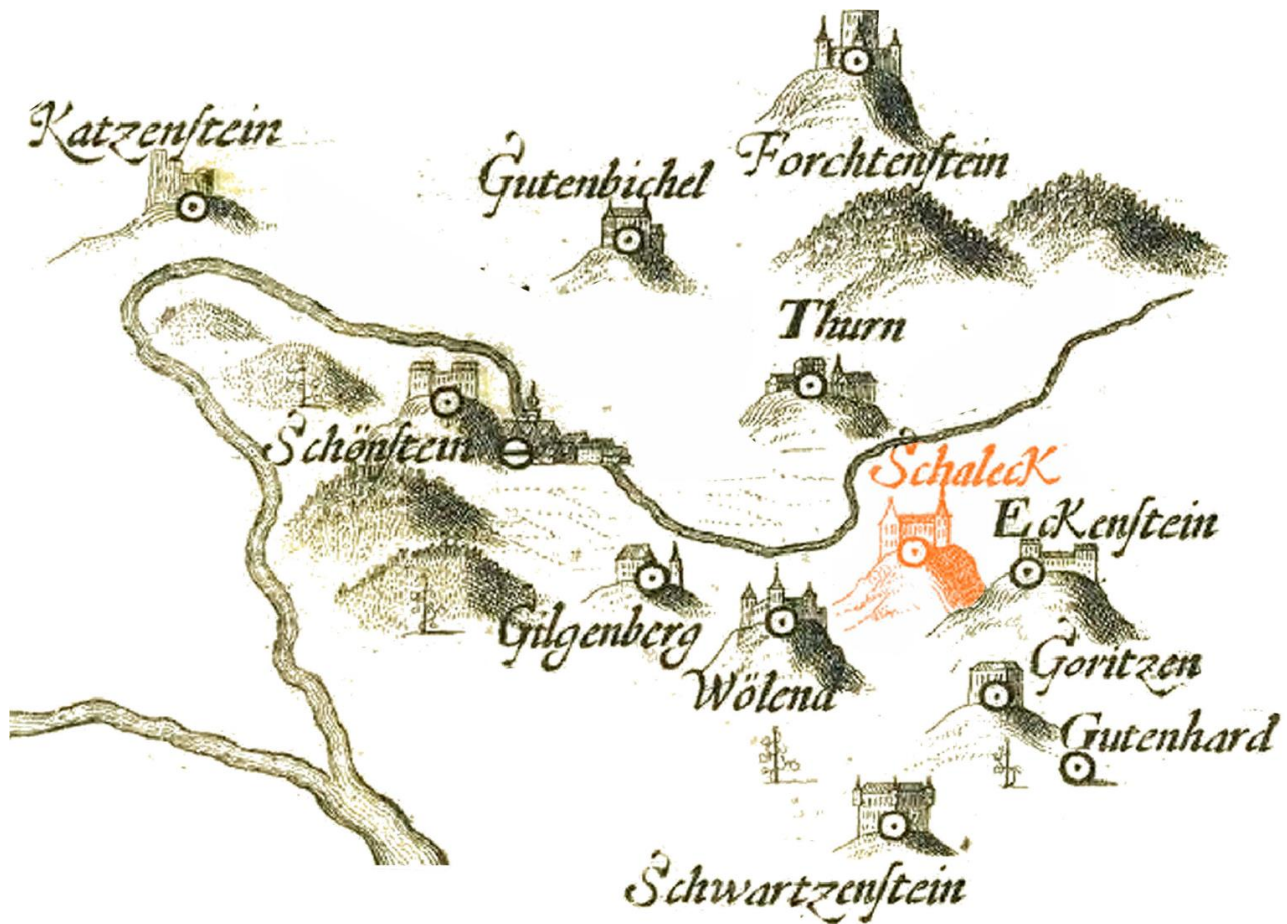
1676 Damage restoration tender after the castle fire in 1676 – the roof with the roofing burned in the fire, seven arches collapsed, the rest were so damaged by the fire that they had to be fixed, three furnaces collapsed, 13 new doors and 15 windows had to be made. More in appendix IV.3.



Laa. A., Antiquum, XIII, Sch. 146

1678

On Vischer's map of Styria from 1678, Šalek Castle is shown among other castles in the Šalek Valley. The valley was marked as the "valley of castles", as there were more castles here than anywhere else in lower Styria.⁴⁷



Castles and manors in the Šalek Valley on the map of G. M. Vischer from 1678: *Styriae Ducatus Fertillissii Nova Geographica Descriptio*.⁴⁸

⁴⁷ Orožen, Dekanat Schallthall, 26.

⁴⁸ https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Styriae_Ducatus_Fertillissimi_Nova_Geographica_Descriptio_1678.jpg, 18/11/2017.



Depiction of Šalek Castle on Vischer's map in 1678.

The two towers in the depiction of Šalek Castle are supposedly a triangular defensive tower on the right and a residential area tower on the left (highlighted in orange). Castelologist Ivan Stopar comments that the drawing is “completely unreliable and probably created *ad hoc*”⁴⁹ because for him Šalek Castle was a castle with one central tower— not with a central courtyard and two towers, as was later found, by archaeological excavations in 1991/92.

1678 Vischer's topography



Depiction of Šalek Castle in the work of Georg Matthäus Vischer: *Topographia Ducatus Styriae*. Grätz 1681.⁵⁰

The depiction in **Vischer's topography** is the last presentation of the castle, where the castle is still populated and with all the components.

⁴⁹ Stopar, Grad, 418.

⁵⁰ https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Vischer_-_Topographia_Ducatus_Styriae_-_374_Schallegg_-_Salek.jpg, 18/11/2017.

1763–1787 (Inner Austria - measurement 1784–1785)

Between 1763 and 1787, the so-called **Josephine Military Map** (= Josephine Survey) of the Habsburg Monarchy was created, in the scope of which the first accurate geographical presentation of the Šalek settlement and its surroundings was created.



The area between Velenje and Šalek on the Josephine Military Map.⁵¹



Šalek on the Josephine Military Map. Šalek Castle is marked as “castle” (Schlos), and Eckenstein as “old castle” (altes Schlos).

In addition to the drawings, there is also a descriptive part of the map. The report of the cartographer Bodoky, the ensign of the Lika regiment,⁵² who, as part of “section 163”, also measured, drew and described the area of Šalek, says:

⁵¹

<http://mapire.eu/en/map/firstsurvey/?bbox=1678653.1438722084%2C5836553.089734621%2C1687825.5872664298%2C5841416.395659266&layers=osm%2C1%2C73>, 5/11/2017

⁵² Rajšp, Slovenia, 41.

14. Šalek village

Distance: area of Paka near Velenje ¼, Bevče ¼, Velenje ¼, Konovo ½ (hours).

Paka near Velenje area

Solid buildings: St Martin with a one-storey parsonage, a church in Šalek, Šalek Castle, some brick houses in Šalek.

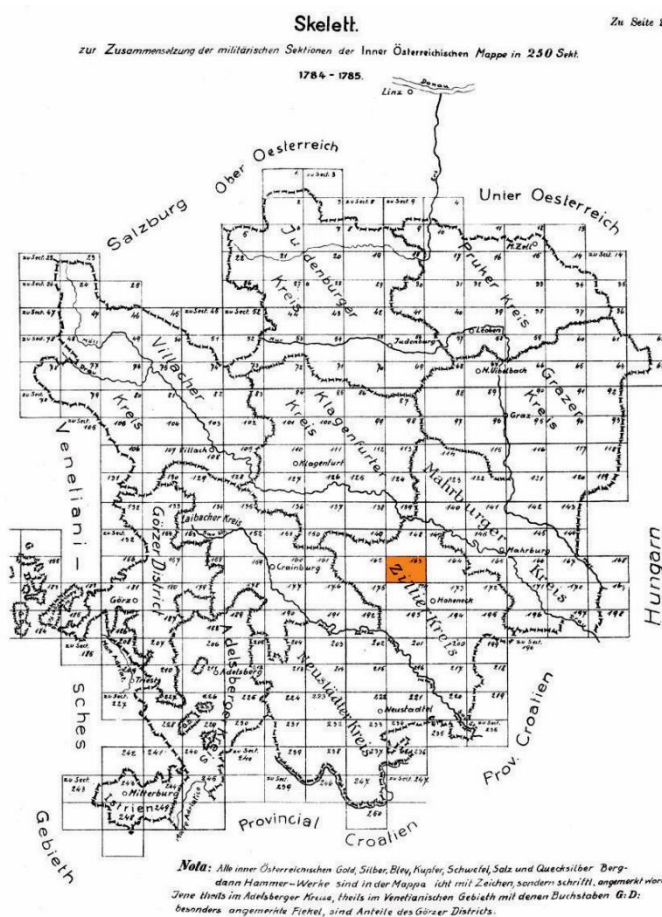
Waters: The Paka stream has a rocky bottom, a fast flow, is 10 to 15 steps wide, 2 to 3–4 feet deep⁵³, above Šalek the banks are mostly 3 to 4 feet high and steep, below the banks are lower. It is possible to cross the water without a bridge, as long as it isn't too high, at the mill in Selo and Šalek.

Paths: Paths towards the country road, towards the church of St Martin, then along the stream towards Velenje and Selo are good. From Selo upwards, the path is muddy, then mostly near the water, rocky and, therefore, difficult to pass. The one up there is a steep and mostly poor forest path.

The hills: hills above Šalek, the church of St Martin and Selo control the mentioned hamlets.

Forests: The forests are mainly high, but also lower and bushy around Selo.

Comments: Šalek Castle is a solid building on a small hill, not spacious, but it could accommodate a maximum of half a hundred soldiers.



Bodoky, therefore, still saw the castle as a “solid building” in which soldiers could be placed—they would probably not be placed in a fire pit or a ruin. The survey of Inner Austria took place between 1784 and 1785 – the description is from that time.

The description also draws attention to the important fact that it was possible to cross the river (actually the stream) Paka in Šalek, meaning to cross it without a bridge. The bridge was drawn in Velenje, but not in Šalek, so in Šalek it was probably only possible to cross it on foot. This element was probably very important in the placing of Šalek Castle and village, as the castle is located just above this strategic traffic point. A very meaningful piece of information is also that a maximum of 50 soldiers could be accommodated in Šalek Castle—if the castle really had 36 rooms, as reported by Gadolla,⁵⁴ it would certainly have been able to house more soldiers.

Framework for the military measurement of Inner Austria in the years 1784–1785 with marked section 163, to which Šalek belongs⁵⁵

⁵³ The translation of the text states “steps”, the transcription in German says “Schuh”. Rajšp, Slovenia, 50.

⁵⁴ Gadolla, Šaleški, 238.

⁵⁵ https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/7/78/Josephinische_Landaufnahme_Belso_Ausztria.jpg

1786

Aquilin Julius Caesar: Beschreibung des Herzogthum Steyermarks, II del, Grätz 1786, page 501.

This is perhaps the first description/attempt at the history of Šalek, which has already launched, among other things, an episode with King Otokar, which, according to records, has been preserved until modern times.

Šalek (Scha^ellegg) a lordship belonging to Baroness Gablkoven, lying below Slovenj Gradec. In 1428, Eberhard the Second of Altenburg sold this estate, no doubt to the So^ebriachs, from whom in the 16th century it was [passed]to the Kuenburgs, and from the noble Dorothea Ku^enburg, a married wife of the noble Hans Kainach, together with Socka (Aunodt) to this family, i.e. the Kainach. However, he seems to contradict himself in something, as it is true: Mr Sigmund the noble So^ebriach bought Scha^ellegg from Janck the noble Perau. In 1468, this estate belonged to Mr Heinrich the noble Pfannberg, with Kaisersberg and Loschenthal, and was taken away by Otokar, king of the Czech lands.

82. Schällegg ein Gut, der Freyinn von Gablkoven gehörig, unter Windischgrätz gelegen. Im Jahre 1428. hat Eberhard der zewente von Altenburg dieses Gut verkaufet, zweifelsohne denen von Edbriach, als von welchen dieses Gut im 16ten Jahrhunderte auf die von Kuenburg, und von Dorothea von Kuenburg, des Hrn. Hanns von Kainach Ehefrau, an diese Familie samt Ainodt verfallt also Kainach. Er scheint sich aber in etwas zu widersprechen, da er lehret: Herr Sigmund von Edbriach habe Schällegg An. 1449. von Jancko von Perau erkaufet. Im Jahre 1268. gehörte dieses Gut Herrn Heinrich von Pfannberg, samt Kayfersberg und Loschenthal, so von Otkofar dem Könige in Böhmeim entnommen ward.

Josephine cadastre

for the tax municipality (Gornji) Šalek in the district of Celje, the tax district of Velenje, is kept by the Archives of Slovenia. Joh. owner of the Šalek lordship, is listed as the owner of only five plots (out of 331), and even with these he is listed with three different addresses: Zgornji Šalek 12, 32 and Škale 88.

Steuer-Gemeinde *Oberschalleg* Kreis *Ullsch*
Steuer-Bezirk *Wollmann* 10

Summariu

über die individuellen Ertrags-Bögen
aller Grundbesitzer
(in alphabetischer Ordnung),
dann aller ihrer Grundstücke
Anzahl, Flächen-Maß, einjähriger Ertrag, und jährliche Steuer.

Des Grundeigentümers			Aller Grundstücke							
Pflanz- und Wald- arten Nutz- weise	Zu-Name (in alphabetischer Ordnung) dann: Vor-Name	Gemein- schaft	Wohnort	Insgesamte Zehnte und Litzern der Matrikel	Anzahl				Flächen-Maß	
					Stück	Arten	Arten	Arten		
	<i>Dominij Šalek (Ullsch)</i>		<i>Zgornji Šalek</i>	<i>199 200 201 202 203</i>						

Shareholders summary: Dominij Šalek is the owner of five plots

Plot inventory with owners: Dominij Šalek has one plot in III. meadow (Berunna) - Hutweide (pasture) and four plots in V. meadow (sa Krajam) - pasture Trebuša and under Mali Koželj and forests Veliki and Mali Koželj (velo Kashl, mali Koshl).

10 Steuer-Gemeinde *Oberschalleg* Kreis *Ullsch*
Steuer-Bezirk *Wollmann* 10

Grundertrags-Matrikel

der Steuer-Gemeinde *Oberschalleg*
welche zusammen gesetzt ist
aus folgenden Drefschaften
1. *Oberschalleg*
2. *Unterschalleg*
3. *Kencovin*

Karte- num- mer	Grund- stück- num- mer	Des Grund-Eigentümers		Zweck			
		Wohnort	Zu- und Vorname	Art	Größe	Ertrag	Steuer
III. Ried Berunna							
109	a	<i>Zgornji Šalek</i>	<i>H. Šalek</i>	<i>Hutweide</i>			
V. Ried sa Krajam							
120	a	<i>Zgornji Šalek</i>	<i>H. Šalek</i>	<i>Pasture</i>			
121	a	<i>Zgornji Šalek</i>	<i>H. Šalek</i>	<i>Pasture</i>			
120	b	<i>Zgornji Šalek</i>	<i>H. Šalek</i>	<i>Pasture</i>			
121	b	<i>Zgornji Šalek</i>	<i>H. Šalek</i>	<i>Pasture</i>			

1822–1823.

The Historical Topographical Lexicon of Styria by Carl Schmutz lists:

- where all the subjects of the castle were: Dobrova pri Slovenj Gradcu,⁵⁶ vinorodno območje Dollberg,⁵⁷ Konovo,⁵⁸ Preloge,⁵⁹ Prelska,⁶⁰ Završe,⁶¹ Črna [Črnova] pri Šentjanžu,⁶² Šentvid pri Valdeku,⁶³ Cirkovce⁶⁴
- what is the yield,
- (some) owners are listed: Berau – according to Wildenstein, they owned the Šalek lordship in the 17th century.⁶⁵ Mörth Reicheneck is said to have lived in 1931 and owned Šalek in 1464, in 1403 Count Herman of Celje granted Šalek to Kathrei, wife of Heirich Boßendorfer, and Agnes, wife of Jörg noble Altenburg⁶⁶, as the owners of Šalek cite Barons Racknitz,⁶⁷ Sobriach⁶⁸

Šalek, northwest [?] of Velenje, a castle and lordship united with the lordship of Turn. The subjects are in Dobrova (near Slovenj Gradec), Pesje, Konovo, Kozjak, Paka, Preloge, Prelska, Završe, upper and lower Šalek, Črna, Šentvid (near Valdek) and Cirkovce.

1023 fl[orins] 57 kr[eutzer] of the Dom[inical] and 83 fl[orins] 43 kr[eutzer] of rustic yield in 3 districts with 105 houses

Previous owners of this estate were the following [families]: Šalek, Eggenstein, Reicheneck, Berau, Sobriach, then Kainach, Bernegg, Ragnitz and Lamberg each with a quarter part, Alteburg and Bösendorfer with half each, then Teufenbachi, Ramschissel, Gabelkhofen.

In 1314, the owner of this lordship was Otto of Eckenstein with his wife Offney

In 1335, Niclas Schallecker and his brother recognised Herman and Ulrik of Celje as feudal lords of this castle

On St Jacob's Day in 1336, the Bishop of Lovrenc and Krka gave this fort to the Lords of Rifnik

On St Martin's Day in 1353, Niclas Kimberger received this feud from Count Friderik of Celje

On the Sunday after the Holy Ascension of 1371, Herman, Count of Celje, presented Martin of Rein with this castle

In 1449, Hans and Sigmund of Sebria sold this castle to Janko von Borau

In 1730, the lordship was owned by Otto Friedrich Baron Teufenbach of Maßweg, in 1750 by Maria Eleonora baroness Gabelkhofen, in 1780 it belonged to Leopold baron Gabelkofen, in 1799 to Ignatz baron Jauerburg and to his brothers barons Sigmund, Anton, Franc and Ludwik Gabelkofen, on 29 September 1802 it was purchased by Joseph Franz Bayer and on 5 December 1805 by Johann Nikolaus dell Negro.

The castle is depicted in Fischer's Topography.

⁵⁶ 1-252

⁵⁷ 1-254

⁵⁸ 2-183

⁵⁹ 3-211

⁶⁰ 3-225

⁶¹ 3-457

⁶² 4-225

⁶³ 4-250

⁶⁴ 4-434

⁶⁵ 1-111

⁶⁶ 2-300

⁶⁷ 2-242

⁶⁸ 4-19

1825

A **Franciscan cadastre** was drawn up, on which the plots of the castle (no. 54, 245 □ klafter) and the north part of the buildings in the inner wards (no. 55, 30□ klafter) are marked as the area of the ruins (Skalis).



Šalek, graphic part of the Franciscan cadastre (1825).⁶⁹

Nro in der Mappe.	Des Hauseigenthümers			Der Häuser und Gebäude		
	Vor- und Zuname.	Stand.	Wohnort.	Nro.	Gattung.	Areal-Inhalt mit Inbegriff des Hofraumes. N. Oe. - Quad. Jochs. Klafter.
54	del Negro Johann Michael	Landw.	Turn	54	Wohnh.	245
55	del Negro Johann Michael	Landw.	Turn	55	Wohnh.	30

List of building plots no. 54 and 55 in the textual part of the Franciscan cadastre (1825) for the cadastral municipality of Šalek.⁷⁰

In the textual part of the cadastre, Johann del Negro, who resides at Turn Castle, is listed as the owner of both plots with ruins.

⁶⁹<http://giskd6s.situla.org/giskd/>, 7/11/2017.

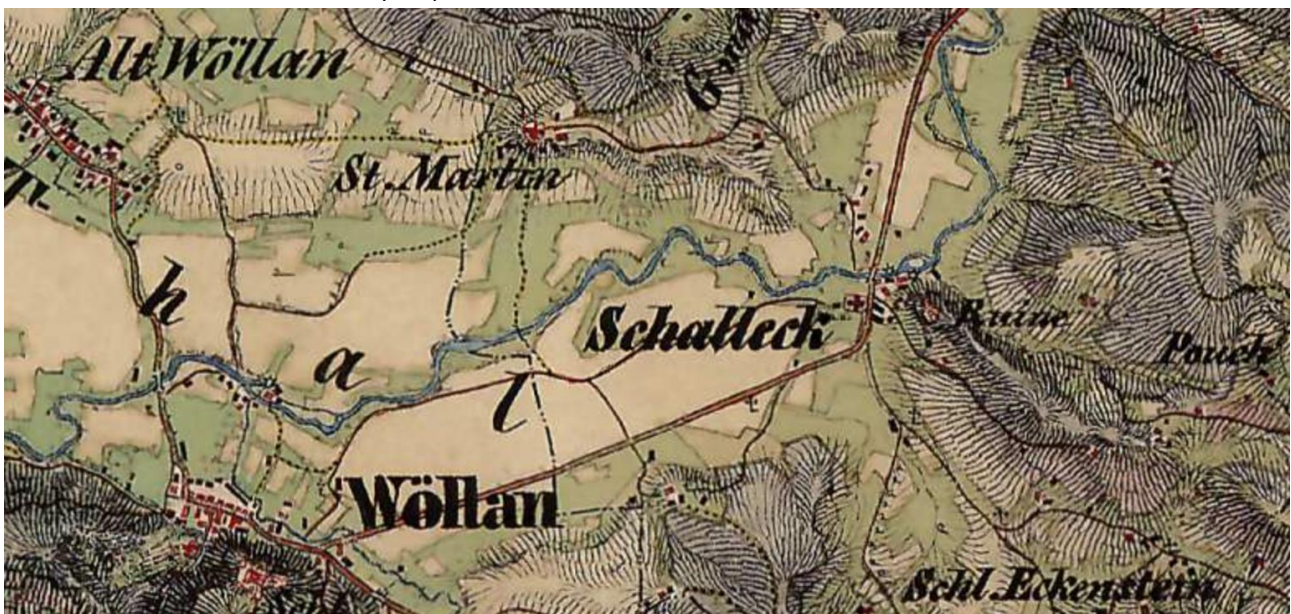
⁷⁰SI AS 177/C/F/C400/s/PT, <http://arsq.gov.si/Query/detail.aspx?ID=370626>, 12/9/2017.

Land		Bezirk		
Kreis		Gemeinde		
Alphabetisches Verzeichniß. Der Grundeigenthümer, und ihrer nach Sectionen abgetheilten Grund Parzellen.				
Parzellen- Nummer	Benennung der Section.	Des Eigenthümers.		Anmerkung
		Haus- Nro.	Name, Stand, und Wohnort.	
8		<i>del Negro Johann Michael,</i> <i>Sohn von Schallig, aufgestellt 9. d. d. d.</i>		
I.		103, 104.		
II.		582, 584, 585, 587, 590.		
III.		582, 584, 590, 592, 596, 597, 602, 603, 604.		

In the alphabetical list of landowners in the Franciscan cadastre, Johann del Negro is named "the owner of Šalek, residing in Turn."⁷¹ He owned plots with numbers 103, 104, 582, 584, 587, 590, 595, 596, 597, 602, 603, 604.

After 1825

Second military map



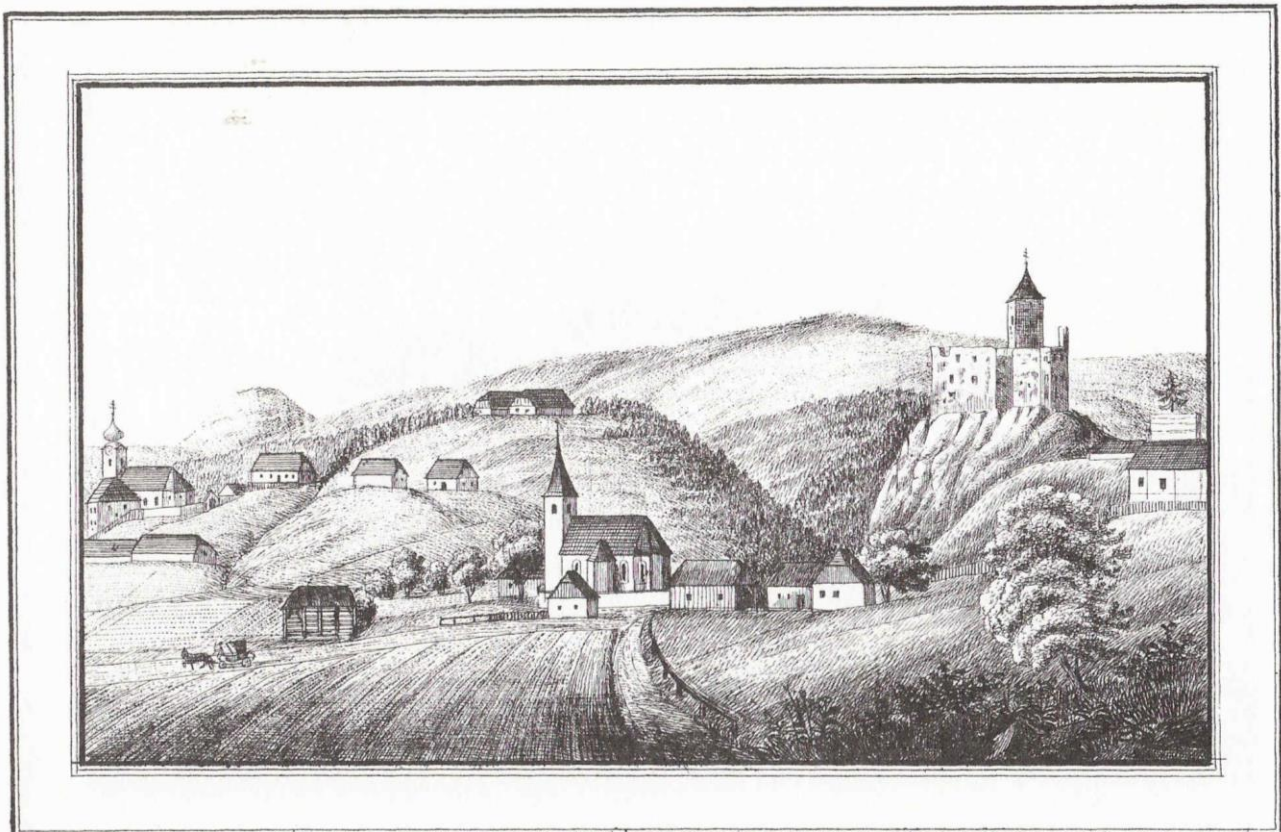
Second military map, 1806–1869.⁷²

A straight road, built in 1825, was drawn, continuing towards Huda luknja. As part of the construction of this road, a bridge was built in Šalek, which is now explicitly topographically marked. Grad Šalek is marked as a ruin (Ruine) and Vila Gorica has been marked as a "Schl(oss) Eckenstein".

⁷¹SI AS 177/C/F/C400/s/PUA, <http://arsq.gov.si/Query/detail.aspx?ID=370627>, 18/11/2017.

⁷²<http://mapire.eu/en/map/secondsurvey/?layers=osm%2C5%2C42&bbox=1680747.8069987248%2C5837209.375174973%2C1685334.0286958355%2C5839641.028137295>, 5/11/2017.

1830 Old Kaiser's suite



Gezeichnet v. J. E. Ganser Acad.

*Ansicht der alten Veste  Schallegg im Schallthale
mit dem Eingang in die neue Huda - Lachna Straße, im Liellier Kreiße.
dem Herrn Niclas Franz del Negro gehörig.*

“Drawn by J. E. Ganser, acad.

View of the old Šalek fortress in the Šalek Valley with the passage to the new road [through] Huda Luknja, in Celje district, belonging to Mr Nikolaj Franc del Negro”



Šalek, Old Kaiser's suite,⁷³ needle lithography

Del Negro seal
from subtitle to rendering

⁷³ Material for the book Ravnikar, Brišnik, Šalek Castle, archive R. P.

1840 New Kaiser's suite



Šalek, New Kaiser's suite.⁷⁴

⁷⁴ Material for the book Ravnikar, Brišnik, Šalek castle, archive R. P.

1847

Franz knight Gadolla: *Contributions to the topography and history of some castles and mansions in the Celje district.* Critically acclaimed and investigated, 1847. IN: Šaleški gradovi viteza Gadolle, Knjižnica Velenje, Velenje 2015.

Knight Gadolla was the owner of Turn Castle between 1845 (1846) and 1862 and thus still had insight into the castle archives lost after World War II. The manuscript, in which he described, among other things, the history and other characteristics of Šalek Castle, was sent by Gadolla to the Historical Society for Styria before 1851, but the Society refused to publish it.⁷⁵ After Gadolla's death, the "contributions" landed in the regional archives in Graz, where they were used by other researchers and castle descriptors, e.g. topographer Janisch (without reference to the source)⁷⁶ and Reichert (who only generally states that the authors of the texts are members of the Historical Society).⁷⁷

Writing is very important, as it is the source of some very popular stories/data copied by most later authors without reference to Gadolla: about the Turks attacking and their cannonballs repelling from the triangular castle, about lightning burning down the castle, about 36 rooms in the castle, about the origin of the name Šalek, etc.

*According to the story, **lightning struck the castle** and burnt it one afternoon when they were dancing inside. The fire was not noticed until the whole building, covered with shingles, was on fire. It is not difficult to imagine that most of the writings /... / were ruined on this occasion. /... / According to Vischer's depiction, the castle was in good, habitable condition at the time (1681). On the east side, you can see the drawbridge and to the right of it, at the beginning, three outbuildings, of which the foundations are still visible. The castle building itself was two storeys high, the triangular tower four, and on the east side stood a chapel, where a small tower can still be seen; it can be concluded from all of this that the castle was larger, and there were also **supposed to be 36 rooms in it**. The big tower still stands now and the old Niklas del Negro had it reroofed to last longer, but the roof is damaged again. This tower defies all the storms of elements with its strength, its walls are incredibly thick and strong, and therefore a perfectly preserved arch can still be seen. The entrance to the tower is now completely blocked, so you can only enter it using a ladder, through one of the windows. Outside, around the entire tower, there was supposed to be a stairway **with over 80 stairs**, which was covered with shingles and the kitchen had a pipe installed to have fresh water available from a distant higher-lying hill. On the north side, stood a tower with prison cells cut far down into the rock, and the cellar must have been excellent. The big tower is very tall, because according to Vischer, the end of the roof of other buildings reached the highest window of the tower, making it two storeys higher than other buildings. On the south side, three windows are visible on the tower (because they have remained hidden from other buildings), in the fourth storey there are two windows, one in the third one, other buildings have 17 windows and one door on the side where they are drawn. There's a tower above the chapel. The ruins of Eckenstein appear much closer than they really are /... /. There is also a story about Šalek that the fortress was **besieged by the Turks**, the walls of other buildings were destroyed by cannon shots, only the tower was not destroyed because the **bullets bounced off it due to its triangular shape**. If the story turns out to be true, this happened in 1643, when the Turks ravaged Velenje Square and besieged the castle. /... / Until they invented gunpowder, these castles were not difficult to defend and could not be conquered, but when cannons later appeared, the invincibility was over, because all these fortifications could basically be demolished from the nearby hills. /... /*

*There is no doubt that the first owners of this fort (Šalek) were the Šalek knight family itself, as the **name Šalek** is very significant due to the location of this castle, because it actually lies in the corner*

⁷⁵ The text from the Styrian regional archives in Graz was transcribed, translated and published in 2015. The Šalek castles of the Knight Gadolla, the Velenje library, 2015.

⁷⁶ Zimmermann, Gradola, 248.

⁷⁷ Reichert, Einst, III book, cover.

of the Šalek Valley. This valley was named many times ago Šaleška or Schallachthal, Slovenian Skaloh (Scalloch), hence the deanery of Škala (Scalis - Schalloch). It is probably obvious that this name does not come from Schalla (because in every valley you can hear a sound – an echo just like in other valleys). I think that the name would sooner originate from the Slovenian “skala” (rock) German Felsen, Stein, and when coming from Slovenj Gradec, you must first pass the rocks of Huda Luknja and soon as those end, there is a fortress in the corner of the valley - Šalek, although the valley itself is very fertile and beautiful.

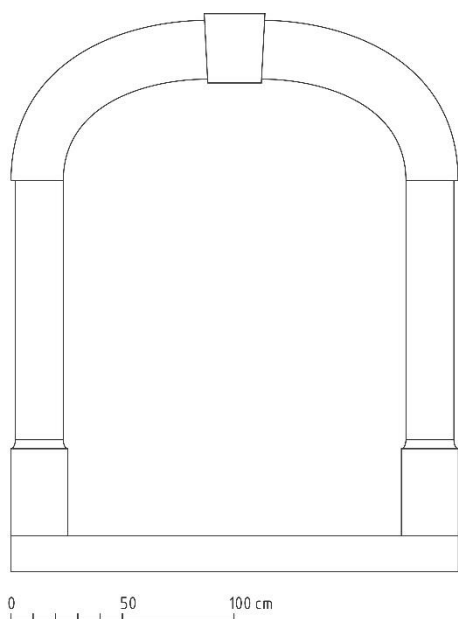
This reflection on the possible origin of the name Šalek was transcribed by Janisch.⁷⁸ Stopar (referring to Janisch)⁷⁹ explains that the word Šalek consists of two German nouns: Schall (= sound) + Eck (= corner), which together means “corner with a good echo” or that the name comes from the Slovenian word “skale”. He also emphasises the similarity between the names Šalek (castle) and Škale (seat of the deanery/arch-parish church), particularly used in the old files. Ravnikar added a similarity to the Latin word *scalae*, meaning rocks/stairs.⁸⁰

Then Gadolla lists the owners.

“It is a pity that the ruins of Šalek were destroyed so vandally and all the windows, frames, stones, in one word, everything that could explain the history of this castle, were broken not only by the former owner, but also by farmers from the area. Surely that's why quite a few inscriptions, inscribed years and letters were lost,”

says Gadolla, who, in describing the castles of Šalek and Turn, lists the stone-carved parts transferred from Šalek to Turn, which were then built in again:

Door frame in the cabbage cellar: “I found a stone arch of a very beautiful door frame (supposedly the main door at the drawbridge) a few hundred steps from the Turn manor under the walnut trees, where it was transferred by the previous owner Negro. It reads Erasemus Ramschüsel (crossed) 1620. I used it as a new door to the cabbage cellar. /Also in the arch of a beautiful stone frame, which I had built in 1846 to the new cabbage cellar door and which was also taken from Šalek, bore the letters of Erasmus Rambschüssl 1626, who was the owner of Šalek at the time./ What a beautiful frame with the inscription Erasemus Rambschößl Freyherr. In 1626, it was on the ruins of the Šalek Castle, which was broken off and transferred to Turn /... /.”⁸¹“



So where was the cabbage cellar on Turn, where the knight Gadolla had a portal from Šalek built in 1846? Let's see what we can gather from old depictions: In 1681, Vischer depicted the castle on a bare rock (a rocky hill), which is in line with the castle's primary defensive role – there had to be a “cleared space” around the castle to enable easier control over the estate. With Kaiser in 1830, there was a series of three terraces with a lawn or garden beams under the castle: they built retaining walls on rough rock, filled it with fertile soil and turned the area into a cultivated land (utilitarian role). With Reichert in 1864, we see that the surroundings right next to the castle were dug up and lowered so much that they were also able to open the basement floor to the outside, installing doors and windows. The resulting platform under the castle was supported by a strong wall. The depiction was created only three years after knight Gadolla sold the castle, so the

⁷⁸ Janisch, Topographisch, 803.

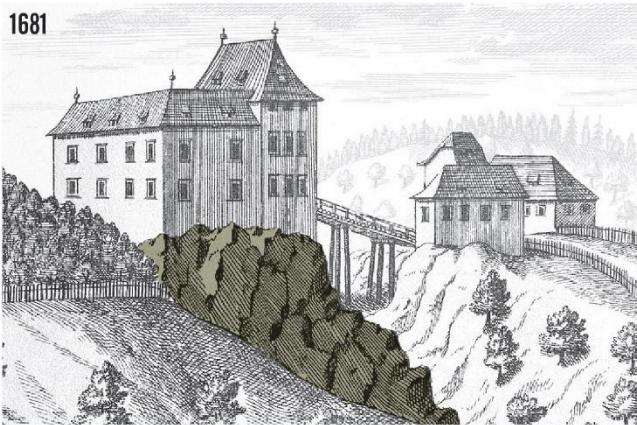
⁷⁹ Stopar, Grad, 8.

⁸⁰ Snoj: Etimološki, 405. Brišnik, Ravnikar: Grad Šalek, 1999, 22.

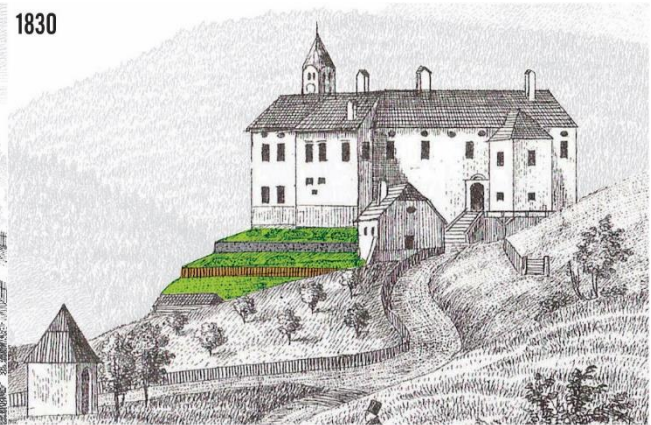
⁸¹ Gadolla, 109.

Portal drawing. The inscription is no longer visible, the portal may have been changed during the second installation.

transformation of the surroundings could be included in his set of interventions. The representative aspect now seems to have prevailed in the arrangement. So we found a newly built door in the cabbage cellar.



1681



1830



1864



2003

The depictions of Turn by Vischer, Kaiser and Reichert help to determine the location of the door to the cabbage cellar, where the portal from Šalek was re-installed

Stone staircase: "The former owner of the Turn and Šalek estates, Niklas del Negro, built a new stone staircase with only 11 steps in 1826 (using the stairs he took from Šalek), one of which has letters A and S inscribed, but without a year."



Stone stairs from Šalek, secondarily used at Turn Castle



Inscription on a stone step.

Doorframe of the laundry room: The year 1460 can also be seen on the left stone doorframe (Turn Castle), which stands at the entrance to the laundry room, except that the frame used to be in the ruins of Šalek, from where the previous owner Delnegro had it brought./As said in the history of the Turn lordship, the inscription can be seen at the entrance to the laundry room on a stone doorframe,

saying 1460 and A. W, but written quite small and in decoration (four-leaf clover),”⁸² - Gadolla continues to consider whether this monogram is of the owner (Janko von Borau) or a stonecutter’s sign.

Gadolla mentioned the tombstone of Rosina Ramschissl and copied the inscriptions on it.

On the wall of the cemetery of St Andrew’s church below Šalek, a tombstone is built to the right of the entrance with the inscription: “Here lies the noble Lady Rozina Uršula Ramschissl, born Wernegg, the Almighty granted her a joyful resurrection, on 16 August 1226 IA.⁸³ In the middle is the Wernegg coat of arms, and below is a damaged Latin inscription: I know that my Redeemer is alive and will be the last to rise above the dust. Then my skin will shake off the oil, clothed in my flesh I will look to God! (Job, 19,25-26)⁸⁴

Gadolla further mentions a votive painting from 1694, the two depicted beautifully dressed noblewomen are presumed to be the Teufenbachs, a mother and a sick daughter who made a vow to Mary. /.../

There is a very old house in the village of Šalek, which I immediately thought was something better in terms of the way it was built, as the gothic arched doors and windows suggested an upper class apartment /... / I found out that, as people said, more than a 100 years ago an old countess lived here.

Gadolla imagined the original surroundings of Šalek Castle as “without a doubt the densest oak forest, and the whole castle was hidden in the forest.⁸⁵ / Originally, Šalek was a much larger and older lordship than Turn.”⁸⁶

Gadolla also mentions the connection between Gutenpihl and Šalek, namely that “Gutnpihl is the manor of Šalek and in Slovene it is still called the Marovška manor.⁸⁷ / “/.../ it is said that it was once the manor of the Šalek lordship (which, together with a few subjects and winemakers, was sold and thus created the Gutenpihl estate). /... / After the death of Suzana Margareta Hochenwarth in Gutenpihl, the appointed prison and inventory commissioner Franc Jožef baron Adelstein compiled an inventory on 17 April 1738 and in the list of existing documents under item no. 5 “Transcript of an extract from the main land register of the Šalek lordship in the case of the easement of the Gutenpihl subjects and winegrowers of 10 March 1604.”⁸⁸

He also states that in Zavodnja “the lordship of Šalek (which has now been united with Turn for more than 100 years) still has 2/3 /... / tithes with Gornji grad.”

Erazem Ramschüßel is said to be married to Rosina, born Wernegg, and to have a daughter, Sibila, married to Frederick Gabelkhovn.⁸⁹

1854 Orožen, Ignac: Celska kronika. Celje, 1854.

Orožen summarises Schmutz (statements of the owners from the years 1355, 1353, 1371, 1403). 1459: On 10 July, the Emperor in Vienna confirmed to Leonard Raumschüssel the Raumschüssel court in the Šoštanj land register, as well as some other estates that his father Janez Raumschüssel had already received from Count Ulrik of Celje. (Arch. Für Kunde öster. G. Quellen, B. X. Heft I.) In the peasant uprising of 1635, the peasants allegedly robbed Šalek.

⁸² Gadolla, of Šalek, 57, 173.

⁸³ Transcript: HIE LIGT BEGRABEN DIE EDELGEBORN FRAV ROSINA VRSVLA RAMBSCHISLIN EINGEBORNE VON VERNEG DER ALMECHTIGE VERLEICH ICHR AIN FROLICHE AVFSTEHVING AMEN DEN 12N AVGSTI D 1626 IAR. Also Orožen, Dekanat Scahlthal, 146.

⁸⁴ Transcript: SCIO ENIM QVOD REDEMPTOR VIVIT ET IN NOVISSIMO DIE DETERRA SURRECTURUR SUM ET RVRSVM CIRCUM? MEA ET IN GARNE MEA VID?BO DEUM OVEVIS V?S SVMEGO IPS? ET OCVLI MEI CONSPECTVRI SVNT ET NON ALIVS IOB 19 CAP. - The tombstone was built into the church wall to the right of the outer entrance to the sacristy. In 1994, it was damaged by a stone, so it was transferred to the interior of the church, and then to the Velenje Museum, where it is presented in the Šalek Valley Between the 10th and 17th Century collection.

⁸⁵ Gadolla, of Šalek, 168-176.

⁸⁶ Gadolla, 68.

⁸⁷ Gadolla, 68.

⁸⁸ Gadolla, 90.

⁸⁹ Gadolla, 70.

After 1854 Dobrna spa poster



Depiction of the ruins of the castle on the poster of the Dobrna spa (after 1854).⁹⁰

1860 Leykam's suite



Šalek, Lekam's suite,⁹¹ lithography

⁹⁰ Brišnik, Ravnikar, Šalek Castle, 23.

⁹¹ Book material Ravnikar, Brišnik, Šalek Castle, archive R. P.

1864 Carl Reichert: *Einst und jetzt*. Album Steiermarks, III. book, Graz 1864.

Reichert's album depicts a ruin, the description summarises the story of a fire during a dance and the Turkish siege, when bullets were supposed to bounce off a three-sided tower, lists a few owners, and mentions the tombstone of Rosina Raumschüssel. Reichert states on the cover for the third book that the authors of the texts are members of the Historical Society,⁹² but he is probably summarising Gadoll's "Contributions".



Carl Reichert: Šalek Castle and settlement, lithography from the album *Einst und Jetzt*, 1864.⁹³

1865

the watercolour "Ruin of Šalek" is mentioned in the painting exhibition of the Styrian Art Association.⁹⁴

⁹² Reichert, EEAS, III. book, headline.

⁹³<https://www.dlib.si/details/URN:NBN:SI:doc-B9YJYQAJ>, 7/11/2017.

⁹⁴Gemälde Ausstellung des steirischen Kunstvereines. April 1865, Separat-Ausdrucj aus der Grazer Zeitung.

1860–70

A memory rose of Dobrna. Anton Burger, Graz.⁹⁵



"When the roses open, they contain filigree steelworks of magnificent bathing buildings and luxurious parks of our famous spas, memorial images demanded by the new bourgeois market in the second half of the 19th century. Both roses were published by Anton Burger from Graz and printed in Hamburg." The motif is taken from the new Kaiser's suite.

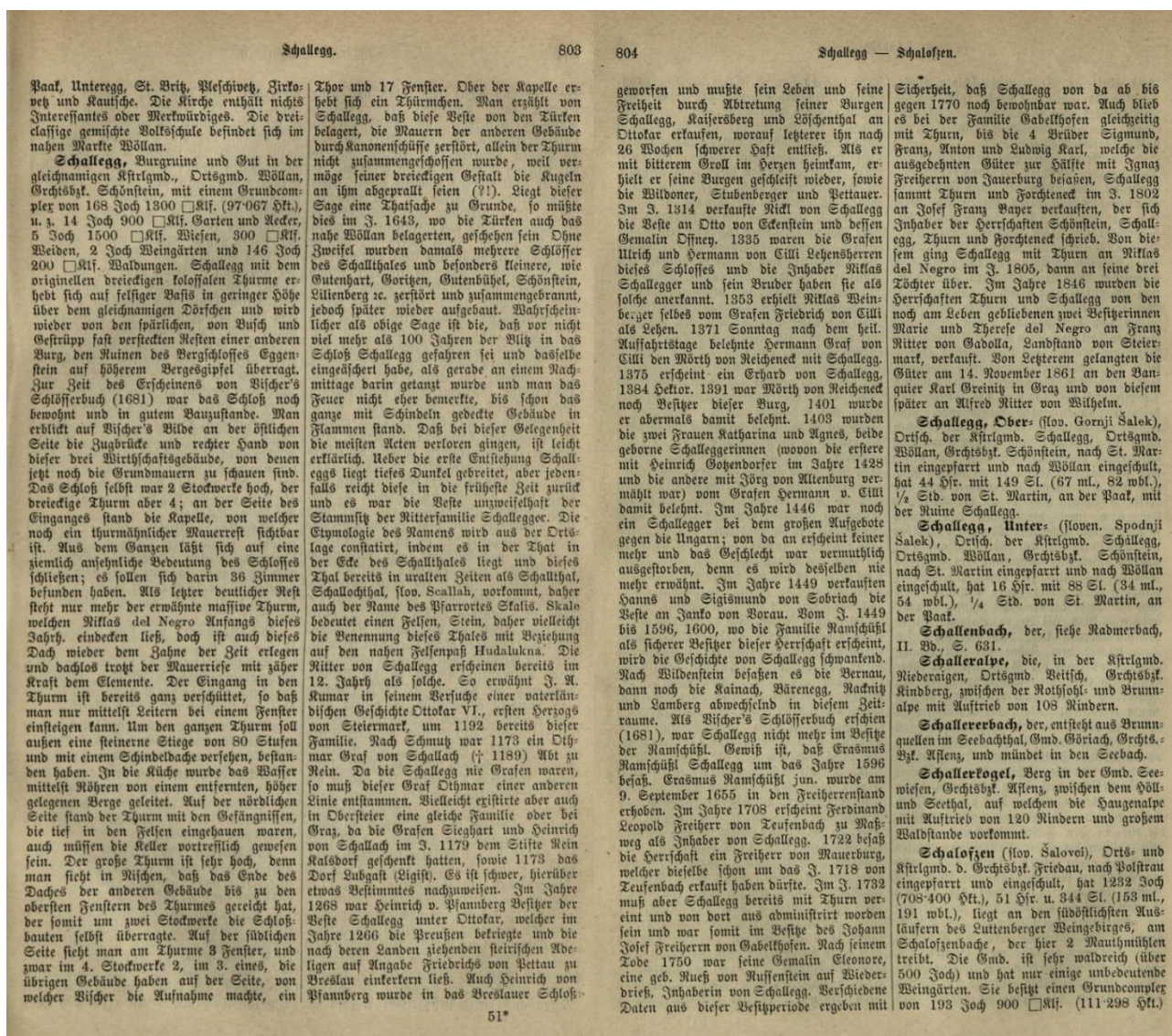
⁹⁵<https://www.nuk.uni-lj.si/izpostavljam/spominski-vrtnici>, 5/7/2019.

1878

Josef Andreas Janisch: *Topographisch-statistisches Lexikon von Steiermark, mit historischen Notizen und Anmerkungen, Gradec, Leykam, 1878.*⁹⁶

Šalek, castle ruin and lordship in the cadastral municipality of the same name, Velenje district, Šoštanj court district, with a land complex of 97.07 ha, of which 8.21 ha of gardens and fields, 3.42 ha of meadows, 0,11 ha of pastures, 1.14 ha vineyards and 83.22 ha forest.

Janisch often almost literally copies Gadoll's "Contributions" in the description of the castle; he mentions 36 rooms, a staircase with 80 steps around the tower, fire caused by lightning, cannonballs bouncing off the tower, the origin of the name Šalek and the owners.



⁹⁶ https://archive.org/details/bub_gb_6WLRRAAMAAJ/28/10/2017.

1884

Ignaz Orožen: *Das Bisthum und die Dioezese lavant.*, V. Das Dekanat Schallthal, Graz 1884, str. 147, 148.

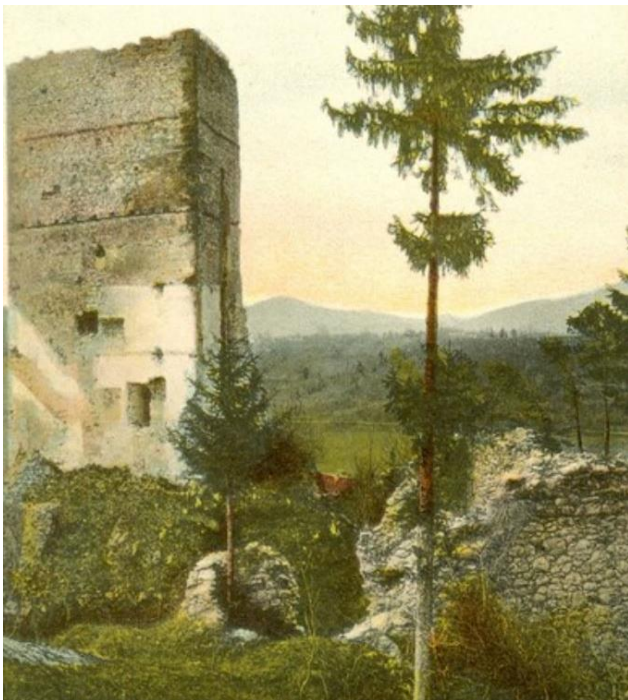
Ignaz Orožen (1819–1900) was a priest, historian and a writer who made an important contribution to the history of Styria.⁹⁷ The archives of the lordships in the Šalek Valley, which are lost today, were also available to him.

He pointed out that Šalek is one of the oldest castles in the country and was inhabited even at the end of the 18th century. The roof of the triangular tower collapsed around 1860, and only traces of the old chapel are now left. An old painting of Mary, a bell and a tombstone of Rosina Ursula Raumschüssel was given to the branch church of St Andrew in Šalek. Orožen describes the lordship (*same as Schmutz*), the detention cell (land registrar's from Šoštanj statement in 1575 about the Šalek detention: "*Šalek Castle also has a detention cell, but as soon as the offenders ("maleficent persons") are caught on this side of Paka, they must be handed over to Šoštanj*"), fishing area (*Šalek and Velenje had a fishing area in Paka 'to Hud[ičev]a luknja on the hanging stones below Valdek*") and the owners:

Ravnikar marks Orožen's data as obsolete.⁹⁸

Beginning of the 20th century

The first postcards⁹⁹ also show the condition of the castle ruins



Printed around 1910¹⁰⁰



Upper – sent in 1902,¹⁰¹ lower – issued in 1914¹⁰²

⁹⁷https://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ignac_Oro%C5%BEen. 7/11/2017.

⁹⁸ Brišnik, Ravnikar, Grad 1999, 21.

⁹⁹<http://www.knjiznica-velenje.si/3242>, 23/11/2017.

¹⁰⁰ Mihelak, Velenje, 55. The postcard is in the possession of Frenk Špiler.

¹⁰¹ Mihelak, Velenje, 19. Postcard from the Velenje museum archives.

¹⁰² Mihelak, Velenje, 56. Postcard from the Velenje museum archives.

1905

Otto Piper: Österreichische Burgen— 4, Wien 1905.¹⁰³

Otto Piper (1841–1921) was a German architectural historian and is considered one of the two founders of scientific research on castles.¹⁰⁴ Stopar points out that Piper's description of the Šalek ruin is the first professional description of any Slovenian castle.¹⁰⁵

33. Šalek (Styria)

The ruin lies on the corner of the Šalek and Paka valleys, opposite Velenje railway station with a well-preserved castle.

From the wide hilly massif rising above the village of Šalek is a steep, partly vertically sloping cliff, on which the real castle lay, separated from the inner wards. While at Riegesburg castle /... / the rock offered space for wide gardens, fields and pastures, here, in noteworthy contrast, it was spacious enough only for not much more than a triangular tower. This built core of the original castle design stands next to the insignificant remains of the walls still mostly intact and upright.

Due to the limited construction space, it was completely built up with a strong living tower; the founder of the castle apparently did not demand a large apartment and thus contented himself, at the same time saving on the walls, if at all, by arranging an insignificant residential building west of the tower. In order to make room for this, the tower could only be made in a triangular shape, although this of all the floor plans offers the least interior space in relation to the walls. Thus, it would not be inconceivable that, despite this, the tower was not the only residential building and would not form the entire castle with a small courtyard and stables to the west.

If, on the other hand, the scars left on the tower point to something completely different, to the walling almost to its full height, this undoubtedly belongs to a later time. Since the sharp corner of the tower was turned toward the access point—as in the case of Araberg and Finstergrün—in order to deter enemy missiles, we must conclude from the fact that the buildings were also built up in this part that the tower walls belong to the changes, made later. Extensions to the east and south have found space only on the steep edge of the castle hill, which is only about 6m high towards the slope of the hill, which significantly reduces the safety of the location itself.

As for the additions themselves, the depiction of G. M. Vischer from 1681 is quite credible. Thus, for example, there is still a recognisable sloping trace of the roof on the west side, where space was available only for a slightly larger residential building. The old depiction also shows a bell tower indicating a chapel, and—as it seems roofed—a wooden bridge leading over the now completely flat ditch.

The tower, whose northern corner is almost demolished to the ground, shows two more hooded arches inside. A few modest stairs now lead inside in the southeast corner to the door. There is a window-like opening, from which a chimney protrudes partly from the outside of the tower. This element has no replacement in comparable buildings far and wide. So there had to be a place for a fire here in the corner, maybe a hob—probably not originally but after breaking down the door.

The tower shows poor masonry, not made in layers, but mostly of small fragments; on the south-east, a leaning wall on the inside is a rough opus spicatum with unfilled openings and continuous bands of mortar.

Only a few remnants of walls protrude from the embankment on the castle hill, which is covered with ruins and dense bushes. Two decades ago, it seems, more was preserved. According to Janisch, Topographic-Statistical Lexicon of Styria, III, 803, “the remains of the chapel wall, similar to a tower

¹⁰³<http://daten.digitale-sammlungen.de/~db/0007/bsb00070356/images/index.html?id=00070356&groesser=&fip=yztsewqeaenewqxdsydewqyztseayae nxdsyd&no=17&seite=181, 7/11/2017.>

¹⁰⁴https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Otto_Piper, 18/1/2017.

¹⁰⁵ Stopar, Development, 13.

(?), were still visible.” It goes on to read: “On the north (?) side (of the tower) stood a dungeon tower, with dungeons carved deep into the rock, and the cellars must have been of excellent quality. The water was piped to the kitchen from a distant, higher-lying hill. The castle is said to have 36 rooms. Around the entire tower there is supposed to be an external stone staircase with eighty steps and covered with a shingled roof.”

The last two traditions are certainly incorrect, the last one being a completely imaginative representation, and is completely unimaginable, when related to towers.

The unroofed building next to the farm house should now belong to the outbuilding depicted (Vischer) (without walls).

The family named after the castle is mentioned only at the end of the 12th century. In the campaign of the Czech King Otokar III against Lithuania in 1267, he had Henry of Pfannberg imprisoned in Wroclaw and released him only after twenty-six weeks, while destroying his castles of Šalek, Kaisersberg and Löschentel.

While there are castles that have remained in the ownership of one family since its founding, in contrast, Šalek is one of those that have constantly passed from one owner to the other. Thus, Janisch lists more than twenty different names of families who owned the castle in various ways over time, among them the feudal lords of Celje were owners for a long time.

Interestingly, in the case of three- and five-sided or angle-aligned four-sided towers, the tradition was preserved that during the Turkish siege—in 1643 they were in the vicinity—cannonballs destroyed the remaining buildings, but they were not effective on the tower because they bounced off it due to its triangular shape.

The castle was still inhabited around 1770. It was then supposed to be burnt by lightning, because the dancing inhabitants noticed the fire only when the whole building, covered with shingles, was already in flames. At the beginning of the last century, the tower was still newly roofed. Later, the ruins served as a quarry for the nearby village.

Since the 18th century, allied with the nearby Turn lordship, the castle now belongs to the noble Mr Lapp.

An important Eckenstein Castle ruin is also included in the (Vischer's) depiction. It does not in fact, lie on such a steep and high, accentuated rock cone, and only a low ruin now remains of it. The two neighbouring castles form one of many examples of the supposedly mutual support and joint defence of the “castle groups” built. As far as is known, they have never been in a mutual relationship with the owners.



From the Otto Piper report on Šalek (1905).

1936

Janko Orožen: Castles and manors in the national tradition, Celje, 1936.

When Janko Orožen worked as a teacher at the Celje Grammar School, the students collected folk tales about castles for him—this is how the collection of fables about Šalek Castle was created.¹⁰⁶ Among the fables are also those about the Turks and the lightning that burned the castle—both are almost literally taken from Gadolla/Janisch.

Construction of Šalek Castle (written by Franc Skaza)

Valentin, a nobleman, once lived at Šalek Castle. He ordered the farmers to come and build him a large tower. The subjects also came from Turn Castle to help. The workers were plenty. They were supervised by the young count's daughter, who treated the subjects very badly; whoever rested only a little, had to ride the donkey. The donkey was made of wood and had a very sharp back. They tied up their feet under the donkey's belly so they couldn't jump off. Many have bled to death on the donkey.

Once the countess had an old subject tortured. At that time, the earth opened up and devoured the cruel young lady.

We can still see the abyss that the count had dug to try and save his daughter.

Underground corridors (written by Franc Povh)

The most powerful castle in the Šalek Valley was Šalek. This castle had underground connections with other castles. The largest underground tunnel led to the Fire Castle, the ruins of which are located a few hundred metres up the hill.

Because the castle is cursed, the tunnel is, of course, cursed too. Brave boys tried digging up the treasure, supposedly hidden in the tunnel, on several occasions. But whenever they dug up the ground to the tunnel, they heard drumming in it, got scared and ran away.

Castle outposts (written by Franc Povh)

¹⁰⁶ Orožen, Gradovi, 119-122.

The Šalek gentlemen had their posts in the villages too. So at Oštir (as they now call the house) in Šaleška vas, there was their granary.

In the same village, they had a tower from which the gentlemen called their hunters to hunt, using a horn. Later on, the people from Šalek built up a church next to the tower. On a pillar near the church, the gentlemen in ancient times had a statue of St Christopher, protector of sobriety. This statue was supposedly very large, for St. Christopher used a rather thick oak for as a walking stick.

Turks besiege Šalek Castle (written by Franc Povh)

They say that the Turks once besieged Šaleški grad. The whole building was blown up, only the tower could not be touched; because of its triangular shape, all the Turkish bullets bounced off it. If there is any truth to this, it happened in 1643, when they besieged nearby Velenje.

Lightning destroys the Šalek Castle (written by Franc Povh)

The story has it that they danced in the castle a hundred and fifty years ago. There was a storm and a castle was struck by lightning. But they did not notice the fire until the whole roof, made of shingles,

was in flames. The archives were also all burnt that day.

This story may be real. After that fire, the castle was no longer being renovated.

A Šalek gentleman curses the castle, his wife and daughters (written by Franc Povh)

In the 16th century, the Turn and Šalek gentlemen were very famous. They were related because the Turn gentleman had a princess wife, the daughter of the Šalek gentleman. They were very much like friends, but they were both passionate actors.

One day, they acted the entire day. Towards the evening, they were already in such passion that they each pledged their property. So it happened that the tournament was won by the Turn gentleman.

He won Šalek Castle and its entire estate. The gentleman of Šalek became terribly angry and in his anger cursed not only the manor of Šalek, but also his wife and his three daughters, princesses. They are still cursed, and the count moved elsewhere.

Ninety years ago, an old lady lived. Around the corner of her house, which stands below the castle, she saw a once damned countess in a black dress, mixing gold coins in a tub with a cooker. The old lady got scared, and she wanted to run away. The old lady took courage and stepped closer to the countess, who told her that she would have saved her if she had not gotten scared and fled. She would've got all the gold coins.

The same old lady once saw the cursed princesses riding around the castle in a black carriage.

The cursed noblewoman (written by Franc Nedoh)

There was a man passing Šalek Castle when going to work in the nearby mine. Because he was of very modest means, he went to work barefoot. But there were sharp stones in the woods; so for that part of the path he used wooden plinths, which he stored in the ruins. He was in such a hurry one morning that he didn't wash or have breakfast. When he wanted to store the plinths in the ruined castle again, he saw a few buckets full of gold coins among the stones, around which an old woman danced and sang: "Good man, wash with millet!" But the worker got frightened and ran away. It occurs to him that it scared him because he hasn't washed himself. He runs quickly to the creek and washes himself. Then another man comes towards him. The miner tells him what he saw and heard. They both get up and go back to the castle. When they get inside the ruins, they see a woman sitting there, without buckets and sighing. They approach her and the woman says to the one who ran away, "Unlucky man, why did you not obey me! You would've saved me, a cursed woman, and got all the gold."

Castle servant Jurij from Šalek Castle (written by Franc Skaza)

It was on the holiday of the Body of Christ (Corpus Christi). A procession was made through the lovely Šalek village. Almost all the villagers attended, but the servant Jurij did not come. He preferred going to the castle cellar. He thought, "I can get drunk today when no one's home."

As soon as he opened the door, he saw a terrible sight. A man dressed in silk stood in front of him. In one hand he held a large cross, and in the other a large black snake, which wrapped its tail around his legs and squeezed them so hard that he screamed and called for help.

Barely had the unknown sufferer seen Jurij when he shouted over to him: "You have now done the same thing I once did." Then he collapsed dead on the ground. This sufferer was a former castle owner.

The same sentence now struck Jurij. Whoever dared to go to the ruins on holy evening between 11 and 12 o'clock would at every step taken from home to the ruins pray Our father, and would hear Jurij cry.

1938

Gustav Šilih: Beli dvor. Second print 1996

In the youth novel *Beli dvor* by Gustav Šilih, Šalek Castle is often mentioned and illustrated in it. Local oral tradition is used, but it is modified to fit into the book.

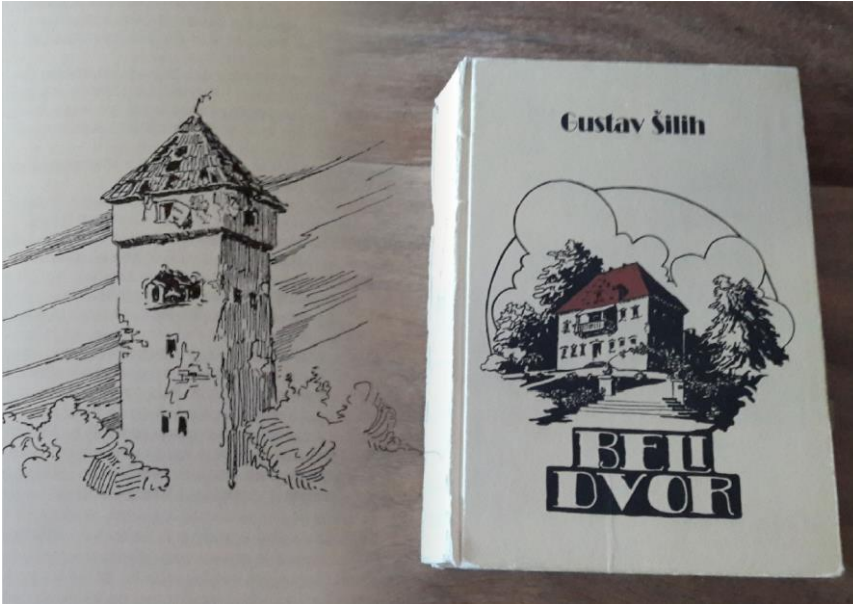
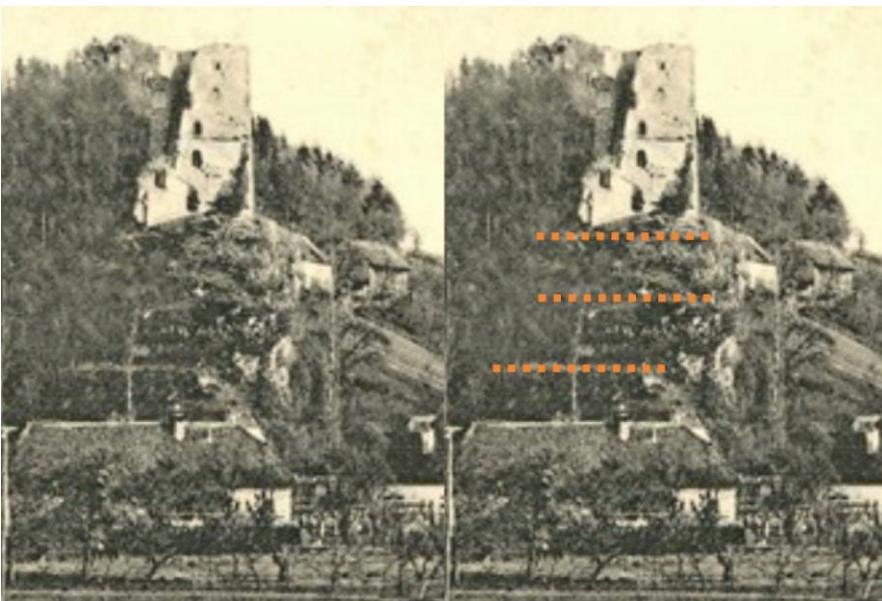


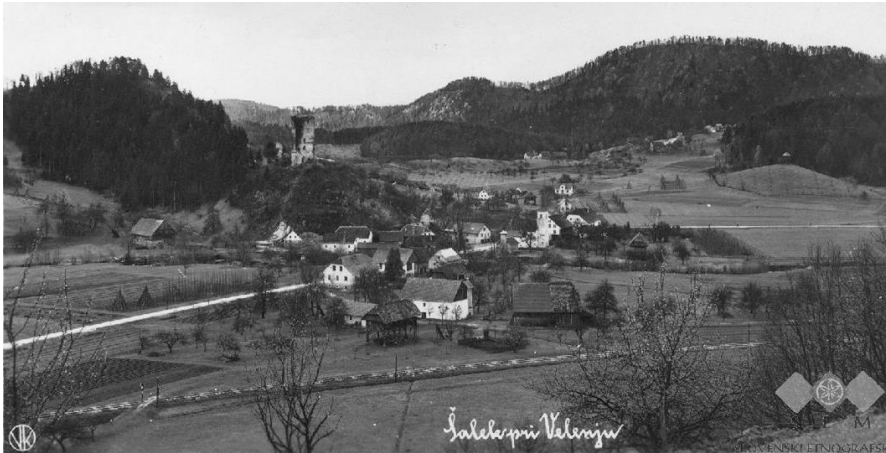
Illustration of Šalek Castle from the book and cover



Terraces under the castle

1928–1947

In the **photographs of Vekoslav Kramarič**, Šalek is shown just before the rapid urbanisation of the Šalek Valley after World War II. Of particular interest is the completely cleared castle hill.

Image¹⁰⁷Image¹⁰⁸Image¹⁰⁹

¹⁰⁷ <https://www.etno-muzej.si/sl/digitalne-zbirke/vekoslav-kramaric/f0038385>, 23/11/2017.

¹⁰⁸ https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/b/b1/Postcard_of_%C5%A0alek_Castle.jpg, 23/11/2017.

¹⁰⁹ https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/4/4d/Postcard_of_Velenje%2C_%C5%A0alek.jpg, 23/11/2017.

Second half of the 20th century

Štefanija Prislan's notes¹¹⁰

Štefanija Prislan, a folk poet who lived in Šalek¹¹¹ collected oral tradition in the 2nd half of the 20th century.

There's a scarecrow on Šalek

Long after World War I., people claimed that Šalek Castle was haunted, so no one dared to go to the ruins at midnight.

Doblčak's Cenek¹¹² claims that he once took a shortcut through Šalek Castle at midnight. A black shadow joined him, snuggling up to him and saying nothing. Bolh's Micka (later a nun – a sister of mercy) also saw a black-clothed woman. If they believed in ghosts, we will too.

The last inhabitant of Šalek Castle (living there when the tower was almost destroyed) was Ana, an old woman who was not afraid of ghosts. Now those ghosts are gone.

Shooting with mortars

When the Sundays were beautiful and there were other major celebrations, everything was very festive. At Šalek Castle, men and boys in white aprons and with bouquets on their chest fired mortars, echoing throughout the valley.

Šalek Castle

The water in the castle kitchen was drawn from Lempl's hill to keep it under proper pressure, and from Košan and Zabukovnik. When we were children, we were still able to see the stairs in the castle.

Farmers from Šalek

Doblčak's Cenek told me what his parents told him: some farmers were free, farmed on their own land, owned livestock and horses. But when the counts needed them, they came— with or without cattle. Such status had the near-by farmers Urh, Trbu and Doblčak with house numbers 1, 2 and 3.

At Oštir in Šalek there used to be a castle granary for grain and an inn.

The subject Gregorc took care of Odrovo, Melanšek's hayrack and the field towards Velenje. Before World War II., he was the caretaker of the castle and our (= Prislan's) house Lovrek/Lovrenc. In the castle, the caretaker was Šafar, who ordered "zašafal" – the work that needed to be done. Bolt's hayrack was also called Gregorčev.

Kolavtar's house belongs to the castle estate. Unfortunately, its windows were replaced, and the castle mill that stood by the water was demolished, dated 1600 and something. The year was engraved on a stone at the entrance to the mill. There was a sawmill next to it, and further along the road was a smithy.¹¹³ All these activities were water powered. The house – smithy is still standing and it was called the Hoflajtner estate. Other houses in Šalek were called Šafar, Stropnik, Lovrenc, Gregorc, Kolavter, Hofleitner, Kavčič, Jozn, Oštir and Peplhavz, but the latter was demolished.

¹¹⁰ Photocopies in the archive of Špela Poles, original in the possession of Marjan Prislan.

¹¹¹ <http://www.saleskibiografskileksikon.si/index.php?action=view&tag=872>, 18/11/2017.

¹¹² Doblčak's Cenek, born in 1910 near Doblčak farm above Šalek (in the upper/Gornji Šalek).

¹¹³ Schmutz 2-91 at the word Paka mentions one mill in Šalek (Mauthmühl), a wooden device in which the hard coating of cereal grains is removed by beating ("stope") and a saw.

Mill in Šalek.¹¹⁴

Wells in Šalek

Above the press at Kolavter's pigsty, there is a windpipe, above it is an arch, and there was a well, and on the plain below the castle, there was a small spring. There a Marlin's woman, the Šalek laundress, made a field where she planted potatoes and beans. She lived in Čujež's house. There was also a well in Kolavter's house, in the cellar; the water always had the same water level, and it flowed to an unknown place. In fact, every house in Šalek had one or two wells. They were all stone-built. Ours was one by the barn, the other (stone-built, 8m deep) was in the garden where the bus stop is now, just closer to the house. They filled it up when they were digging for the tunnel and moved the road closer to the house. Above Čujež's house is a well of clean water, with a flow that could supply the whole Šalek with enough water. This water also flows underground, to an unknown place.

Human bones in Kolavtar's pigsty below Šalek Castle

The grandfather of Cenek Doblčak was a mason. He also built Kolavtar's pigsties; they found a hole, leading into the rocks under the castle and some human bones. Slavko Kolavtar and other children from Šalek also say that they found human bones among the rocks under the castle.

Underground tunnels of Šalek Castle

The corridor led from Šafar's house, behind which there was a smithy (hammer smithy using a water hammer) to the upper Eckenstein castle.

Not far from Pavl's spring was another secret corridor, deep in the rocks, next to the Košan's rocks.

¹¹⁴<http://www.knjiznica-velenje.si/3242>, 23/11/2017.

1962

Pirchegger Hans, Die Untersteiermark in der Geschichte ihrer Herrschaften und Gülden, Städte und Märkte. Munich 1962. Translation taken from: Zimmermann, Gradovi, p. 236, 237.

“The church of St Martin opposite the fort was under the patronage of the castle owners. It was established as early as 1264 that it belonged to Egelof of Šalek, ...” Witnesses to this were people of Turn and a few market town inhabitants from Velenje.

“In 1287, Siegfried of Šalek promised the Bishop of Krško, his lord, that he would not sell his rights to the house against his will... However, in 1335 the brothers Niklas and Oto [of Šalek] recognised the sovereignty of Friderik of Žovnek and in 1336 the bishop granted him a feud. In 1353, it was given in feud from him to Count Nikolai Kenberger, in 1371 to Mert [Martin] of Rifnik, whose daughter then sold it to the Sobriachs in 1428. In 1437, the counts [of Žovnek - correct: of Celje, note: P. R.] granted it in feud to Thiem Hantschken (?). In 1516, heirs of David Sobriach; these were of Perneš, of Rakniš, of Kain and the Lambergers, who confirmed their shares in 1542.”

“Before 1575, Erazem Raumschüssel acquired the lordship and obtained it in a feud from the provincial prince. It was inherited from his descendants by Baron Oto Teufenbach (+1695); it was then inherited by the Barons of Gabelhkofn, who united it with Turn, so it had the same owners until 1886, then there were some quick exchanges, in 1916 baron Ludvik Haerdtl.”

“The castle was left to decay after 1770; the ownership is recorded in the feudal book of Celje, belonging to Hantschken in 1437, as well as in 1458 in the feudal document of the [Krško] Bishop Sigmund Sobriach; a fort with a yard and 26 farms of various sizes, further 36 widely scattered hubs, among them many abandoned, several forests (one shared with Eckenstein), the whole Koželj hill, fishing in Paka from the Velenje field to the “hanging wall” [at Huda Luknja].”

“The bishop granted the daughter of Eckart of Šalek a feud in 1404... In 1772 the same feud was given to J. J. Gabelkhoven by the provincial prince.”

1975, 1977, 1982, 1993

Slovenian castelologist, art historian Ivan Stopar discussed Šalek Castle in five publications:

- **Grajski objekti z območja Slovenske Štajerske na Vischerjeve zemljevidu iz leta 1678.** IN: Celjski zbornik 1971-72, description of Šalek's depiction on p. 418.
- **Grad in naselje Šalek, 1975.**
- **Razvoj srednjeveške grajske arhitekture na Slovenskem Štajerskem, 1977.**
- **Gradovi, graščine in dvorci na slovenskem Štajerskem, 1982**
- **Grajske stavbe v vzhodni Sloveniji, IV. Knjiga. Med Solčavskim in Kobanskim, 1993.**

Stopar described the castle before the renovation. Although he was familiar with the depiction of the castle on Vischer's map, which clearly shows two towers and the lower part between them, he was inclined to believe that the castle was built centrally around the central defensive tower. During the renovation, a courtyard and another = residential tower were discovered. His descriptions of the ruin condition before the renovation are very valuable.

Stopar points out that Šalek Castle lies right next to the ancient path from Velenje to Slovenj Gradec and further to Carinthia.¹¹⁵ establishes a cultural-historical framework with an indication of prehistoric and Roman finds in the wider area and the inclusion of the valley in the principality of Carantania, later in the Savinjska border region/mark or under the authority of the Aquileian patriarch. On the first mention of the free lords of Šalek, Bertold, Dietrik and Hartnid, he says that

“They were the sovereign masters of the Šalek allod and were thus able to compete in excellence with the most eminent families in the area of today's Slovenian Styria. When they appear as witnesses, they are always listed in a great place in the documents. Šalek Castle is explicitly mentioned only in 1287 as “haus Schalekke”.”

Stopar mentions the dispute between Edeloff of Šalek and the parish priest of Škalj over the patronage over the church of St. Martin and summarises the owners after Orožen, Janisch and Pirchegger; he also mentions the stories of Janez Orožen.

The suffix “-eck” or “-ek” in the name of Šalek is said to indicate the great age of the castle.

When describing the castle, Stopar says:

In front of us are the remains of a mighty triangular tower, which on all three sides extends to a height of five storeys, almost to its original height. The walls stand on a steep rock, which descends abruptly towards the valley on three sides, and on the eastern and southern sides it is separated from the former inner wards by a deep semicircular transverse ditch at the top of the hill, artificially cut into the rock. The castle is thus well protected on all sides and could only be approached from the south, but here the enemy was faced with serious obstacles, as the moat could be defended. It was protected by a wall that surrounded the castle and in which the gates were fortified, and above all, it could be successfully controlled from the top of the tower, which was once surrounded by a wooden defensive corridor.

The tower faces the ditch with its sharp southeast corner. Such layout allowed for an unusually good defence, as all enemy missiles literally slid along the sloping walls without being able to cause significant damage. The corner is hardened accordingly, as it is composed, in the lower part, of large, stone-cut squares. No wonder the people keep the story of how the Turks besieged the castle with no success, because all the bullets bounced off him, alive.

Such a tower layout is rare even in the Central European material. It is found with the castles of Araberg, Finstergrün and Rauheneck,¹¹⁶ and in nearby Croatia in the castle of Velika near Požega.¹¹⁷ The latter is a same castle concept than this one of Šalek's original design. Of course, pentagonal towers performed a similar function as the listed triangular towers in medieval castles. Such a tower, probably added to the older design in the 14th century, has been preserved in the castle Slovenske Konjice.

¹¹⁵ Stopar, Grad, 1.

¹¹⁶ Adapted from Piper.

¹¹⁷ Adapter from: Gjuro Szabo: Sredovječni gradovi u Hrvatskoj i Slavoniji, Zagreb 1920.

If we take a closer look at the foundations from which the mighty Šalek tower grows, we notice that not all the walls are the same thickness. The strongest are the south and east walls, which are the most exposed as they measure as much as 250 or 230cm in diameter, while the west wall is a metre thinner. This shows that we are dealing with a triangular tower that was part of a more extensive castle design. It was the most defensive oriented part of the castle complex, a kind of shield that protected other castle components.

Stopar describes the castle before the renovation in the 1990s and lists truncated sewn corners on the south façade in the lower part of the south wall (which were added during the renovation), closed primary openings (narrow lines with a limestone border on the ground floor and a rectangular Gothic window with chamfered edges, which were opened during the renovation), secondary openings (window and portal in the ground floor, which were walled up during the renovation). He draws attention to the surface structure of the wall, which is partially covered with patches of plaster and shows a number of alterations.

The top of the former third floor has openings in the wall that were used to position the ceiling tiles; there was once an adjoining building to this part of the tower, which reached the height of three storeys and was connected to the insides of the tower through the aforementioned portal. From the time the castle was built, the remains of a gate remained on top of the wall—part of the frame and threshold—which led from the inside of the tower to the defensive corridor; this one ran around the tower just below the eaves. The doors are fragmented in the upper part, and in the lower part, still preserved and walled up.¹¹⁸ The wall masonry is blurred in the lower part, inauthentic, and in the upper two floors it shows a pronounced tendency to layer without the stones being laid in the correct positions.

On the eastern façade, he describes the deconstructed fireplace chimney, reaching from the first to the fourth floor, which was later also restored.

There are no windows on this wall, but the holes in which the ceilings tiles were placed have been preserved in three positions. The tower was therefore walled on this side up to the height of three storeys. On the ground floor, the wall extends to the north, and here part of the door that once connected the northern and eastern residential tracts is still preserved. A similar passage can be suspected on the third floor, and on the fourth, a part of tufa door frame has been preserved, which connected this part of the castle with the interior of the tower. In the lower floors, plaster is still preserved in many places, while the upper floors are not plastered.

The western façade is the most eloquently documented, although relatively poorly preserved. We get inside the tower through a doorway and a half-collapsed window opening on the ground floor. Here a strong binder is visible in the wall, mortar mixed with river sand and brick debris, indicating the high age of the design.

The doorway on the first floor was frameless at Stopar's visit (now reconstructed, note R. P.),

"On the second floor, the entire door with frames and arched lintel is preserved, on the third part of the door and a rectangular window, on the fourth only a window sill" (now the seats are reconstructed, note: R. P.). The wall around the door is also reflected in the extended wall on the far left, where the door was connected by two leaning residential tracts. Also on this wall, we can see the beds of ceiling tiles, and on the ground floor there are traces of former arches and perhaps stairs. As a technical peculiarity, it is worth mentioning that the ceiling tiles rested on planks, built into the wall under their beds.

The left part of the wall, where the east and west sides of the tower once met, collapsed into the depths, together with the wall into which the arms extended (now partially reconstructed, note: R.

¹¹⁸ Reconstructed at renovation.

P.). On the right side, a thinner wall leans against the tower, which is only fragmentarily preserved and which once formed the south-western front of the living tower (actually the inner courtyard, note: R. P.). It originally reached the height of two floors, but was built at the same time as the tower. The original sewn corners of the tower are still preserved on the floors above this wall. The interior of the tower, like its exterior, shows signs of many alterations. In the lower three floors, the extensions of the former tufa arches are still preserved, while in the last floor, the strong walls thin out and form a platform that once supported the wooden ceiling. What is preserved of the rest of the walls is covered in gravel, and only here and there do we sense the course of the old walls under the rubble, but not enough to be able to reconstruct the castle floor plan. It will be possible to see it once the planned research work is carried out.

Next, Stopar examines the old depictions of the castle and concludes from the method of construction and the shape of the door portals, the age of the castle (1975):

“The more or less authentic construction of the tower, preserved in the upper two floors, shows with its irregular positions as early as the Gothic period, i.e. at least the late 13th century. /... / On the drawing that Otto Piper published in his study, the portals are semicircular, suggesting the twelfth or early thirteenth century, respectively. /... / Piper mentions that the south-west wall is roughly built in the manner of a fishbone, the so-called opus spicatum. Such masonry points to the Romanesque era, but the wall is too dilapidated today to be able to verify Piper’s claim. All the visible elements on the tower are of the Gothic era, so we are probably not far from the truth if we place the origin of the castle in the late 13th century. The first masters of the Šalek Valley, therefore, lived in a no longer preserved court or castle.”

In 1993, Stopar makes a slight change in the castle's date:

The walls of the tower, which are thinning under the roof of the tower, form a walking surface. From it, it was possible to control access to the castle over the parapet. From the very beginning, the tower was also connected to the residential part of the building, on all floors except the top, which rose freely above the roofs of the perimeter castle buildings.

Numerous authentic window and door openings are preserved in its walls, but their tufa-made frames are already so worn out that they are barely recognisable from afar. Only a closer look showed that the archivolts of the portals are semicircular, which indicates their origin lies in the Romanesque era. In addition to the well-preserved corners, especially in the upper floors and only the indicated desire for layering in the building, the preserved architectural elements allow us to place the building in the first half or middle of the 12th century, which is in line with the preserved documents.¹¹⁹

According to Piper, Stopar also summarises the possibility of the original design of the castle, consisting only of a tower and a courtyard, and describes the additions – the organic growth of the castle:

“New building components were added to the originally modest, straightforward military utilitarian core. The castle was becoming more and more comfortable, more present, and especially the buildings used for economic purposes and which may have been squeezed in a narrow castle courtyard from the beginning, under the auspices of the tower, were transferred to the inner wards.”

In Razvoj srednjeveške grajske arhitekture Stopar ranks Šalek Castle among those continuing the tradition of the castle. He compares the position of the tower with its apex facing the access to the castle, to Viltuš and marks the three-sided tower as a tower (bergfrid).

He lists similar triangular towers in Austria and Croatia and states that triangular and pentagonal tower shapes are rare, but by no means exceptional. He summarises the description of the castle and repeats that the residential palace should have leaned directly on the tower (during the renovation it turned out that there was a courtyard between the two). He says there are portals in the west wall of the tower.

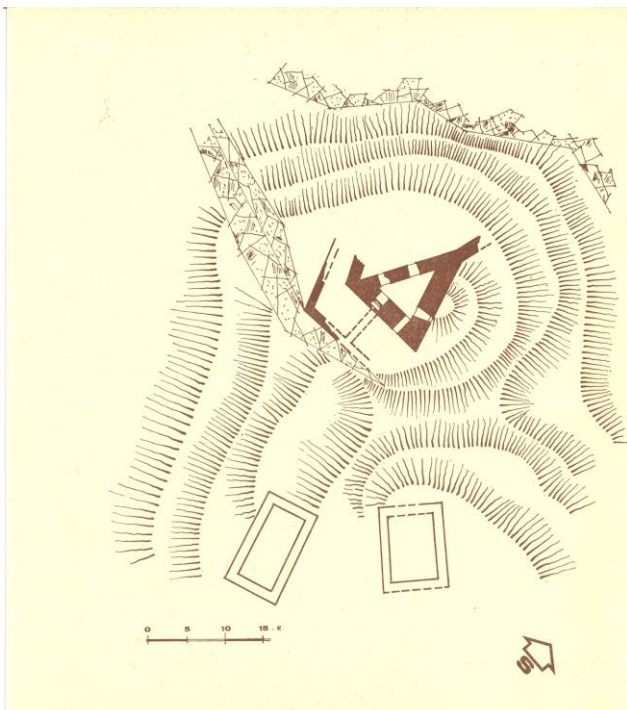
¹¹⁹ Stopar, Grajske.

“Explicable only as connecting links between the living quarters and the rooms in the tower, which in the lower storeys were not connected, as they were separated by the still preserved arches. The residential tract of the castle was two-storeyed, and the upper door was already in its attic, which was covered by a steep gabled roof. Its lead is still visible in the wall of the tower.

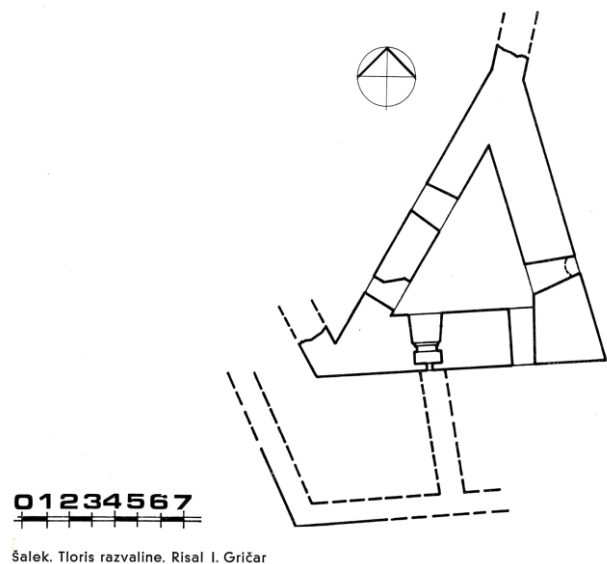
Šalek was a modest castle, as the already limited space did not allow it to grow much. Subsequent additions did not significantly change its character, as the new buildings, so to speak, adhered to its towering core and used the last possibilities offered by the surface of the rock mound. It is natural that the outbuildings were therefore placed on the clearing east of the castle, where we can see them in old depictions.”¹²⁰

Similarly (as at Lindek Castle, note: R. P.), developmental laws are also enforced at Šalek Castle. The limited space at the top of the rock mound did not allow for other solutions and so the growth of the building was defined by the adherence of new building masses to the old core, which was eventually surrounded on all sides. In the final image, a typical Gothic castle with a central, vertically strongly emphasised dominant in the old triangular defensive tower was created. Various stages of the construction are not evident anymore since all parts of the castle – with the exception of the tower – are entirely in ruins thus making a reconstruction of its former image only possible from old renderings.¹²¹

The same developmental tendencies as found in axial castles are shown in different possibilities in castles that grew into centrally accentuated designs with the radial addition of new components, as the new components adhered directly to the castle core. A very typical case is in our monument material, Lindek Castle or in an even more vivid form Šalek Castle in the Šalek Valley. But although the general character of all these castles is different than the castles of the Romanesque period, it still remains real, hard, and cubically concluded. This is clearly seen in the case of the Gothic castle of Dobrna.¹²²



Two floor plans of the castle, published by Ivan Stopar.



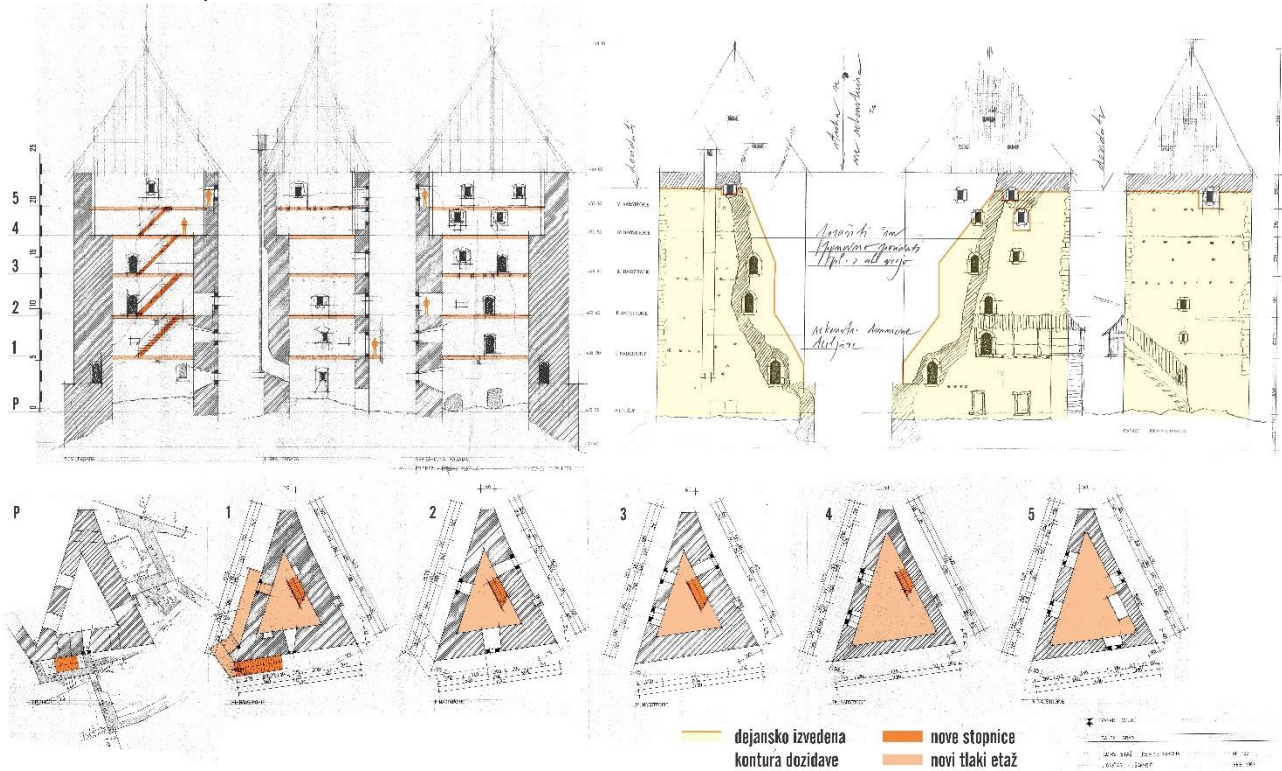
¹²⁰ Stopar, Razvoj, 105-108.

¹²¹ Stopar, Razvoj, 141.

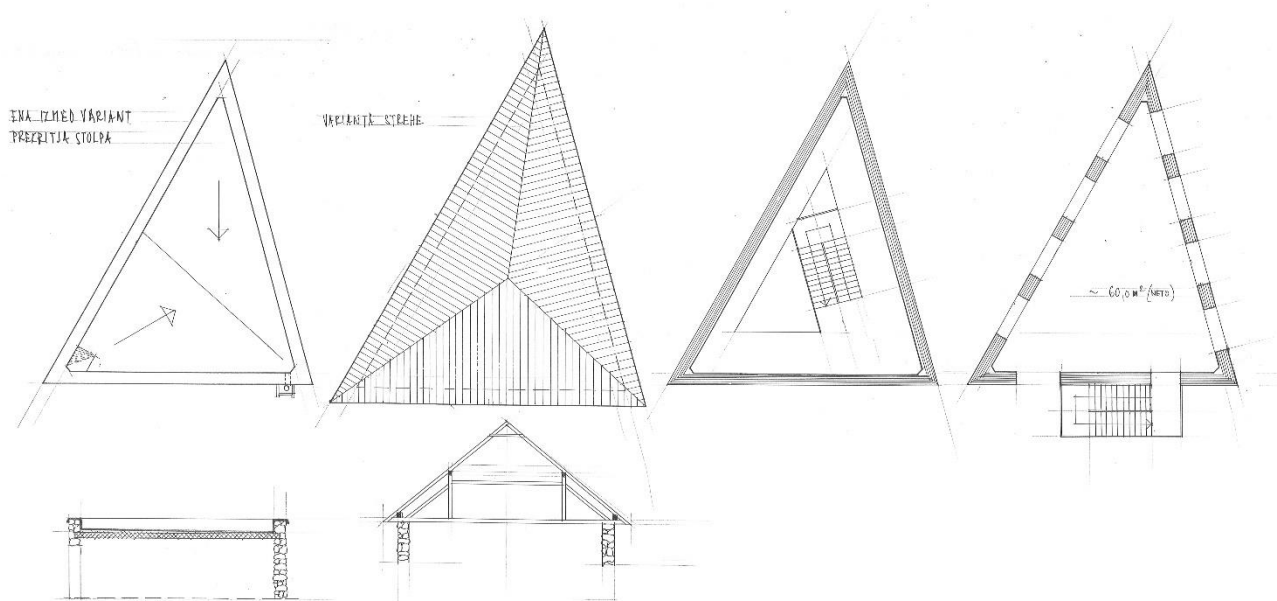
¹²² Stopar, Razvoj, 160.

1970

As part of the castle research, measurements of the building and a photogrammetric imaging of the facades was performed, and on this basis Ivo Gričar made an architectural image of the building (floor plans, sections, facades).



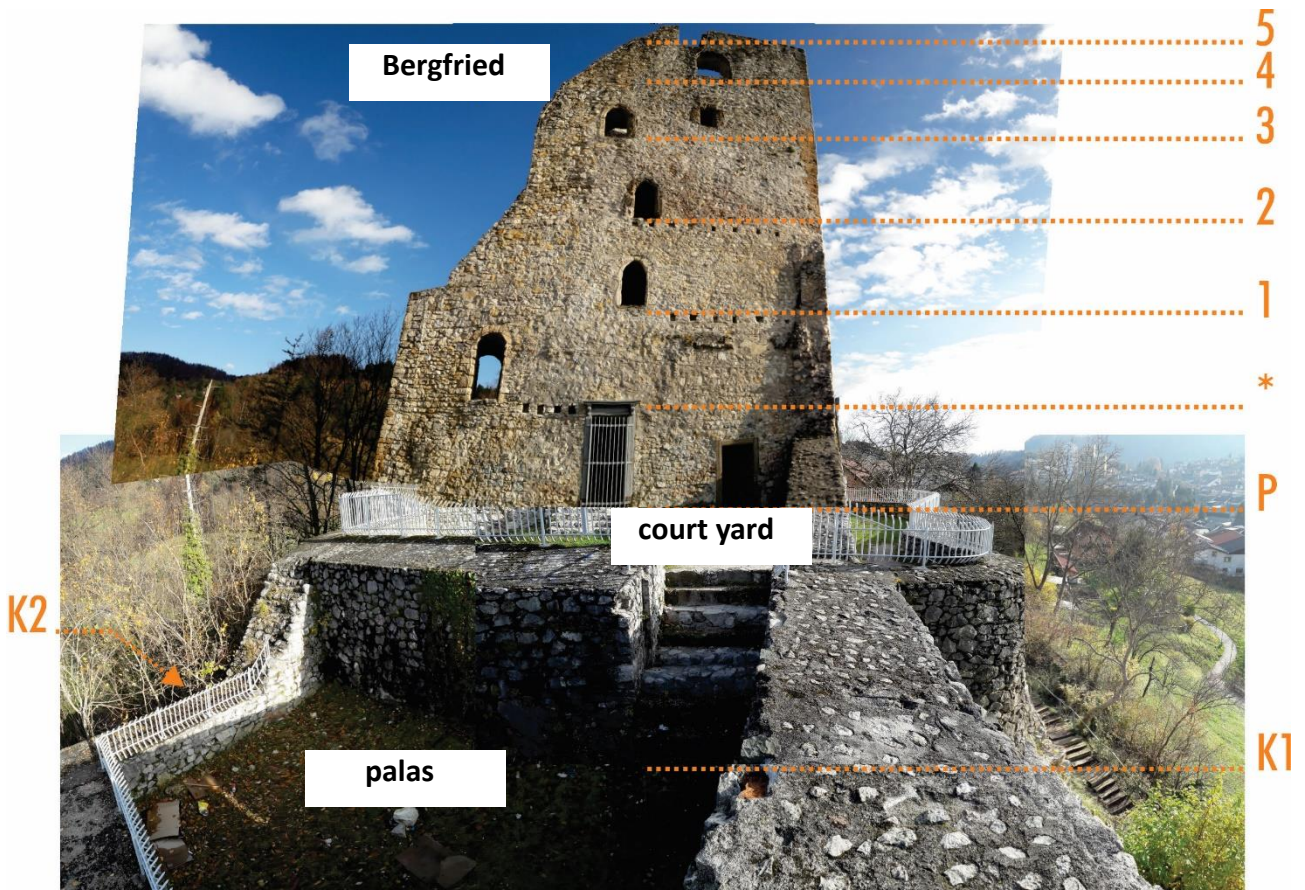
The documentation kept by Velenje Museum shows that the roofing of the tower and the installation/reconstruction of wooden platforms by floors and staircases was also considered: from the ground floor to the 1st floor, the staircase would be external, with a wooden roof, and staircases on higher floors would be internal. In fact, a broken contour of the north corner of the tower was made, without a roof, platforms and staircases.



Various roof slopes were considered (steep pyramidal, lower pyramidal, flat) and also the different positions of the stairs (internal and external).

Despite the architectural documentation, the question still arises as to how many floors (at the end of development) Šalek Castle actually had. According to the left sketch, the tower would have six in the courtyard, and one basement can be seen at the residential area on the north side of the courtyard. An additional basement, however, may have been in an outbuilding tower east of the courtyard, which had an even lower foundation. So, a total of nine floors?

Inside the tower, the ground floor and the 1st floor are united.



1986

Pavle Blaznik: Historična topografija Slovenije, II, Slovenska Štajerska in jugoslovanski del Koroške do leta 1500, I, A-M. SAZU, Scientific Research Center of the Slovenian Academy of Sciences and Arts, Milko Kos Historical Institute, Založba Obzorja, Maribor 1986. p. 383, 384

ŠALEK village near Velenje with the branch church of St Andrew

(autumn) 1154, 27/3/1155, 28/12/1160, (beginning 1161), 13/1/1161 (believed May) 1162, 1/11/1164, 22/1/1187, 25/7/1189: Bertoldus de Shalach (Gr 4, no. 326, p. 172); Bertholdo de Schalach (Gr 4, no. 342, p. 179); Perhtoldus de Schalahc (Gr. 4, No. 408, p. 211); Perhtoldus de Scalah (Gr 4, No. 444, p. 225); Perhtold de Salach (Gr. 4, No. 471, p. 238); Pertholdus de Shalake (Gr 4, No. 730, p. 370); in resentia... Berchtoldi de Salecka (Gr 4, No. 760, p. 382)

20/6/1156, 27/5/1173: Dietricus de Scalach... Perhtoldus de Scalach liberi (Gr 4, no. 373. p. 192); Perhtoldus de Shalach, Ditricus de Shalach (Gr 4, no. 533, p. 270)

13/5/1163, 1169, 6/1/1174: Dietricus de Schalach (Gr 4, no. 456, p. 230); Ditricus de Scalach (Gr 4, No. 505, p. 255); Dietrich de Schalach (Gr. 4, no. 545, p. 277)

20/4/1189: Hartnidus de Schalahc - (Gr 4, no. 757, p. 380)

13/1/1264: dominus Egeloffus de Shelek... capella sancti Martini ante Shelek - (UB IV, no. 125, P. 78)

2/12/1264, 3/10/1287: Syfridus de Schaelecke (UB IV, No. 147, p. 92); Siffrid von Schalekke... haws cze Schalekke (MDC VI, No. 61, p. 41)

20/6/1305: Leutolt, sein bruder Fridreich von Schalekk - (MDC VII, No. 285, p. 111)

3/11/1311, 10/8/1319, 26/10/1323: Wulfing der Schalekker (RHSt, no. 319, p. 91), Wlfing der Schallekker (RHSt, no. 1104, p. 292); Wulfing von Schalekk (MDC VIII, No. 679, p. 197)

1314, 30/8/1335, 28/7/1336: Niclas von Schallegkh... die vöste Schallegkh (RHSt, no. 706, p. 191); Nicla der Schaleker... daz halbe haus Schalek (kop. LA); von Nikel dem Schalecker aufgegebene feste zu Schalek (kop. LA)

18/5/1220: Schaleker – (org. AS)

13/11/1320: Schalleker - (MDC viii, no. 561, p. 165)

1323 Scharlach - (ONB 418)

6/9/1331: Fridrich von Schalk (MDC IX, no. 467, p. 144), Detto, no. 468, p. 144/warning: Otorepec: MDC writes incorrectly: Schallek /

4/8/1345: ecclesia seu capella sancti Martini prope Schalek – (kop. LA)

16/1/1350: abbas... monasteria o (er) nburgensis... frak Wilhelmu t (em) p (or) e, que plebanatum ecclesie and Schaelach regepiston - (org. LA)

1350: Salech - (ONB 418)

11/11/1353: dye vest Schalek – (kop. LA)

9/3/1358: - ecclesiam in Schalach – (kop. LA)

26/5/1370: Niklas der Schaleker... Ekhart ... Schaleker... Schalekker – (org. AS)

26/5/1370: Elspet Niklas des Schaller(ers) wirtin... die gueter ... vmb Schallek gelegen – (org. LA)

1370: vest Schallek – (ONB 418)

18 May 1371: die vest Schallek – (kop. LA)

24/6/1371: sand Merten per Schalek – (org. AS)

9/11/1375: mit... Ekharts Schaleker – (Kfk, f. 220)

1379: Schalek (ONB 418)

1403/4: die vest Schalek... Schaleker (Kfk, f. 220)

1403/4: zwischen Halek vnd des Newenhaus (Kfk, f. 238)

1407: hof gelegen Schalegg – (Kfk, f. 238)

1412: die vest Schalekg – (Kfk, f. 81')

2/5/1418: Schallekker - (org. ŠALj)

1421: ain hof helegen zu Schalekk – (Kfk, f. 96')

1421: 20 emper pergrecht zwischen Halekk vnd den Newnhaws – (Kfk, f. 96')

1424: Schellekch – (ONB 418)

1426: cappel in Schellekch – (Or 2, p. 318)

1436: vnser vessten Scheallekg... mitsambt dem purgperg, item sechs vnd zwainczik hofstet darunder in Sand Merten phar gelegen – (Cfk, f. 99')

1436: am Trniz mei Sannd Andres (Cfk, f. 100)
 1441: die vesse Scellegk – (Kfk, f. 41)
 1444: St. Andre – (Onb 418)
 1457-1461: ain hueben vnder Schalegk... genant am Entznig... vnnd ain muel – (Cfk LA, f. 75)
 1458: von hof gelegen ze Schalegk... die vessten Schalegk mitsambt dem purkhperg, 26 hofstet darunder in Sand Martens pharr gelegen – (Kfk, f. 288)
 1458: zwischen Schalegk vnd des Newnhaws – (Kfk, f. 288)
 1458: Gruotz bey Sannd Andre – (Kfk, 2/9, f. 66')
 31/3/1477: ad Sanctum Martinum prope Schalleghk – (kop. LA)
 around 1480: - sloss Schaleghk – (urb. Egkst., LA)
 28/10/1497: Johannem Schelleghker... presbiterum - (CKSL)
 14./15. century: vicarius capellae Sancti Martini ante Schalek - (UB IV, No. 125, p. 78)
 prim. Škale

ŠALEK VALLEY around Velenje
 8/3/1282,...

AS - Archives of the SR of Slovenia in Ljubljana

Cfk - Celje feudal book in AS

CKSL - central file of medieval documents for Slovenia at the Milko Kos Historical Institute ZRC SAZU

Gr – Fr. and M. Kos, Gradivo za zgodovino Slovencev v srednjem veku, Ljubljana, books I–IV, 1902–1928

Kfk - feudal books of the Krško diocese (Lehensprotokoll Gurk), 1) 2/8 (1403/4–1468, 306 fol., 2) 2/9 (1455–1469), 224 fol., kept by the Carinthian Provincial Archives in Klagenfurt

LA - Styrian Provincial Archives in Graz

MDC – Monumenta historica ducatus Carinthiae I-IV + Ergänzungsheft. 1896-1915 ed. A. Jaksch; V-XII 1956-1972 ed. H. Wiessner

Or 2 – Ign. Orožen: Das Bisthum und die Diözese Lavant, II/1. Benediktiner-Stift Oberburg, Marburg 1876

RHSt – A. Redik, Regesten der Herzogtum Steiermark, I. Band 1308-1319. 1. Lieferung, Quellen zur geschichtlichen Landeskunde der Steiermark, VI. Band, Graz, 1976

ŠALj - Diocesan or Archdiocesan Archives in Ljubljana

UB IV – H. Appelt – G. Pferschy, Urkundenbuch des Herzogtums Steiermark IV, 1960-1975

1990

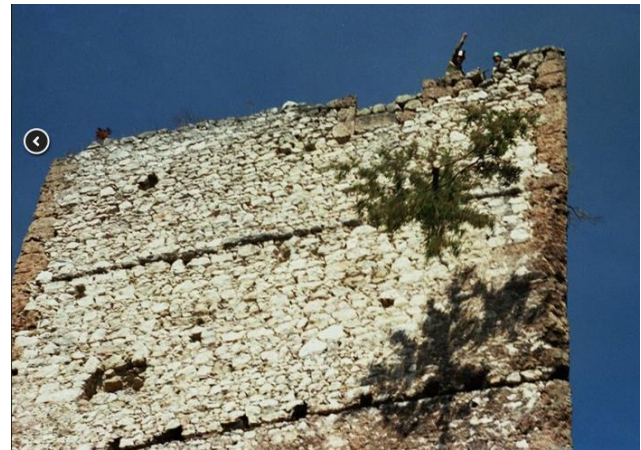
Activities for the reconstruction of castle ruins



Top of the ruins¹²³



Šalek Castle before renovation¹²⁴



¹²³ <http://mapio.net/pic/p-26568759/>, 20/11/2017.

¹²⁴ Access to the castle cave club Speleos, majority of the photos: Dragutin Šafarić.

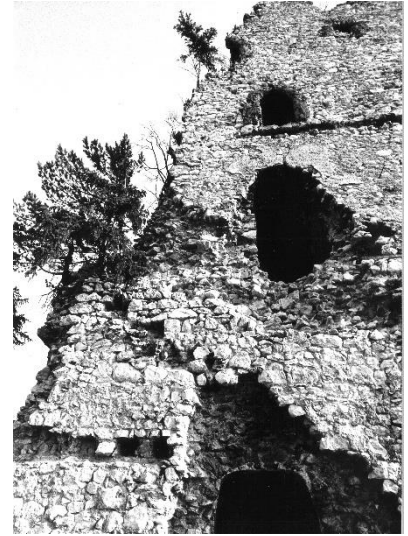
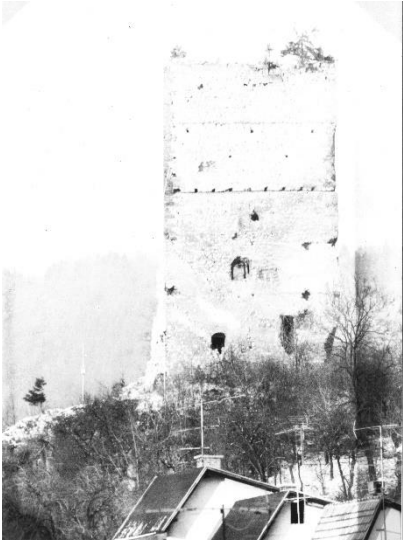


Photo documentation from the construction documentation for renovation, February 1989, photo by Dragutin Šafarić and Peter Marinšek, archive of the Velenje Museum

1991/92

Protective archaeological excavations at Šalek Castle and restoration of the ruins

The castle is generally a permanent ruin. In 1991 and 1992, archaeological excavations were carried out, followed by restoration work in the area of the entire castle ruins. The walls were stabilised, a new entrance with stairs to the ruin was created, and a fence was added to prevent falls from the ruin. Archaeological excavation was limited to the space between the tower and the defence wall.¹²⁵



Castle ruins during archaeological excavations in 1991 (Danijela Brišnik, Šalek Castle ruins – protection, management, use-reuse, presentation, Velenje, 24/8/2017) and material for the book Brišnik, Ravnikar, Grad Šalek, archive R. P.



¹²⁵ Radovan Cunja's report Department of Archaeology, University of Ljubljana, 6/4/1992 (Velenje Museum archives).



This and the following pages: narrative photographs from the archives of ZVKDS OE Celje from the time of the castle restoration



Detail of a window on the east facade





ABOVE: Picture of a built-in primary firing line: Stopar, Grad. During the renovation, the original line was opened – the current state of the line.

Šalek Castle before and during the renovation. With the restoration, the previously jagged outline of the castle changed.¹²⁶



Significant parts of the walls were rebuilt without emphasising the contact between the original and the new.¹²⁷

The material culture from the late Middle Ages and later, which was largely acquired through protective archaeological excavations at Šalek Castle in 1991 and 1992, is rich in quantity and form: all types of kitchen ceramics (various types of pots, bowls, plates and other dishes), simply designed and unpolished from early periods, and those from the 15th and 16th centuries, richly coloured in vivid hues and artfully decorated. One of the most interesting objects is the “Šalek beer glass”, a glass with a series of prints made with four small geometrically shaped seals. There are many fragments of coated tiles of various shapes, motifs and colours; coins are rare as well as window glass and glass beakers. A very special and prestigious product is a folding sundial from the Šalek Castle.¹²⁸

¹²⁶ Pictures from: Poles, Pozojeva, 28, <https://www.pinterest.com/pin/445715694354167189/>, 18/11/2017.

¹²⁷ They used an approach at, for example, Raglan Castle: when they covered the tops of ruined castle walls with concrete, they used a soft membrane to separate it from the wall. This additional layer enables the additional build to be completely reversible: the concrete is easily removed due to the separation layer without damaging the original tissue.

¹²⁸ Danijela Brišnik: From Late Antiquity to the Šalek drinking cup. IN: Velenje, razprave o zgodovini mesta in okolice, Mestna občina Velenje, Velenje, 1999, p. 87, 88.



Tableware from Šalek.

"Šalek beer glass"



Polished tiles from Šalek



Glass finds from Šalek.



Coins from Šalek

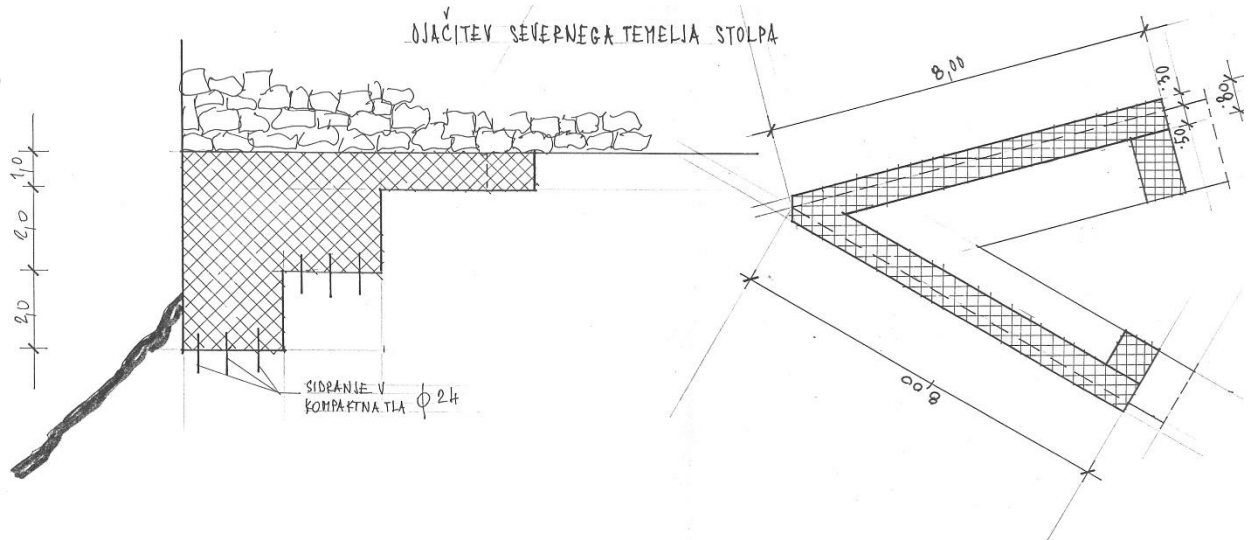


Metal finds from Šalek

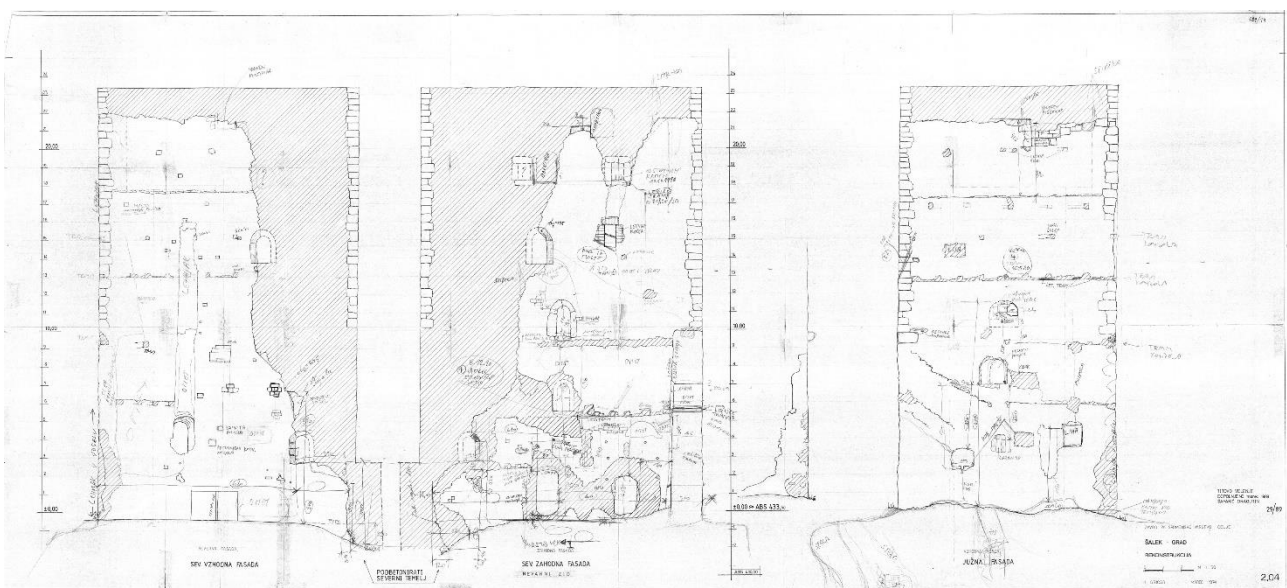
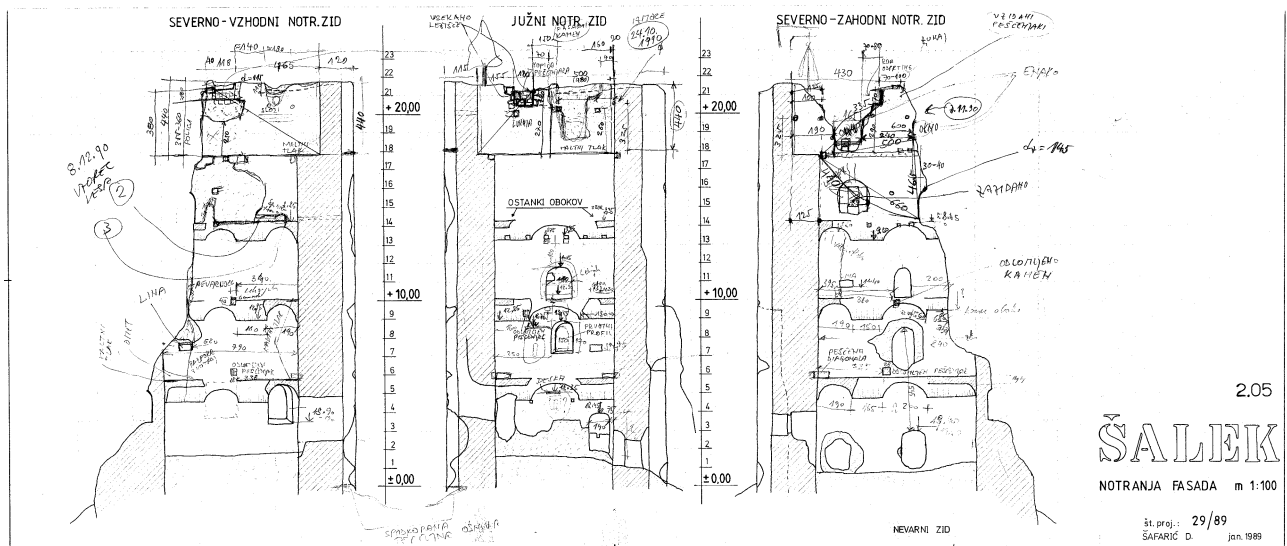


Folding ivory sundial from Šalek

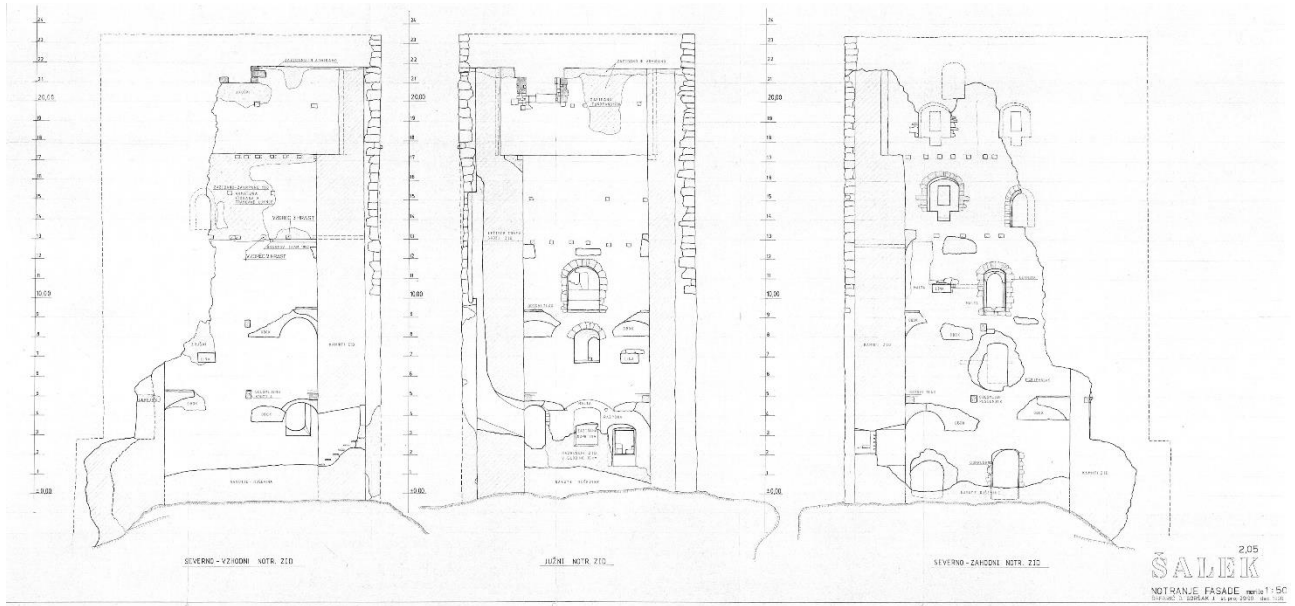
All photos are from the material for the books: Brišnik, Ravnikar, Grad Šalek, 1999 and Ravnikar, Šaleška, 2005.



Reinforcement system of the northern tower foundation, which was hanging in the air before the renovation, with underconcreting. 129



Construction documentation with notes from the time of restoration is kept by Velenje Museum. It can be seen, among other things, that samples of preserved spruce wood were taken for analysis.



1995, 1999,

Historian Tone Ravnikar rewrote the history of Šalek Castle, placed the story of the castle itself in the broader context of the development of the castle network in the Šalek Valley,¹³⁰ including findings of Hans Pirchegger,¹³¹ Dušan Kos,¹³² Jože Koropec,¹³³ Pavel Blaznik,¹³⁴ Peter Simoniti¹³⁵ et al.

Archaeologist Danijela Brišnik described and evaluated the findings of archaeological excavations at the castle.

- Danijela Brišnik, Tone Ravnikar: **Grad Šalek**. Kulturni center Ivana Napotnika Velenje, Muzej Velenje, Založništvo Pozoj, Velenje, 1995.
- Danijela Brišnik, Tone Ravnikar: **Grad Šalek**. Kulturni center Ivana Napotnika Velenje, Založništvo Pozoj, Velenje, 1999.
- Tone Ravnikar: **V primežu medplemiških prerivanj**, Pedagogical Institute, Ljubljana 2010.
- Tone Ravnikar: **Razvoj grajske mreže v Šaleški dolini do konca srednjega veka**. IN: Šaleški gradovi viteza Gadolle, Knjižnica Velenje, Velenje 2015.



Scientific monographs on the Šalek Castle

Historian Tone Ravnikar showed parallels between the formation of the Šoštanj and Šalek castles as a result of the colonisation/relocation of noble families to the Šalek Valley from Carinthia and before that from southern Bavaria.

Documents related to the creation of a privately owned church/castle chapel of St Martin in the Romanesque (12th century), proved that Šalek Castle was already standing at that time. He made a clean writing of the chain of castle owners and shed light on their legal status. He depicted coats of arms of noble families associated with Šalek. He highlighted the importance of the castle in the Šalek-Paka Valley over time.

¹³⁰ Tone Ravnikar, Velenjski meščani v 13. stoletju? Šoštanjski vitezi ali vitezi iz Šoštanja v 13. stoletju, 1992. Gospodje Turnski v 13. stoletju, 1992. Posest grofov Vovbrških v Šaleški dolini, 1993. Šaleška dolina med 10. in 17. stoletjem, 2005. Po zvezdnih poteh: Savinjska in Šaleška dolina v visokem srednjem veku, 2007....

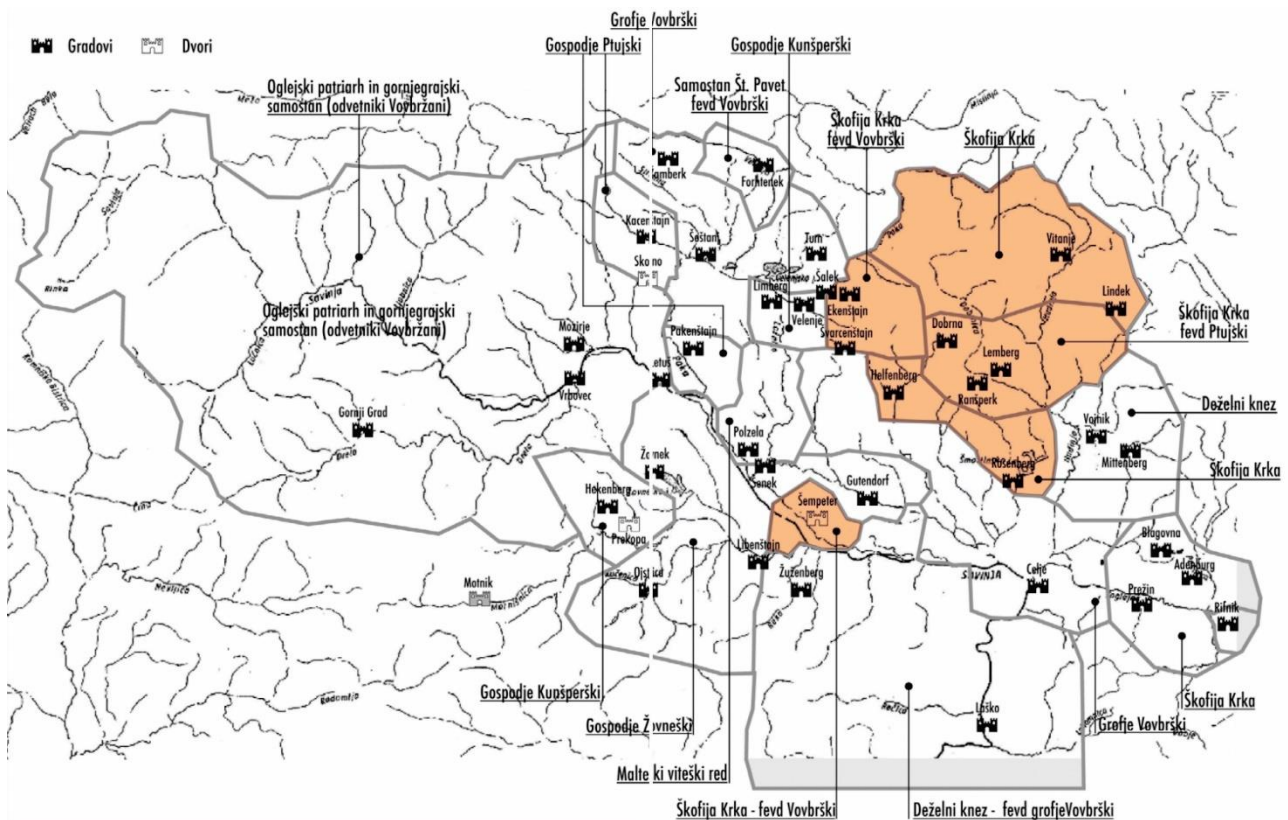
¹³¹ Hans Pirchegger, Die Untersteiermark in der Geschichte ihrer Herrschaften und Gültten, Städte und Märkte, 1962. Die Herrschaften der Bisthums Gurk in ehemaligen Steiermark, 1956.

¹³² Dušan Kos, Med gradom in mestom, 1994.

¹³³ Jože Koropec, Mi smo tu, 1985.

¹³⁴ Pavle Blaznik, Historična topografija slovenske Štajerske in jugoslovanskega dela Koroške do leta 1500, part II, 1988.

¹³⁵ Peter Simoniti, Humanizem na Slovenskem in slovenski humanisti do srede XVI. stoletja.

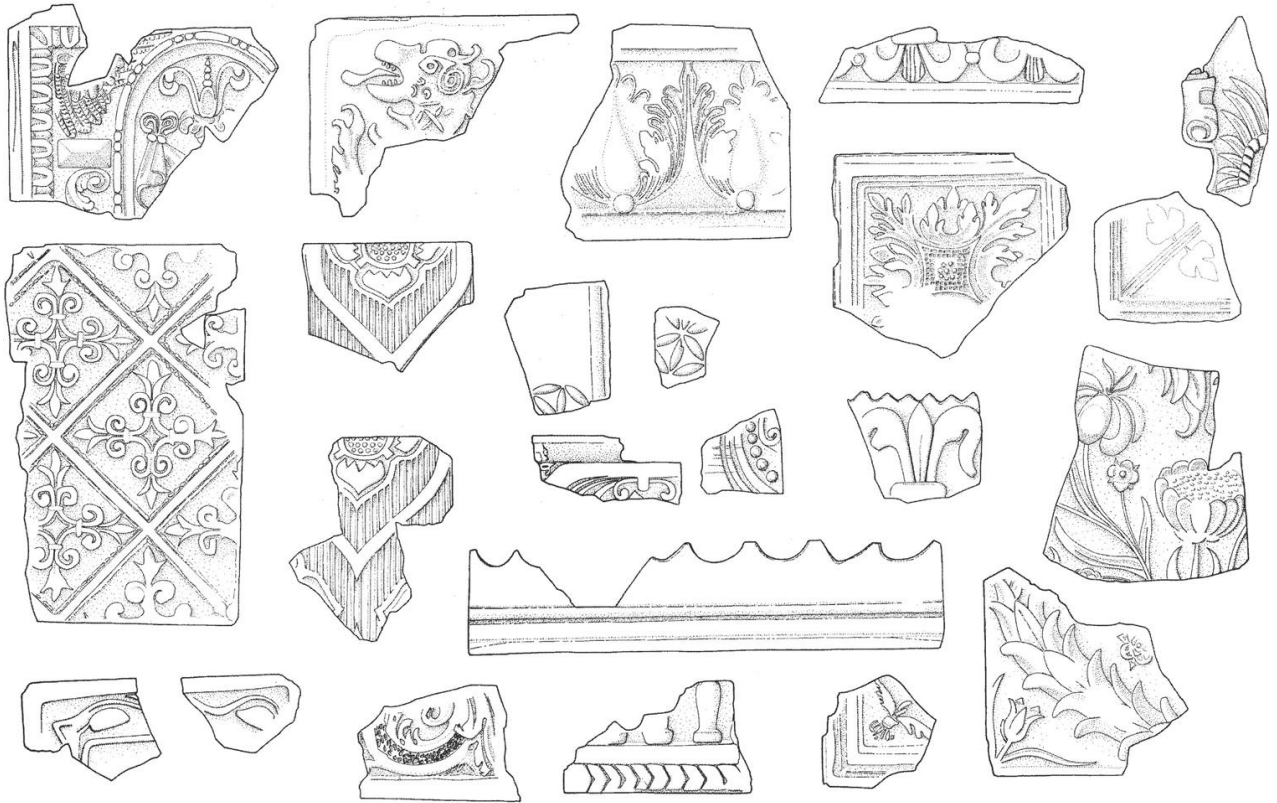


Tone Ravnikar: Property structure in the Savinja and Šalek valleys.¹³⁶ The territory of the diocese of Krka, of which the feud of Šalek was a part, is emphasised.

Archaeologist Daniela Brišnik finds that surprisingly many and varied archaeological finds testify to the relatively high material/living culture on Šalek, the objects brought in prove its connection to the Mediterranean world and the world beyond the Alps. Among the small finds from Šalek, she points out an ivory sundial, describes the found coins, among the metal finds she defines arrow shafts, clamps, a key, nails, needles, describes glass findings: fragments of beer cups, an old version of window glass ("pihanec"), bottles and representative pieces. Based on the fragments of furnace tiles found, she concludes that the castle premises were heated with ten to twelve furnaces. The furnace tiles are of different qualities, finishes (polished, unpolished), from different times (14–17th century) and gather their themes from different art/motif worlds, from dragons to plant motifs, wallpaper patterns and renaissance decorations. Varied profiled and decorated ceramic dishes including various cooking and storage utensils and colourful painted tableware, pots, bowls and pitchers, plates, beer cups (e.g. a glass with decoration and a jug in the majolica technique) were found.

Brišnik finds that archaeological findings confirm the findings of the art history profession on the origin of the castle in the Romanesque period and its organic growth over the centuries. About the wall at the edge of the overhanging rock, which extends below the north corner of the castle tower and is older than the castle, she says that it was probably made by terracing a rock mound to gain more useful space. She points out that the found fragments of hand-made poorly baked pottery and a scroll pot, as well as the remains of stands that indicate the existence of a wooden building, probably indicate a settlement on a rock mound before the castle was built.

¹³⁶Ravnikar, V primežu, 442, 443.



Fragments of furnace tiles from Šalek Castle, drawings from the material for a book Brišnik, Ravnikar, Grad Šalek, 1999.

2001, 2011

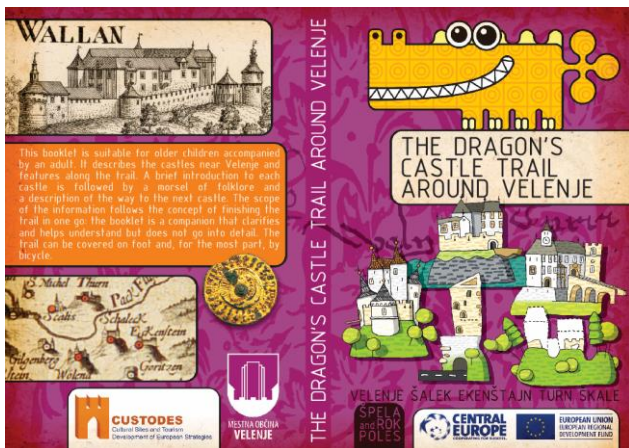
Notes by Špela Poles & the Pozoj Castle Trail around Velenje

At the youth research camp Erico – Velenje 1999 and 2000¹³⁷ and during the preparation of the guide for the Pozoj Castle Trail around Velenje (2011)¹³⁸ Špela Poles collected local oral tradition, including stories about Šalek castle and its surroundings:

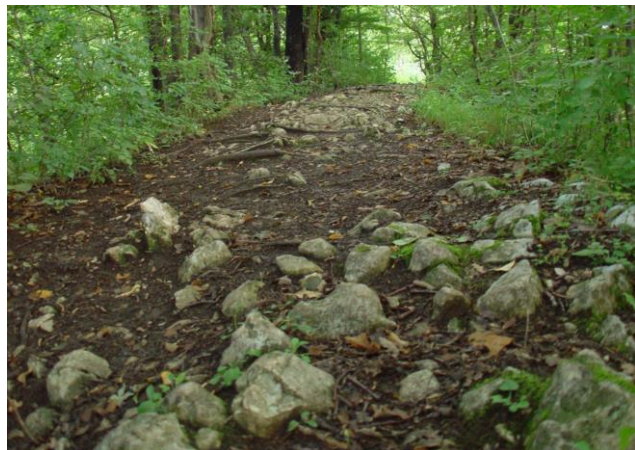
Šalek Castle is supposed to be just a watch and observation tower of Eckenstein Castle, which was a real castle. They are connected by an underground tunnel, and even today the ground in some places is hollow and drums under your feet if you walk along the ridge between the two castles, as if you're jumping on a barrel. The tunnel, which is said to hold a treasure, was searched in vain several times. The entrance is supposedly on the side of the castle towards Šafar or in the rocks on the west side, in a crevice that is supposedly "more closed" every year. In the crevice, the locals found stone bullets with which the Turks allegedly shelled Šalek Castle. The second tunnel is supposed to lead from Šalek to Velenje Castle.

The second tunnel is supposed to lead from Šalek to Velenje Castle. Once upon a time, the Austrians used plans to search the rocks, wanting to find a tunnel on the back of the hill, but a land owner urged them away and had a hole they discovered walled up, which is yet to be noticed. The boys from Šalek also tried finding the tunnel between the two castles by digging, but the gendarmerie wouldn't let them.

The hole of the underground tunnel supposedly reaches into the rocks below the castle where Kolavtar's pigsty was. Human bones were found in front of it, but no skull. They were taken to the cemetery to the church of St Martin. Disobedient subjects are supposed to be thrown into the hole. There's another wind pipe there. From Pavel's trough (spring), there's another corridor leading to the rocks near Košan's rocks. There's treasure in the castle ruins. The key to it is supposed to be in (now demolished) Šafar's house at the front door.



Cover of a guide to the Pozoj Castle Trail around Velenje



The path between the castles of Šalek and Eckenstein

¹³⁷ Poles, Grad, 280.

¹³⁸ Poles, Pozojeva, 36-38. Informers: Ciril Špital, Šalek 22, Velenje. Pavla, Alenka čas, Cesta X/34, Velenje. Including: manuscript of Alenka Čas from 1964 based on the narration of her mother Mira Čas. Mici Martinc, 1924, Cesta v Bevče 3, Velenje. Štefanija Prislán, 1914, Šalek 25, Velenje. Also her notes. Manja Janežič, Cesta I/16, Velenje. Jože Vanovšek, 1919, Koroška cesta 33, Velenje. Elizabeta Založnik, Lipa 1, Velenje.

When the subjects still had to work hard for the lords in the mighty castles, a very cruel noblewoman lived at Šalek Castle. She ruthlessly persecuted her subjects to work. When a rebellious farmer who refused to give tithes once suffered in the torture chamber, her reign was over. The farmer cursed her.

At that moment, the rock opened and swallowed the evil noblewoman, together with the torture chamber. For a long time, the subjects remembered the cursed noblewoman.

It happened in the 19th century when the first miners walked to work in the mine. It was New Year's Eve. The miner from Bevče stayed in the tavern after the shift and returned home towards midnight, up the cart track towards Bevče. Midnight started to chime in the church bell tower. He picked up his pace, but was then petrified: a fiery carriage with glowing horses, led by a black lady seated in the carriage rushed from the ruins of Šalek Castle. The carriage went in a flash to the old Eckenstein Castle and disappeared among the ruins. The clock struck, and the dumbstruck miner could not take another step. They found him in the morning half frozen in the snow. Only after a few days, he recovered and told the people what he had seen. There is supposed to be a cursed noblewoman in the carriage who cannot find peace. Every hundred years on New Year's Eve, she takes a carriage ride from one ruin to another. If a brave man dared to stop the fiery horses, he could save her. Thus, on quiet nights, she still weeps and cries in the spruce canopies around Šalek Castle.



A depiction of the story of a countess riding a burning carriage from a guide to the Pozoj Castle Trail around Velenje.



Stone seat in the rocks below the castle.

Just below the walls of Šalek Castle, in front of the rock cave, the children had a stone seat, from where there was a view of the Šalek village and towards Velenje Castle.

2018

Ruins project

As part of the Ruins project, in which the Municipality of Velenje was involved, a series of activities took place with the aim of creating a management plan for the castle.

Publication of ZVKDS OE Celje

ZVKDS OE Celje published a booklet about the castle, which presents the latest art-historical and conservation findings.



Façade drawings with the importance evaluation, Debevec, 2018.

The history of Šalek Castle

The history of the area, estates and stages of development

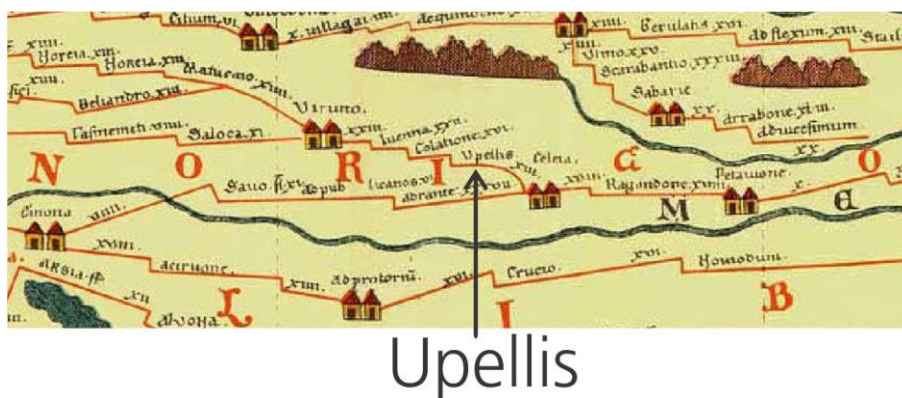
PREHISTORIC TIMES

The Šalek Valley and the surrounding hills have attracted settlers since the Early Stone Age. On the eastern edge of the Šalek Valley, in the Špehovka cave (above the River Paka on the slope of Tisnik), the remains of visits or short-term stays of ice age man were discovered. Stone and bone objects belong to the Aurignacian period. The cave was inhabited at about the same time as the Morn's cave on the northwestern edge of the valley. Later findings of small knives and a bone blade belong to the Gravettien culture. People also visited Špehovka in the Mesolithic.¹³⁹ Three polished stone axes from the Late Stone Age (Neolithic) and Copper Ages were found in the valley. The Bronze Age is represented by fragments of hand-made, poorly fired pottery from Šalek castle, although it is uncertain if there was also a building from that time on what was later on the castle hill. From the Iron Age, the findings are spearheads from the village of Bevče near Šalek and bronze bracelets from Špehovka.¹⁴⁰

The settlement name of the Roman post office Upellis is also said to be pre-Roman/pre-Romanesque.¹⁴¹

ROMAN ERA

With the intensive Roman conquest of today's Slovenian territory in the years 35 and 22 BC., the Šalek Valley fell under the administration of the Noric kingdom, which was in the years 41 and 54 AD included in the Roman state as a province in the years 41 to 54 AD. Remains of Roman bricks were found near Šalek in Stara vas and Šmartno, where they also found a Roman tombstone erected to Publius Aelius Speratin and his wife Candida by their son Sperat.¹⁴² Numerous Roman coins were found throughout the valley. The map of the Roman Empire (Tabula Peutingeriana) shows the post office Upellae at a distance of 13 Roman miles from Celeia (Celje) and 16 Roman miles from Colatia (Slovenj Gradec) – at the appropriate distance are the two present-day settlements, Velenje and Vitanje. A number of historians developed a theory that Upellae lies in Škale or by Stara vas in Velenje¹⁴³ on the vicinal Roman road that led from Celje and entered the Šalek Valley near Šalek, led through Upellae/Stara vas near Velenje, further across the Mislinja valley to Stari trg near Slovenj Gradec and on to Carinthia.¹⁴⁴



Indication of the place Upellis in Roman Noricum, presumably the Old Village near Velenje/Šalek, on the

¹³⁹ Mitja Brodar: *Ledenodobni ljudje v Šaleški dolini*. IN: Velenje, razprave o zgodovini mesta in okolice, Mestna občina Velenje, Velenje, 1999, p. 54.

¹⁴⁰ Danijela Brišnik: *Od kamnitih sekir do terre sigillate*. IN: Velenje, razprave o zgodovini mesta in okolice, Mestna občina Velenje, Velenje, 1999, p. 69.

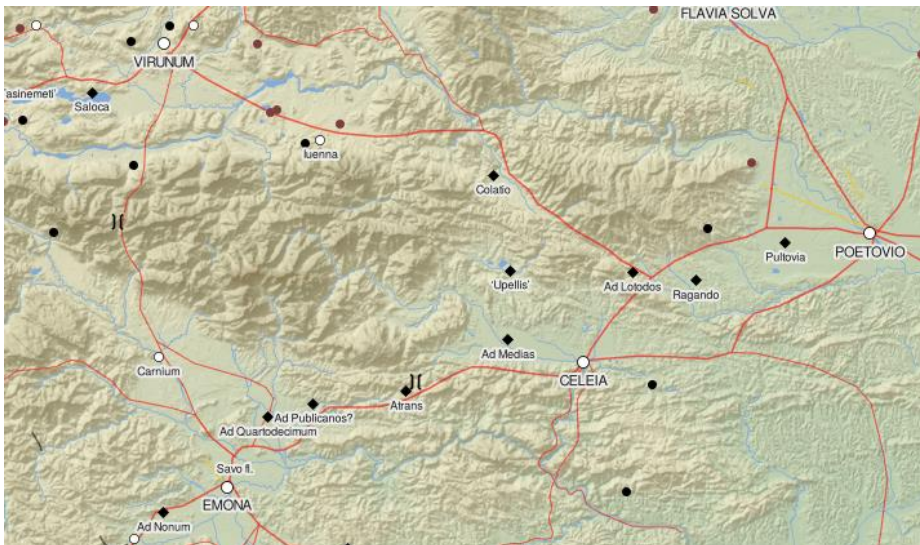
¹⁴¹ Repanšek, Keltska, 31.

¹⁴² Transcript and translation Milan Lovenjak, Poles, Poskok, 8.

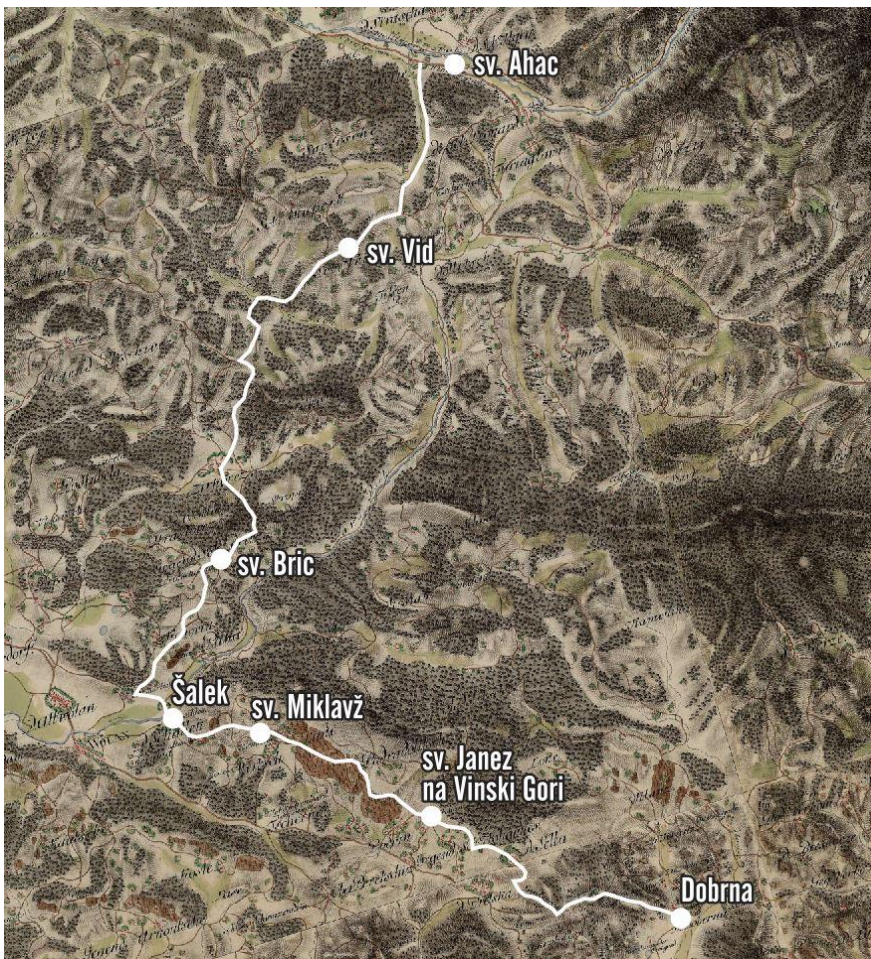
¹⁴³ Dr. Milan Ževart (1949: *Upellae = Velenje?* Essay. Muzej Velenje archives.) dr. Jaro Šašel (1954: *Upellae - Vitanje?* Historic time 8, 125 ss), dr. Jože Hudales (1989: *Kakšno je bilo Velenje v rimskih časih*, v: *Šaleški razgledi 2: Prispevki k zgodovini Šaleške doline*, 9 ss), dr. Tone Ravnikar (1989:). Digital Atlas of the Roman Empire, <http://imperium.ahlfeldt.se/places/13842.html>, Marjeta Šašel Kos, The early urbanization of Noricum and Pannonia. IN: *Roma e le province del Danubio*, 2009. http://iza.zrc-sazu.si/pdf/Sasel_Kos_Early_urbanization_2010.pdf

¹⁴⁴ Brišnik, Danijela: *From Late Antiquity to the Šalek drinking cup*. IN: Velenje, razprave o zgodovini mesta in okolice, Mestna občina Velenje, Velenje, 1999.

Roman map Tabula
Peutingeriana.¹⁴⁵



Road network in the
Roman times¹⁴⁶



Šalek is said to be located right on the freight route from Dobrna to St Ahac: *“This one goes from Dobrna through Sv. Janez on Vinska gora, Sv. Miklavž, next to the ruins of Šalek, then goes through Sv. Bric, Sv. Vid and ends near the church of St Ahac on the great Roman road leading from Celje to Virunum.”**

* Razprave, Slovenska akademija znanosti in umetnosti, Razred za zgodovinske in družbene vede, Ljubljana 1969, 350.

https://books.google.si/books?id=BlAoQAAMAAJ&q=schalleg&dq=schalleg&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=2ahUKEwiBvNPOn5LjAhUo_SoKHeHqCdk4ChDoATABegQIARAI - Planko, Upellae, states that there was a pagan temple on Graška gora, probably a miter, and an early Christian church from the 5th or 6th century (taken after Peter Petru, Ilustrirana zgodovina Slovencev 1979). It is probably about “Graška gora na Gosposveteh” or Graški holm = Grazerkogel - prim. Petru, archaeological, Peter Petru, Matija Žargi, National Museum in Ljubljana, Obzorja, 1983, str.

19. <https://books.google.si/books?id=LKgfAQAAMAAJ&q=Gra%C5%A1ki+gori+na+Gosposveteh&dq=Gra%C5%A1ki+gori+na+Gosposveteh&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=0ahUKEwjmIfGG1J3jAhVRpYsKHS71DmEQ6AEIJzAA>

¹⁴⁵ <https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/5/50/TabulaPeutingeriana.jpg>, 7/10/2017.

¹⁴⁶ <http://imperium.ahfeldt.se/places/13842.html>

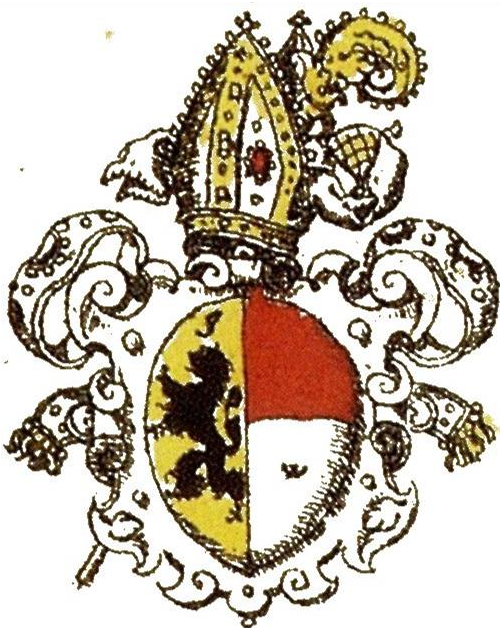
Or: Pahič Stanko: The so far unexplored section of the Roman road Celeia–Poetovio. IN: Dissertationes VI, Slovenian Academy of Sciences and Arts, class for historical and social sciences, Ljubljana 1969. *'For this reason, I cannot agree with the thesis developed by J. Šašel, Zgodovinski časopis 8, 1954, 125 ss, about the course of the Virun road through Velenje, as his reliance only on unexplored ancient settlement findings near Velenje, an unreliable medieval tradition (which points out, as stated in note 6, that the passage through Plešivec was useful only for lighter loads, while they drove "heavier wagons loaded with plums and grain, across Dobrna, Vitanje, Slovenj Gradec to Solnograd, from where they returned with salt) and a bare comparison of the geographical features of Velenje and Vitanje (Upellae was on the road between Celje and Colatija, just as a mutatio such as Ivenca on the way earlier and possibly Zg. Dovže half way on) with the lack of interim ancient finds is not enough to prove the Virun road through Velenje. /... / To Šašl, who does not get into topographical proving of his Roman road route, prim. Ferk's outline of the road across Lošperk in FTB 1900, 5 ss /.../ in a report to the Graz Savings Bank for 1892 (dated 15/1/1893), while here he also mentions "eine ungeahnte herrlich gebaute Römerstrasse" south of the church of Sv. Ahac in the direction supposedly towards Velenje, and in the report to the Graz Savings Bank for 1894 (dated 12/1/1895) there was also a vicinal road from Dobrna to Velenje and a freight route from Dobrna to Sv. Ahac: "Dieser geht von Neuhaus über St. Johann am Weinberg, St. nicolai, vorbei an der Ruine Schallegg, läuft dann über sv. Britz, St. Veit und mündet in der Nähe der St. Achazkirche in die grosse römische Itinerarroute ein, die von Celeia nach Virunum führte."*

MIDDLE AGES

Knowledge of the period of Late Antiquity, the time of great migrations and the early Middle Ages in the Šalek Valley is poor. However, pottery from Late Antiquity was found here, and in 2019 Slavic graves originating from the last 30 years of the 9th century were found in the church of St Martin: there were extremely rich accessories, especially women's jewellery – necklaces, rings, temple rings. This suggests that there were important representatives of the female sex at that time.¹⁴⁷ Perhaps, there was an elevated fort on the Gradišče hill. The settlement of Družmirje was allegedly named after a Slavic master/leader named Tresmir. The church of St George on Škale, mentioned at the beginning of the 12th century, had the status of an arch parish, only held by the oldest churches and centres of colonisation.

Šalek Castle was built in the first half of the 12th century. The free knights of the Šalek most likely came from Carinthia and earlier from Bavaria (along with the masters of the near-by Šoštanj/Kacenštajn), colonised the land and built their own church/castle chapel of St Martin. The original family retained ownership of the castle until the mid-13th century.

At that time, the initially free family was replaced by a new one, also named after Šalek Castle, but subordinate to the diocese of Krka in Carinthia, which—with the acquisition of Šalek—completed the diocesan estate in the eastern part of the Šalek Valley, stretching from Dobrna to Vinska Gora, through Lipje and Bevče to Šalek. The Bishop of Krka awarded Šalek Castle as a feudal possession to the Counts of Vovbre, on behalf of which it was managed by ministerial servants.



The crest of the Roman Catholic diocese of Krka¹⁴⁸ and the Counts of Vovbre.¹⁴⁹

¹⁴⁷<http://www.vtvstudio.com/pri-cerkvi-sv-martin-v-velenju-odkrili-staroslovanske-grobove/>

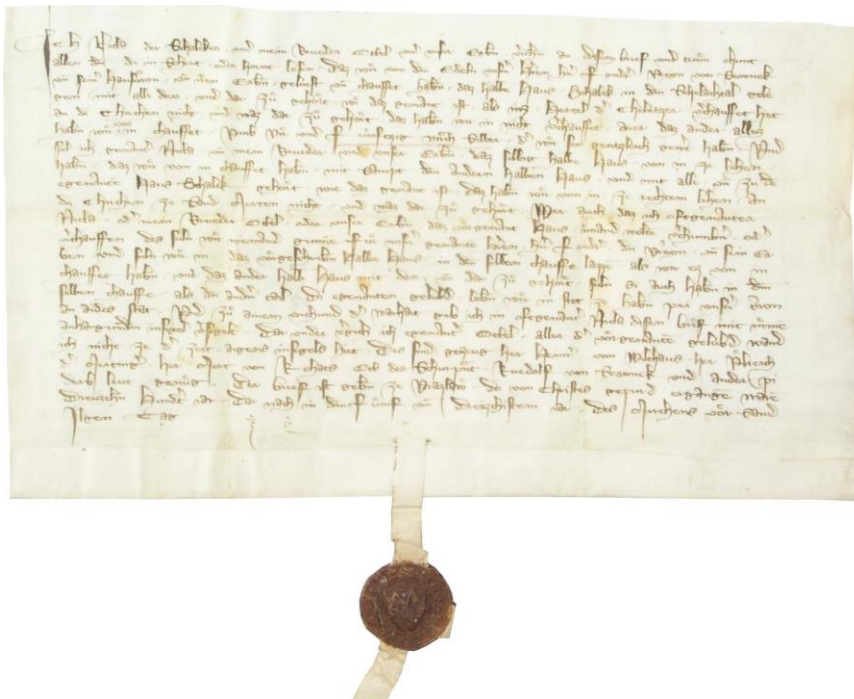
¹⁴⁸Johann Siebmacher: *Neue Wappenbuch*, https://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Liste_der_Bisch%C3%B6fe_von_Gurk-,Klagenfurt#/media/File:Gurksiebmacher.jpg, 29/10/2017. http://www.wappenbuch.de/pages/wappen_12_Siebmacher.htm, 29/10/2017.

¹⁴⁹Colours: Aleksander Hribovšek: The coat of arms of the Count of Cilli (Grbi grofov Celjskih), http://www.grboslovje.si/novice/2015_4_15_0001.php, 5/10/2017. Ravnikar, Grbi, 88, indicates the field was primarily red.

At the end of the 13th century, majority of the Šalek Valley was under the rule of Counts of Vovbre. Egeloff and Sigfrid of Šalek are mentioned in 1264, and in the early 14th century Wulfig and the brothers Leutold and Friedrich of Šalek are mentioned.

In 1314, Nikolaj and his wife Adelheid from Šalek sold Šalek Castle to Nikolaj's brother Otto and Offmainia from nearby Eckenstein Castle.

In 1322, when the Counts of Vovbre died, the lords of Šalek took opportunity and made the castle their feudal possession. However, they soon had to acknowledge the supremacy of the much more powerful lords of Žovnek. They completely controlled the Šalek Valley (except for the Velenje castle and square). In 1335, the Bishop of Krka granted Šalek Castle and Eckenstein castle to the lords of Žovnek. The Lords of Šalek rose to become the vassals of Žovnek. Soon after, they left the castle to manage other estates (Podčetrtek) for the Žovnek lords, who by that time had already become the Counts of Celje. Although they were serving elsewhere, the Lords of Šalek maintained bigger estates in Šalek (in 1404, they were owned by Doroteja, daughter of Ekhard of Šalek, who was serving in Vipava).



Crest of the lords of Žovnek.

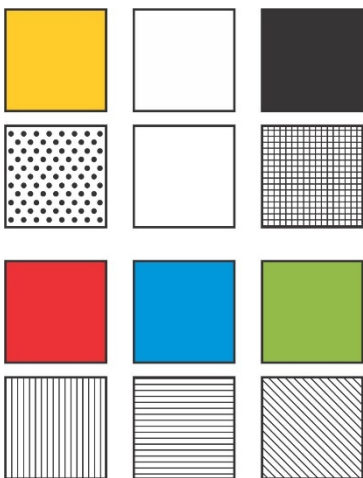
Purchase of the pledged half of Šalek Castle with its belongings from Friderik of Žovnek and receipt in feud. SI AS 1063/4034, 8/30/1335: Brothers Nikolaj (Nicla der Schaleker) and Oton (Ottel) from Šalek announce that they have bought from Friderik of Šalek (Friedreichen vrey von Sewnek), his wife and heirs (the pledged) half of the castle Šalek (Schalek), which lies in the Šalek Valley (Schelachtal) with all its belongings, as sold to them by Hertel Kollnitzer (Hertel der Cholntzer). At the same time, they received this half from the lord of Žovnek, except for the church of St. Martin, in feud.¹⁵⁰

¹⁵⁰ <http://arsq.gov.si/Query/detail.aspx?ID=132015>, 29/10/2017, Photo:
<http://arsq.gov.si/Query/bild.aspx?VEID=168364&DEID=10&SQNZNR=1>, 29/10/2017.

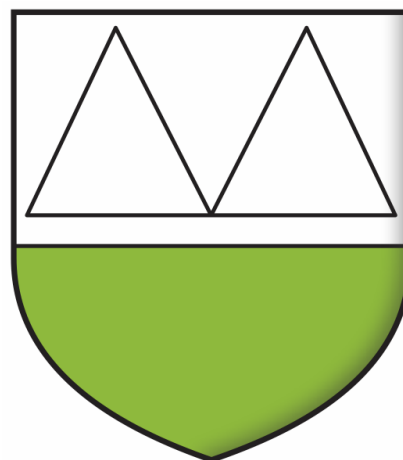


The seal of Nikolaj from Šalek and the enlargement of the crest from this seal.¹⁵¹

Based on the description from the Archives of the Republic of Slovenia this is a: "Round hanging emblem made of natural wax and fixed with parchment-dressed ribbon. Image: crest (divided area, two tips at the top). Legend: † S. NICOLAI * DE * SCHALEK." There is a hatching on the edge of the emblem on the lower half of the crest: parallel descending lines indicating green colour.

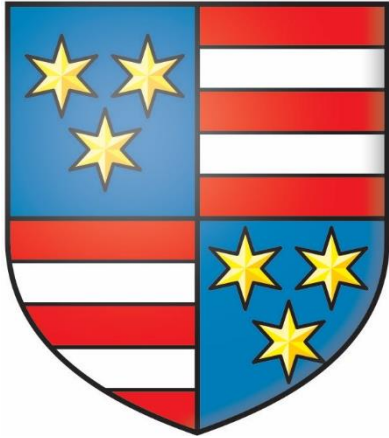


Heraldic colours and hatching



Crest of Nikolaj from Šalek: lower area is green

¹⁵¹ <http://arsq.gov.si/Query/bild.aspx?VEID=168365&DEID=10&SQNZNR=1>, 5/11/2017.



Crest of the Counts of Celje

Šalek Castle was managed for the Counts of Celje by secondary vassals or the counts granted it to the secondary feud. Thus, in 1353, Count Frederick I of Celje granted the feud to **Niklo/Nikolaj of Ojstrica/Kienberg** (from the castle Osterwitz-Ojstrica near Dravograd) “the more respectable Šalek Castle” – more reputable than Vuzenica/Kienberg Castle¹⁵²

Crest from the emblem of Nicklas of Ojstrica (of Kienberg/Ojstrica). ARS ZL 1353 XI 11.¹⁵³

D. Kos¹⁵⁴ divided castles and their owners based on the value of the castle to:

- up to 30 marks of silver: lower knights;
- 30–200 marks of silver: gentlemen and more important knights – Šalek Castle was classified into this category;
- 200–800 marks of silver: honourable gentlemen;
- 800 and above: counts and nobility.

In 1371, the castles of Šalek and Rifnik (Reicheneck) were in the feud (from the Counts of Celje) of Hans/Mert/Martin II of **Rifnik** (1338, † before 6. /10/1404). In 1428, his daughters Katarina and Agneza¹⁵⁵ sold the castle to the family of **Sobriach**. At that time, the castle is mentioned as vest Schallek.

¹⁵²Kos, Vitez, 334. ARS ZL 1353 XI11

¹⁵³Based on: Kos, Gradovi, 334.

¹⁵⁴Kos, Vitez, 83.

¹⁵⁵Boris Hajdinjak: Dobrnski until the beginning of the 15th century <https://docplayer.org/107519414-lz-zgodovine-dobrne-uredil-miha-preinfalk.html> mentions only Agneza. Dobrna, Kronika 62/2014, p. 387.



Crest of the Sobriach family from the chapel of St George at Ljubljana Castle.



Emblem with the seal of the family of Sobriach

In 1437, the Counts of Celje supposedly awarded Šalek Castle in feud to Thiem Hantschken – according to the Celje Feud Book.

In 1516, the castle was owned by the heirs of David Sobriach; these were of Pernek, of Raknitz, of Kain and the Lambergers, who confirmed their shares in 1542.

From the Sebriach family comes Ahac (Acacio de Sobriach, A. Sebriache de Sachlleck¹⁵⁶/della Carniola¹⁵⁷/Carinthiano¹⁵⁸), who enrolled at the University of Vienna in 1466, where he received his master's degree in 1470. Between 1475 and 1479, he studied in Padua, was pastor in Laško (1486), and between 1487 and 1500¹⁵⁹ he was appointed the 53rd Bishop of Trieste. He is considered a prominent theologian and humanist of his time.¹⁶⁰

Žiga Sebriach was twice the provincial governor of Carniola (for the first time as the 36th governor: 1463–1467 and for the second time as the 38th governor: 1470–1482, when he died).¹⁶¹

In 1458, the Bishop of Krka handed over to Žiga of Sebriach a feudal castle with 26 homes and 36 far scattered farms, some of which were already abandoned. The estate included several forests, the entire Koželj hill and the right to fish in the Paka from Huda luknja to the border with the Velenje lordship.¹⁶²

According to some sources, the Counts of Celje acquired this feud in their free possession – allod. After their extinction in 1456, the castle passed into the hands of the provincial princes, who then sold it on.¹⁶³ Other sources contradict this, stating that in 1458 the Bishop of Krka was still in possession of the Šalek estate.

¹⁵⁶ Ravnikar, Grad Šalek, 29.

¹⁵⁷ <http://www.istrianet.org/istria/religion/history/bishops.htm>, 30/10/2017.

¹⁵⁸F. Ireneo della Croce: *Historia antica, e moderna: sacra e profana, della citta di Trieste, celebre colonia de' cittadini romani ...*, Venezia, 1698. https://books.google.si/books?id=1qbEaTn8MRMC&pg=PA7-IA8&lpg=PA7-IA8&dq=Acacio+de+Sobriach&source=bl&ots=93_3S29r5k&sig=HWMHhP0WXZPYSt6GMWuXII_e70IY&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=0ahUKEwjEgrS545fXAhVKfoKHUUPAbY4ChDoAQg1MAI#v=onepage&q=Acacio%20de%20Sobriach&f=false, 30/10/2017

¹⁵⁹ Died on 29/12/1500. *Archeografo triestino*, Società di Minerva, 1921, p. 221.

¹⁶⁰ Ravnikar Tone: *Razmišljanja ob nekaterih odprtih vprašanjih iz preteklosti Šaleške doline*. IN: *Šaleški razgledi 2*, Prispevki k zgodovini Šaleške doline. Kulturni center Ivana Napotnika, Titovo Velenje, 1989, 26.

¹⁶¹ https://sl.wikipedia.org/wiki/Seznam_de%C5%Beelnih_glavarjev_Kranjske, 5/11/2017. There are two years (1466 and 1487) on frescoes in the chapel of George at Ljubljana Castle. Sequential numbering according to the list in Valvasor, *Deß Hochlöblichen*, 21, 22.

https://books.google.si/books?id=YWxUAAAcAAJ&pg=PA21&lpg=PA21&dq=sigmund+sebriach&source=bl&ots=YBUWY8oksZ&sig=9hGYXOnBB-vHkUOF_Zt2WGE0hal&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=0ahUKEwiyzds85qfXAhWFSRoKHCr8D9AQ6AEIQzAF#v=onepage&q=sigmund%20sebriach&f=false. http://www.grboslovje.si/novice/article_2010_09_17_0006.php, 5/11/2017.

¹⁶² Description of the manor according to the Celje land register from 1437 and the feudal document from 1458. Orožen, Dekanat Schallthal, 147-148, Pirchegger, Untersteiermark, 223, Stopar, Šalek, 7, Ravnikar, Šalek Castle, 30.

¹⁶³ https://sl.m.wikipedia.org/wiki/Grad_%C5%A0alek

LATE GOTHIC AND RENAISSANCE

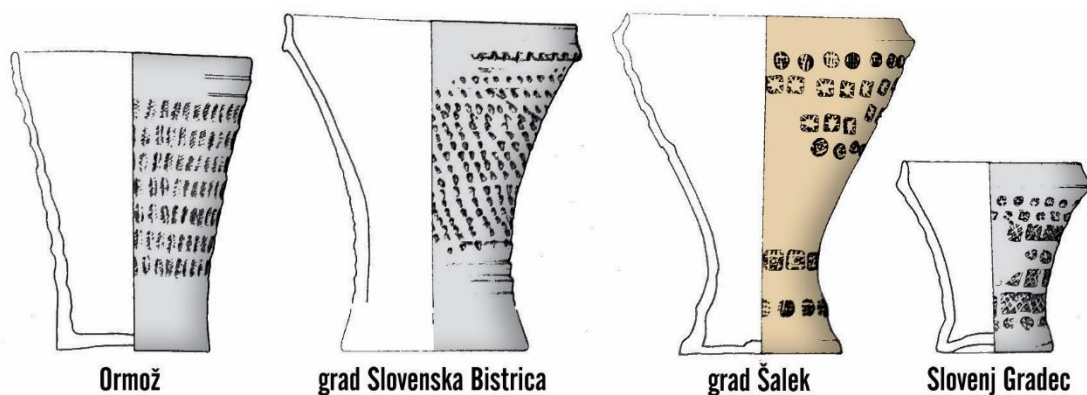
From the time when Šalek was owned by the Counts of Celje, at least three sets of findings connect it with the broader Celje area: a Celje-type glass (Šalek beer cup) with embossed seals, square pavers with a four-leaf motif, with which the Šalek church is paved, and furnace tiles.



Pavers made of unglazed fired clay are supposedly the product of a local workshop that operated in the Savinja Valley in the 15th century, and were found at Žovnek Castle and in the churches of St Andrew in Šalek and St Matevž in Šmatevž near Gomilsko.¹⁶⁴

Brick flooring in the church of St Andrew: primarily made for a church or transferred from the castle when it was abandoned at the end of the 18th century?

“Gothic Celje-type drinking cups in Slovenia with their distinct individual construction and rich ornaments are a very recognisable form of late medieval beer cups, which, as it seems, had to be in harmony with the unique, perhaps even prestigious attitude of the more aristocratic and bourgeois class to a personal goblet for drinking noble drinks. Drinking cups have a fine and characteristically shaped curvy rim. The handle is ribbed, in some cases smooth. The bottom is flat or slightly hollowed inward. We have almost no two identical specimens, as they differ in shape, size and ornaments. The decoration is made individually, varying from one specimen to another. They mostly have seals and stitches all over the surface, or the decoration is made with a wheel. /.../ The quality of clay and burning is very different; most have the characteristics of very hard, sounding pottery. They are rarely polished. In the total number of almost 200 known specimens of the Celje cups, larger cups stand out - those from Šalek.”¹⁶⁵



Gothic Celje-type drinking cups (according to Guštin)

¹⁶⁴Description as part of the exhibition on the Counts of Celje in Knežji dvor, Provincial Museum of Celje.

¹⁶⁵Guštin, Celjske čaše, 147, 156, 159.

As a document of time, it would be necessary to consider both heads on the arched corbels next to the triumphal arch in the church of St Andrew – the corbels here are bearing coats of arms of donors¹⁶⁶, and maybe there are even donors of noble birth depicted, namely the lords of Šalek who made donations for the church. It seems that stonecutter has made more of an effort to achieve a resemblance to the actual person than to have produced two symmetrically identical corbels.



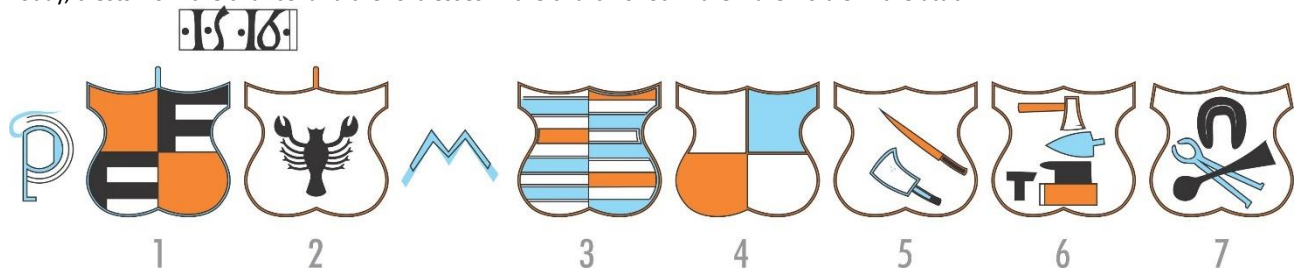
Arched corbels in the church of St Andrew in Šalek – portraits of noble birth donors?¹⁶⁷

A peculiarity of the architecture from the first construction phase of the church in Šalek is that—at least so it seems—the buttresses reached to the roof. This type of design system is actually extraordinary, otherwise the buttresses end under the top of the wall with their own ridged roof.

Let us repeat: in 1516, Šalek Castle was owned by David Sobriach's heirs; these were of Pernek, of Raknitz, of Kain and the Lambergers, who confirmed their shares in 1542. The painting at the end of the chancel in the Šalek church dates back to 1516, meaning that it was already finished that year. Four coats of arms of noble families and the three guild crests were preserved (the drawings were obscured by later added arched arches between the outer fortresses).



Today, crests from the chancel and the fortresses in the church of St Andrew are visible in the attic



¹⁶⁶In the church in Vinska Gora, two keystone corbels are bearing coats of arms of the lords of Dobrna. Poles, Gospodje Dobrnski, 416.

¹⁶⁷ Similar corbel portraits: cloister, dominican monastery in Ptuj, Jože Curk: Dominican monastery in Ptuj, construction historical sketch, p. 323. https://issuu.com/s.kolibri/docs/dominikanski_samostan_ptuj_za_splet

Crests from the chancel and the fortresses in the church of St Andrew testify that this is a common institution of noblemen (crests 1: Lamberger?, 2: crab?¹⁶⁸, 3:?, 4:?) in guild associations (5: butchers, 6: blacksmiths, 7: horseshoe blacksmiths).¹⁶⁹

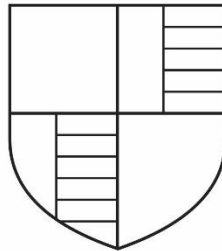
Since a matroneum was also built for the noblemen on the west side of the church (with its own entrance and external staircase), the church was almost undoubtedly a noble institution of gentlemen from nearby Šalek Castle. Then, it would be logical that the four painted coats of arms were actually the coats of arms of the four owners of the castle.



grb Lambergerjev



zrcalna slika



osnovna delitev



grb s cerkve v Šaleku

The coat of arms of the Lambergers and the relationship between the mirror disposition of the geometry of this coat of arms and the coat of arms on the church in Šalek

The basic breakdown of the first coat of arms is identical to the Lamberger's coat of arms if it is mirrored vertically. This kind of mirroring was not uncommon in art, since the motifs circulated through the transmission of graphic prints, and the sides could be swapped when cutting/imprinting.

The Racknitz/Ragnitz family had a front half of a white donkey on a red base in its coat of arms.¹⁷⁰ However, due to the extraordinary similarity of the surname "Raknic" with the word "rak" (en: *crab*), it is difficult not to link the idea that the coat of arms with black crab, depicted on the keystone of the Šalek church alongside the Lamberger coat of arms, may be depicted as the talking coat of arms of the knights of Racknitz.



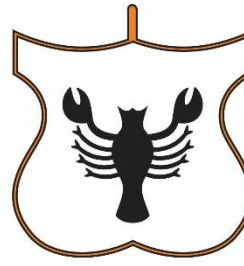
Kainach



Pernek



Rakniški (Racknitz)



Rakniški?

Coats of arms of the Kain,¹⁷¹ Pernek¹⁷² and Raknitz family¹⁷³ and the coat of arms depicting crab from Šalek church.

*"The Lambers are a Carniolan noble family, probably from Carinthia, from where they first came to the Gorenjska region as ministerial servants of the Ortenburgs. The family became important in the 15th century, reaching the top of its importance in the 17th and 18th century. Lambers were soldiers, statesmen, diplomats, and church dignitaries. In the Carniola region, they had many estates and castles: Bled, Boštanj, Brdo pri Lukovici, Čemšenik, Čretež, Črnelo, Gamberk, Graben, Gutenberg, Kamen, Logatec, Mirno, Ortnek, Smreka, Stara Loka, Stari Gutenberg, Snežnik, Trniče pri Begunjah, Pusti grad near Radovljica and Zaprice (according to Valvasor)."*¹⁷⁴ The best known members of the family are Žiga (1420–1488), the first Bishop of Ljubljana, and knight Gašper (around 1463–around 1515) from the castle Kamen pri Begunjah, who *"as a commander in the service of Maximilian I, Holy Roman Emperor, fought in Belgium, Germany, Italy, Austria and Slovenia. He was also the Emperor's personal friend and the most famous tournament duelist of his time in Central Europe. Due to his courage and success, he even became the hero of the Slovenian folk tale Pegam and Lambergar. Gašper's son Jakob II further consolidated the importance of the Lamberger family – he was an*

¹⁶⁸A crayfish is depicted vertically on a silver base. Today, red is associated with crab (red as crab), but crab only turns red after cooking (= dead), and heraldic animals are depicted alive. E.g.: Hesekeil, Der Capitain, 506.

¹⁶⁹Poles et al., Sacral, 187, additionally coloured.

¹⁷⁰ Several depictions with Siebmacher, Johann Siebmachers allgemeines großes und vollständiges Wappenbuch, 8tes Supplement, Nürnberg 1787, 6. https://reader.digitale-sammlungen.de/de/fs1/object/display/bsb10329178_00013.html

¹⁷¹ Adapted from Siebmacher: https://reader.digitale-sammlungen.de/de/fs1/object/display/bsb10329173_00023.html

¹⁷² http://wappen.tiroler-landesmuseen.at:81/index34a.php?wappen_id=2875

¹⁷³ <https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/de/7/73/Racknitz-Wappen.png>

¹⁷⁴ <http://arsq.gov.si/Query/detail.aspx?ID=24846>

*imperial councillor, commander of the Carniolan noble army and Carniolan provincial governor. Since he was the organiser of the defence against the Turks, commanders and eminent guests from all over Europe gathered at his castle and in Ljubljana.*¹⁷⁵

In 1505, a bell was cast, kept in Šalek church, which was supposed to have been brought from the castle chapel. The bell has the inscription + sancta maria ora pronobis mccccv.

+ S A N C T A M A R I A O R A P R O N O B I S M C C C C V



Bell from the castle chapel, according to tradition.

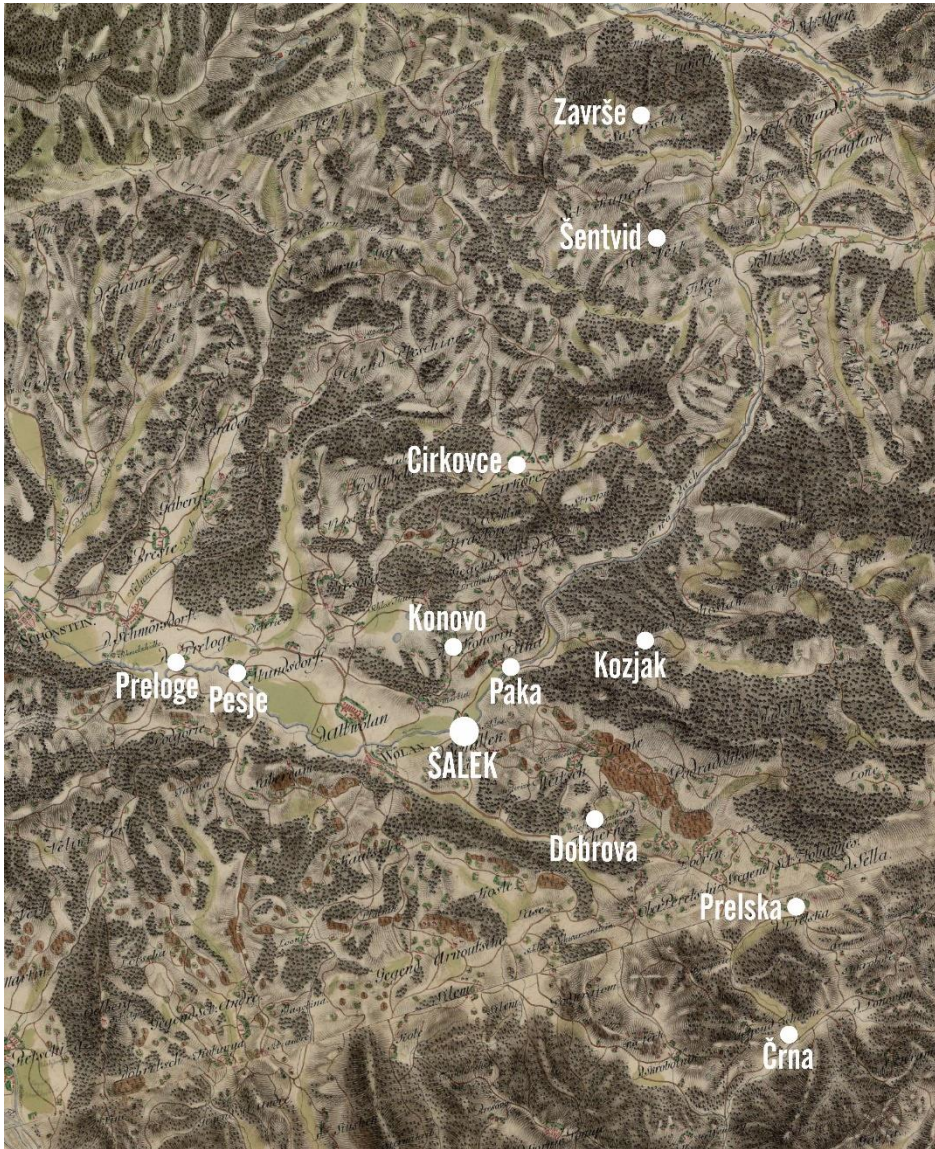
Assuming that the bell was made for the castle chapel, it should have already been built in 1505. However, the chapel was first mentioned in a visitation protocol from 1545.¹⁷⁶ Anyhow, in the first half of the 16th century, the castle was obviously already remodelled: it was probably already expanded with additional buildings around the triangular tower in the south-east part, where we see the chapel in Vischer's graphics. This means that they also changed the defensive concept of the castle: they abolished the former defensive gallery on the outside of the tower, where a two-storey extension with a chapel on the top floor leaned. The renaming of Šalek may also indicate reconstructions: if it was previously called *vest* = fortress, it was now a *sloss* = castle (1480).

At property appraisal (probably in 1542, when other manors from Lower Styria were also subject to appraisal), the profits from the free land under the Lords of Šalek was estimated to 1,023 forints and 57 crowns, and the value of the profits from the rustic land was estimated to 83 forints and 43 crowns. At that time, the Šalek estate comprised of three districts with 105 houses in Dobrova, Pesje, Konovo, Kozjak, Paka, Prelska, Završe, Zgornji and Spodnji Šalek, Črna (Črnova) and Cirkovce.¹⁷⁷

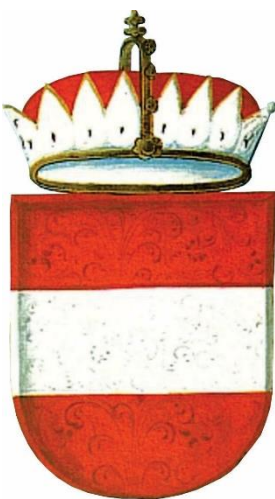
¹⁷⁵<http://www.viharnik.com/content.php?IDb=99>

¹⁷⁶ Orožen, Dekanat Schallthal, 127, 147, Stopar, Šalek, 24.

¹⁷⁷ Schmutz, Historisch, 463, Orožen, Dekanat Schallthal, 147-148, Stopar, Šalek, 7.



Places where the serfs of the Lords of Šalek were coming from



In 1575 Erazem Raumschüssel is mentioned as the owner of Šalek, to whom the castle was granted by the **provincial prince**.¹⁷⁸

Provincial coat of arms¹⁷⁹

¹⁷⁸ https://sl.m.wikipedia.org/wiki/Grad_%C5%A0alek

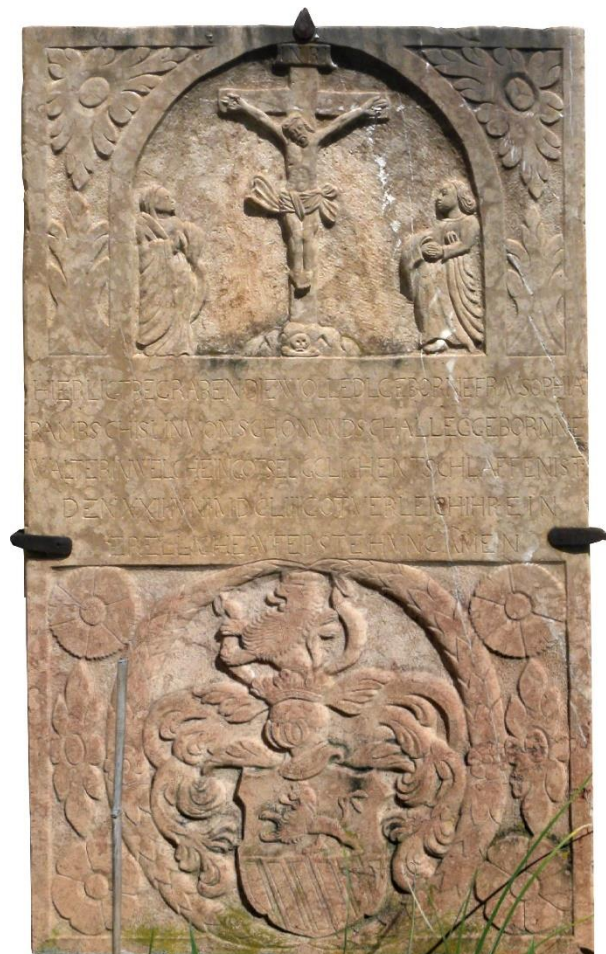
¹⁷⁹ https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/d/d5/Privilegium_maius_detail.jpg

The **Ramschüssls** are considered “one of the most respected Lower Styrian families of that time.”¹⁸⁰ Jurij Ramschüssel took part in the witch trial in Šoštanj in 1581: ¹⁸¹ report of the Styrian provincial executioner Jakob Bithner, from 2 February 1581, states that he settled a dispute in Šoštanj between Jurij Raumschuessl and a market woman over witchcraft, an obvious insult to honour due to slander.

The lords of Šalek were Protestants, as evidenced by the visitation protocols of 1620, 1631 (Rosina Elizabeta Ramschissl), 1641.¹⁸² Along with them, individual gentlemen from Ekenstein, Velenje, Gradič, Turn, a judge from Šoštanj, etc. are also mentioned as Protestants. The rest of the people were Catholic. Erazem Ramschüssel protected the castle from being looted by the peasants during the peasant uprising of 1635 by supplying the revolting army with weapons and men, for which he was tried in Celje after the suppression of the uprising.¹⁸³ Two tombstones of the Raumschüssel family from Šalek, Rosina Ursula and Sophie, are known.



Top: tombstone of Rosina Ursula Rambšisl, supposedly from the chapel of Šaleški grad, 1626.



Right: tombstone of Sophie Rambshisl “von Schon(enegg¹⁸⁴)Und Schallleg ’, Waidhoffen an der Ybbs, Austria, 1653-185

¹⁸⁰ Stopar, Grad, 6.

¹⁸¹ According to Ravnikar, he was accused of witchcraft, but not convicted, Grad Šalek, 30, after Byloff, Hexenglaube, 47th <https://books.google.si/books?id=ul1uwoI9BD4C&pg=PP2&lpg=PP2&dq=byloff+hexenglaube&source=bl&ots=mk0sUaCiSX&sig=NcPq9qMVIDnL30cDI-7ZxuyGmHo&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=2ahUKEwjtnvD8m67dAhXEZ1AKHaQCAZoQ6AEwCXoECAEQAQ#v=onepage&q=byloff%20hexenglaube&f=false>

¹⁸² Orožen, Dekanat Schallthal, 32, 33. Stopar, Grad, 39.

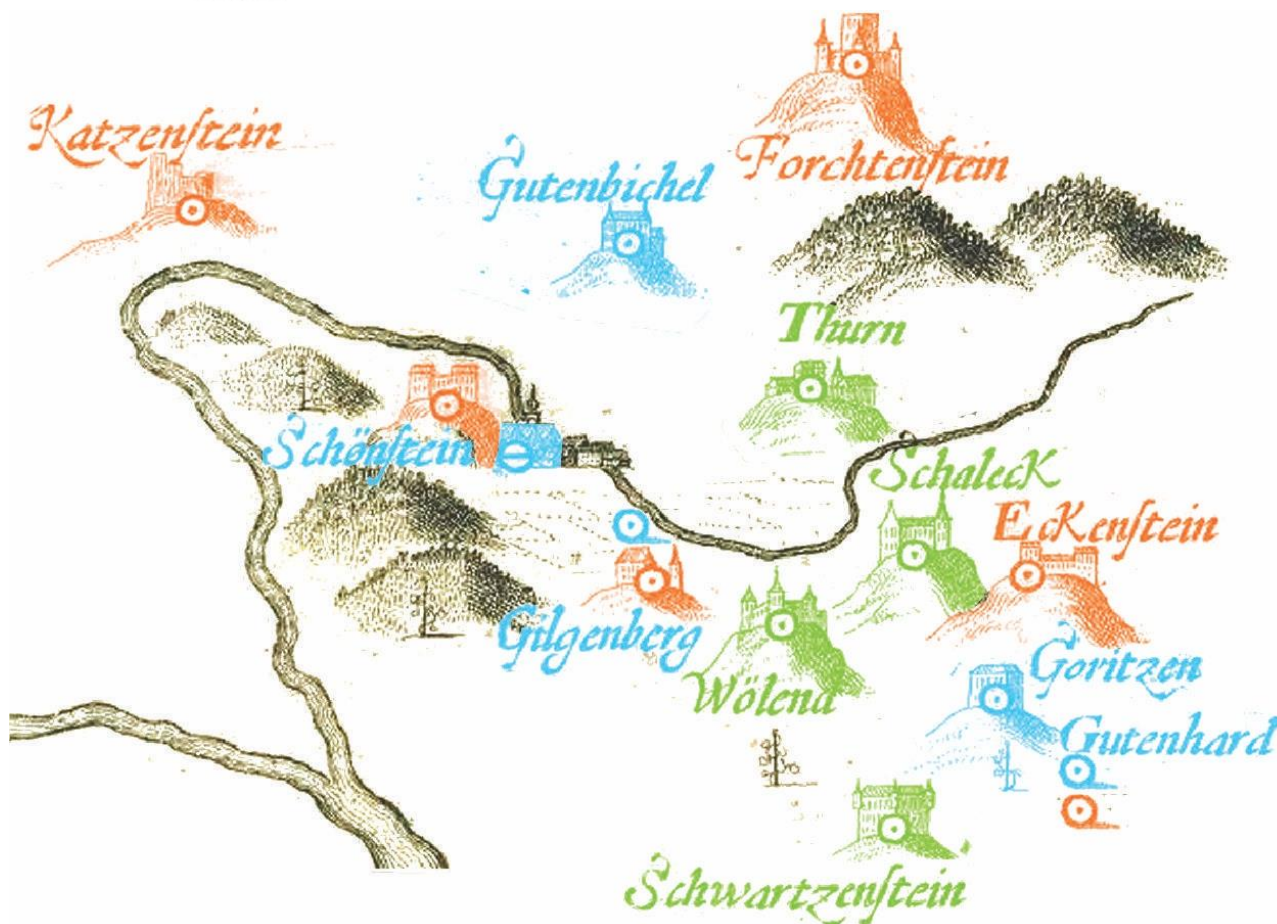
¹⁸³ Ravnikar, Grad Šalek, 30.

¹⁸⁴ Gadolla of Šalek, 56, mentions the inventory after Jurij Ramschüssel in Šenek/Schoenegg.

¹⁸⁵ The tombstone is built into the exterior of the town parish church of St. Mary Magdalene and Lambert, Waidhoffen on Ybbs, Austria. Picture consisting of: Herbert Fischer, 19/5/2016, [Http://tng.adler-wien.eu/showmedi.phptuximalD=96756](http://tng.adler-wien.eu/showmedi.phptuximalD=96756), 5/11/2017; and https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/6b/Waidhofen_and_Pfarrkirche_hll_andd_Lambert_and_Grabstein_an_der_Kirche.jpg, 5/11/2017. Transcript: HIER LIGT BEGRABEN DIE WOLLEDL GEBORNE FRAY SOPHIA / RAMBSCHISLIN VON SCHON VND SCHALLEG GEBORNNE / WALTERIN WELCHE IN GOT SELIGGLICH ENTSCHLAFFEN IST / DEN XXII IVNI MDCLIII GOT VERLEIH IHR EIN / ERELICHE AVFERSTEHVNG AMEN



Computer-coloured coat of arms of Vernek from the tombstone of Rosina Ursula Rambšič, born Vernek. Maybe the heraldic plate was originally actually polychromatic.



Wider contextual framework of events in the Šalek Valley - the development of the castle network in the Renaissance: orange - marked castles that were destroyed, green - castles that were adapted for a more comfortable stay, blue - new mansions created as heirs of old castles.

Šalek castle was one of the four castles in the Šalek Valley (in addition to Velenje, Turn and Švarcenštajn castles), which managed to change from the originally distinctly military fortresses of the Middle Ages (with additions, changes, development) into a Renaissance dwelling, which took over all available improvements of the new way of life from the 15th century onwards, e.g. larger glazed windows, furnaces, etc. One of the large renovation works at the castle—definitely in the new Renaissance style—can be associated with the inscription on the arched frame of the main door (Erazem Raumschüssel 1620/1626).¹⁸⁶

In the middle of winter 1676, when it was owned by the Raumschüssel family, the castle burned down for the first time, but was rebuilt. On 10 January 1676, master builder Primož Pšerničnik (Pschernitschnikh) from Šoštanj, as an official representative of the state, estimated the damage at 2,866 florins.¹⁸⁷

¹⁸⁶ Gadolla of Šalek, 173.

¹⁸⁷ Stopar, Grad, 24, taken from: Kolbach, Rochus: Steirische Baumeister, Tausendundein Werkmann, Graz, 467. Also http://www.gradovi.net/grad/salek_grad



The coat of arms of the Raumschüssel family, taken after Siebmacher and Valvasor,¹⁸⁸ additionally computer-coloured.

The talking coat of arms explains the surname in German: Raum + Schüssel; three silver bowls (=Schüssel in German language) with silver spoons floating in the space (=Raum in German).

Mentions:

- Daniel Ramschüssel auf Schallleg.¹⁸⁹
- Michael Ramschissl baron von Schönegg und Schallleg (1669), wife Johanna Schoberin¹⁹⁰
- Franz Reiner baron Ramschüssel von Schönegg und Schallleg¹⁹¹
- In 1662 Rosina Elisabeth von Ramschüssel zu Schöneck und Schalllegg is mentioned, born von Keutschach zu Tanzenberg¹⁹²
- Franz Raimund Freiherrn Ramschüssel von Schönegg zu Schalllegg, owner of Frankenstein/Ramschüsselhof in Carinthia.¹⁹³

¹⁸⁸<https://www.arcanum.hu/hu/online-kiadyok/Siebmacher-siebmacher-wappenbuch-1/der-adel-add-add-add-add-add-add-10776/>, 9/11/2017. Valvasor, Opus insignium armorumque, 1688. Deß Hochlöblichen Hertzogthums Crain Topographisch Historischer Memminger

https://books.google.si/books?id=pspNgSnp6r8C&pg=PA91&lpg=PA91&dq=rambschissel + wapen&source=in&hadntots=P1xhWNaNc8&sig=__uxHjDtc2c H5N8yNVcgR5wtsw&hl=of=en&a=X of&sciences=0ahUKEwicrSMk7DXAhVFaQKHSU8A4sQ6AEIUjAL # in=onpage&q are=% f to financial institutions20wapen&=rambschissel 92nd 119

¹⁸⁹Gubo, Geschichte, 236.

¹⁹⁰Monatsblatt des Heraldisch-Genaeologischen Vereines "Adler", 1901.

<https://books.google.si/books?id=PhAWAAAAYAAJ&q=schalllegg&dq=schalllegg&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=2ahUKEwiu3YHSnJLjAhUsxlsKHcnbCDU4eBDoATAGegQIARAc>

191

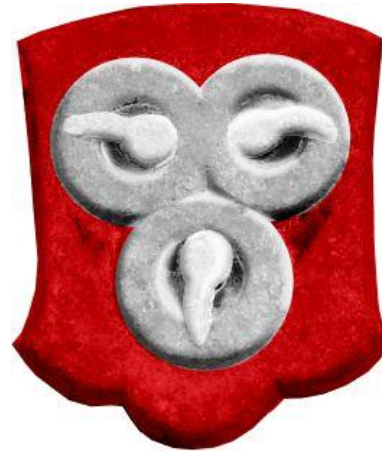
Franz Xaver Kohla, Gustaf Adolf von Metnitz, Gotbert Moro: Kärntner Burgenkunde: Quellen- und Literaturhinweise zur geschichtlichen und rechtlichen Stellung der Burgen, Schlösser und Ansitze in Kärnten sowie ihrer Besitzer. Geschichtsverein für Kärnten, 1973.

<https://books.google.si/books?id=P5AhaAAAAMAAJ&q=schalllegg&dq=schalllegg&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=2ahUKEwiU0cuZnJLjAhXlh4sKHVw5C204bhDoATAGegQIARAc>

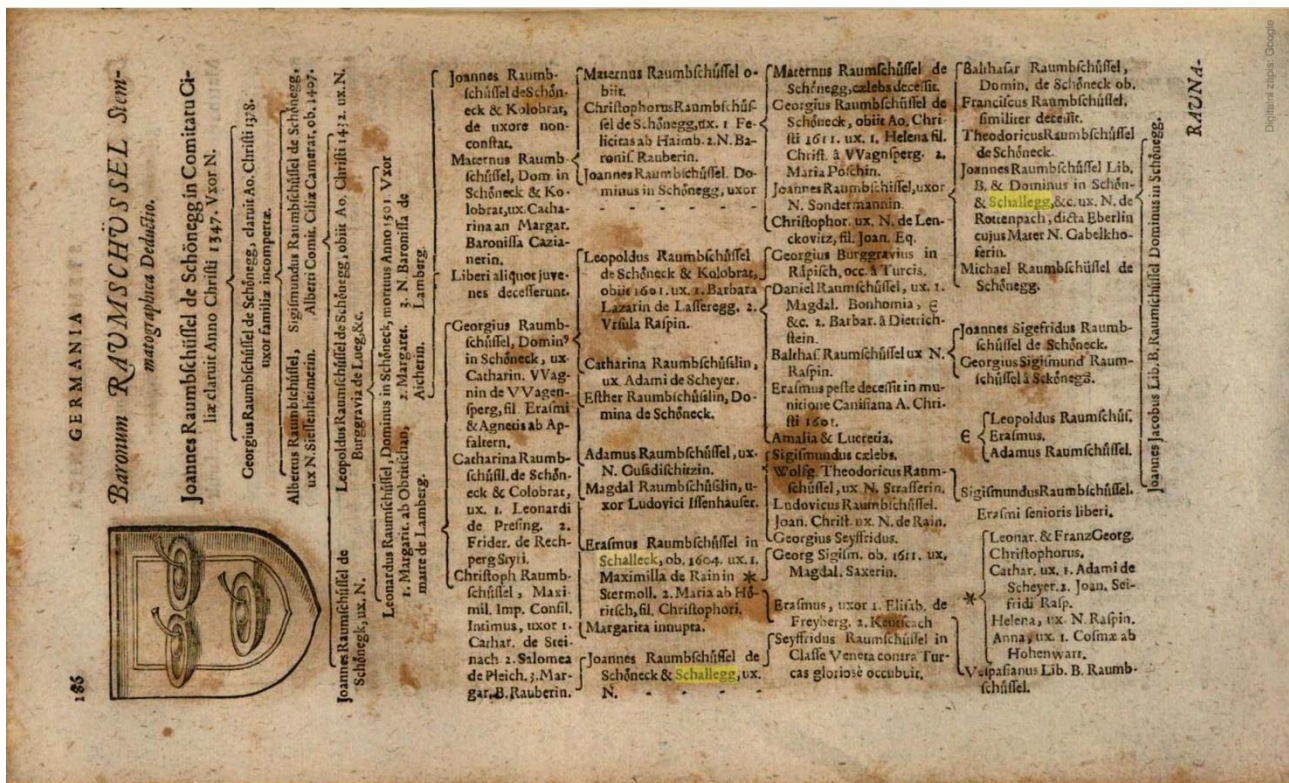
¹⁹²Hans Pawlik: Archiv für vaterländische Geschichte und Topographie, 2009,

<https://books.google.si/books?id=JxEtAQAAIAAJ&q=schalllegg&dq=schalllegg&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=0ahUKEwj1r7ntu6TjAhXqsYsKHablD4eBDoAQhQMAY>

¹⁹³Barbara Felsner: Ein Spaziergang von Kremschitz zum Kirchlein St. Leonhard und über Winklern und Frankenstein nach St. Georgen am Weinberg, source: Internet.



The coat of arms of Sibila Gabelkhoven, born Raumschüssel, is carved in stone.¹⁹⁴ Additionally computer-coloured middle field. The stylisation of bowls and spoons is so pronounced that they are virtually unrecognisable.



The Raumschüssel family tree, with three of its members connected to Šalek.¹⁹⁵ Spoons and bowls in the coat of arms are also very prominent.

¹⁹⁴ Coat of arms on Friderik's and Sibila's epitaph Gabelkhoven († 1653), Originally in the church of Sv. Jurij in Škale, transferred to Marija's church in OldVelenje.

¹⁹⁵ Bucelini Gabrielis: Germanie Topo-chrono-stemmatopographicae, sacre et profanae, 1672.

<https://books.google.si/books?id=vfyf0cvXRysC&pg=RA8-PA186&lpg=RA8-PA186&dq=schallegg&source=bl&ots=NEvb-RgKRY&sig=qinHXJ9nSydAD63bZRFKjz00U94&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=2ahUKewiEz6Lus77CAhXOskQKHct8Dm14FBDoAtACegQIAxAB#v=onepage&q=schallegg&f=false>



Margaret, widow of Erasmus Raumschüssl Jr., born Baroness Bucheim, sold Šalek to her cousin Otto Baron **Teuffenbach** in 1664. In 1688, two sons and a daughter of the deceased baron are mentioned relating to Šalek. During their period, in 1694, a votive painting was created from the castle chapel. Mary is depicted as the Loreto Mother of God with a papal tiara, which is an extraordinary iconographic motif in the Slovenian space. The ladies of the castle are dressed in French court fashion.¹⁹⁶

Analogue depictions of the Loreto Mother of God with a papal tiara testify to the context of the Šalek painting.¹⁹⁷ It originates from the iconography of the Loreto Mother of God and is, therefore, linked to the Italian cultural/ideological space.



¹⁹⁶Poles, Sakralna, 227.

¹⁹⁷1: The Blessed Virgin of Loreto, patroness of Cremona, <http://www.ncregister.com/blog/MHartog/mary-in-all-her-glory>

2: Angels carry our Lady's holy house to Loreto, an anonymous 17th-century painting. Mexico. http://www.tfp.org/science-tyms-angels-took-the-house-oph-lum_number&=email&utm_content&=TFP160812 utm_code=tfp_newsletter

3: Madonna of Loreto, 1822, picture from Piemonte. https://1.bp.blogspot.com/-OXOfZsLZHE/WExUC1BKZzl/AAAAAAS14/LOfTBrhxPgOdOPMhDm_BizIXvrSEsTvBgCLcB/s1600/1481392586226_M5_width.jpg

4: anonymous sculptor, Our Lady of Loreto, first half of the 18th century, Museum of the Diocese of Warsaw Czechos.org/wiki/File:Anonymous_Statue_of_of_Loreto.jpg

5: Our Lady from Oropa, Italy. <http://interfaithmary.net/black-madonna-introduction/>

6: Crown on Mary' statue on the Loreto path in Cremona. <http://www.duepassinelmistero.com/madonnaeracrema.htm>

7: http://www.agorabrenna.it/blog/wp-content/uploads/2015/10/chiesa_olgelasca_05.jpg



Otto Friedrich Teuffenbach (+1695) was married to Jožefa Katarina Elizabeta, born Ruess von Ruessenstein zu Wiederdriess. His son Ferdinand Leopold Baron Teuffenbach is said to have been born in Šalek in 1678 (+1713) and in 1708 he is mentioned as the lord of Šalek.¹⁹⁸ Siblings: Anna Cecilija, Frančiška Elizabeta, Karl.¹⁹⁹ The Teuffenbachs owned various estates in Styria.²⁰⁰

Carolus Otto Ignatius Teuffenbach-Schalleg is mentioned in the matrix of the University of Innsbruck.²⁰¹

After the fire, the Teuffenbachs gave the castle the shape we know from the graphics in Vischer's Topography.

Coat of arms of the Teuffenbach family.²⁰²



In 1722 the owner of Šalek was Georg Ignaz Baron Mauerburg, the owner of Branek near Ljutomer, Dolnji grad (the seat of the Ljutomer lordship), Cven. His wife is said to be Jožefina Katarina Elizabeta, born Baroness Teuffenbach, they had two daughters. Baron Mauerburg died in 1730, aged 42, and is buried in Ljutomer. The guardian of his minor daughters became Karel Leopold baron Gabelkhoven,²⁰³ who was also supposed to be the owner of Šalek in 1732.²⁰⁴

Thus, we soon found a connection between Teuffenbach, Mauerburg and Gabelkhovn as successive owners of Šalek.

Coat of arms of the Mauerburg family.²⁰⁵

¹⁹⁸ Johann IV Weiss: Geschichte des Herzogthums Steiermark, Gratz 1860, str. 37.

<https://books.google.si/books?id=bCG5SksXJecC&pg=PA37&dq=teuffenbach+schallegg&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=0ahUKewjFgd7Q05TjAhUixosKHRt-CJIQ6AEIKzAH#v=onepage&q=teuffenbach%20schallegg&f=false>, tudi https://sl.m.wikipedia.org/wiki/Grad_%C5%A0alek

¹⁹⁹<https://www.geni.com/people/Ferdinand-Leopold-von-Teuffenbach/6000000082701783340>

²⁰⁰ [https://de.m.wikipedia.org/wiki/Teuffenbach_\(Adelsgeschlecht\)](https://de.m.wikipedia.org/wiki/Teuffenbach_(Adelsgeschlecht)). E.g. also: Leopold von Beckh Widmanstetter: Studien an den Grabstätten alter Geschlechter der Steiermark und Kärntens, Auszug aus der Stammtafel der Herren von Teuffenbach:

https://books.google.si/books?id=zdUy_eJcZPgC&pg=PT5&dq=schalleck+schloss&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=2ahUKewixvzbV18njAhXIs4sKHRkvDQo4ChDoATADegQIARAR#v=onepage&q=schalleck%20schloss&f=false

²⁰¹ Die Matrikel der Universität Innsbruck, Universitätsverlag Wagner, 1952.

<https://books.google.si/books?id=XOxNAAAAMAAJ&q=schalegg&dq=schalegg&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=2ahUKewiViq-XnpLjAhWipIsKHXTJCCw4HhDoATAAegQIARAD>

²⁰² [https://de.m.wikipedia.org/wiki/Teuffenbach_\(Adelsgeschlecht\)#/media/Datei%3ACOA_Teuffenbach_192.png](https://de.m.wikipedia.org/wiki/Teuffenbach_(Adelsgeschlecht)#/media/Datei%3ACOA_Teuffenbach_192.png)

²⁰³ Pintarič, Odnosi, 63.

²⁰⁴ https://sl.m.wikipedia.org/wiki/Grad_%C5%A0alek

²⁰⁵ Ibid. - The seal of Baron Mauerburg is also on a document in the Maribor Provincial Archives. http://images.monasterium.net/img/SI-PAM/Zbirka-listin/si_pam-0001_00683.jpg

Almost as soon as the lordship was taken over by the **Gabelkhovens**, they united it with their Turn Castle estate in Škale and managed it from there, according to Gadolla as early as 1732.²⁰⁶ The lordship of Turn-Šalek is even mentioned. At that time, several lordships were merged in the Šalek Valley, often selling the commercial (dominical) part: Šalek + Turn, Lilienberg + Velenje,²⁰⁷ Schwarzenstein + Velenje,²⁰⁸ Forhtenek + Šoštanj.

The Gabelkhoven family had a “talking coat of arms”: two crossed forks are depicted (= Gabel in German).



The stone-carved coat of arms of the Gabelkhoven family, from nearby Turn Castle.²⁰⁹ Additional computer-coloured middle field.

Old fork shape with two forks.

After Gadolla,²¹⁰ the estate owners were:

- **Leopold Karel Jožef** baron Gabelkhoven, provincial councillor,²¹¹ lord of Fohrtenek, Šalek and Vodriž (* 1704† 1777), who allegedly sold Šalek to his mother after the death of his wife;
- **Ana Marija Eleonora** baroness Gabelkhoven, widow of Janez Jožef, who is mentioned in 1740, 1742, 1749, 1751 as the mistress of the lordships of Turn and Šalek;
- After her death 1752/1753 six heirs;
- 1771–1774 Leopold baron Gabelkhoven appears († 1777) as an authorised person of his brother **Sigismund Ignac Joahim** baron Gabelkovn (*1706 † 1775), major general of His Imperial Royal Apostolic Majesty, c. k. chamberlain, knight of the military order of Maria Theresa,²¹² lord of the lordships of Turn and Šalek, because he himself could not live in Turn because of his military service. 1775-1783 Janez Widmayer is listed as the authorised person;
- Four heirs after Sigismund to half and Ignac **Jauerbug**, probably their uncle.

²⁰⁶Gadolla, Šaleški, 175.

²⁰⁷Gadolla, Šaleški, 113.

²⁰⁸Gadolla, Šaleški, 198.: "I later learned about Schwarzenstein that before 1792 Vincenc Count Sauer sold the castle together with the municipalities to a certain man from Carinthia, the dominion [lordship] and the peasants were moved to Velenje and managed together. It has not yet been [established] when this happened to Lilienberg."

²⁰⁹ Coat of arms above the main entrance to Turn Castle, the middle field of the coat of arms Adam Seifried Gabelkoven, 1678. Colours according to Siebmacher, Wappenbuch, 1605, <https://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gabelkofen>, 5/11/2017.

²¹⁰Gadolla, 2015, 74 ss. Identically Schmutz, 1 - 436, who, as the date of death, refers to 14/2/1778.

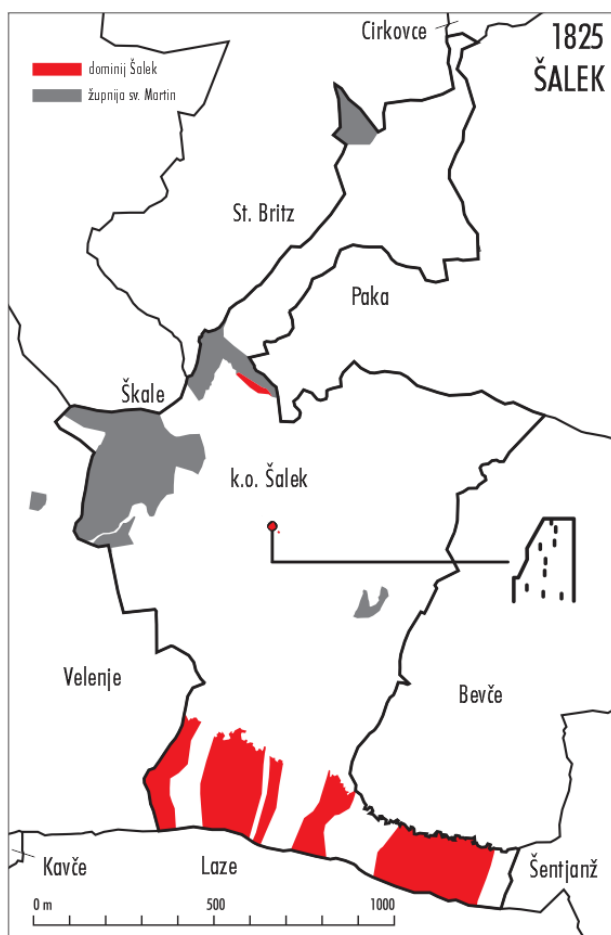
²¹¹Gadolla, Šaleški, 151.

²¹²Wißgrill Franz Karl: Schauplatz des landesässigen Niederösterreichischen Adels vom Herren- und Mitterstande, III zvezek, Dunaj 1797, 195. https://books.google.si/books?id=BLIBAAAACAAJ&pg=RA2-PA195&lpg=RA2-PA195&dq=schallegg&source=bl&ots=7r10F7ropQ&sig=g17BV9zUH9hggSHErCrBYIiiY_o&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=2ahUKewjEIJd4sl7cAhWQbFAKHZPxBS44ChDoA-TACegQIAhAB#v=onepage&q=schallegg&f=false

According to Gadolla, in the time of Sigismund (around 1760) the owners of Turn no longer lived on the lordship but in Graz and due to services in various places they leased the lordship²¹³ the tenants were: Jožef Anton Remšak, Jožef Conrad, 1744 Martin Ratej, before 1762 Aleksander Pečan, 1752 Janez Anton Ziegler, 1763 Jožef Leopold Wagner, 1775 Janez Widerger, then two tenants.

The following are mentioned in university circles:

- Antonius Gabelkhoven de Turn et Schalle (*1758, son of Sigismund and Countess Francisca de Forgach), originally from Styria²¹⁴
- Francišek Ksaver de Thurn et Schalle (1777)²¹⁵



The extent of the Šalek estate in the Franciscan cadastre in 1825.

Gadolla writes that the farmers from the area of Turn did not know the Gabelkovns as owners even by last name, and they all thought that the trustees of the lordship were in fact the owners. Gadolla thus (in the middle of the 19th century) concludes that due to state services "no Gabelkhofen has stayed here permanently since the ancient times".²¹⁶ This information is significant mainly due to the evaluation of the tradition of another fire, which allegedly "burned down" Šalek so that it was no longer suitable for living and was no longer being restored, and the fire was allegedly ignited by lightning during the dance. Who was supposed to dance on Šalek if the counts had not actually used Turn?

²¹³Gadolla, Šaleški, 80.

²¹⁴Matricula et acta Hungarorum in universitatibus italiaz studentium. Endre Veress: Fontes rerum Hungaricarum: Magyar történelmi források, Typis Societatis Stephaneum Typographicae, 1917. <https://books.google.si/books?id=F5AxQAAMAAJ&q=schalle&dq=schalle&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=2ahUKEwC34P5o5LjAhV5AxAIHVupAq44UBDoATAAegQIARAD>.

²¹⁵Positiones ex institutionibus juris civilis Romani, quas ...propugnandas suscepit ... Sigismundus Gabelhoven de Thurn et Schalle ... in Universitate Tyrnavensis jurium auditor ... mense Augusti 1777 ... Országos Széchényi Könyvtár, Bibliographia hungariae, 1971. <https://books.google.si/books?id=NRAnAQAAIAAJ&q=schalle&dq=schalle&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=2ahUKEwivmPHipLjAhU6AxAIHUEBQC4WhDoATADegQIARAR> Tudi Bibliographia litterarum Hungariae geonomicarum - A magyar gazdasági irodalom könyvészete: köt. 1806-1830, <https://books.google.si/books?id=fCYnAQAAIAAJ&q=schalle&dq=schalle&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=2ahUKEwje5fuWoJLjAhUOxosKHXPBCVo4ChDoATAEegQIARAX>

²¹⁶Gadolla, 2015, 77.

The key event for the collapse of the castle is said to have been the catastrophic fire, which modern publications no doubt date to 1770. Both data are problematic, the fire itself as the cause of the building's demise and the year of the fire. Let's take another look at what the castle descriptors say about this (chronologically):

Bodoky - The Josephine Military Map (**measurement and description 1784-85**):²¹⁷ *"Šalek Castle is a solid building /.../ it could accommodate /.../ half a hundred soldiers"* - the castle was obviously still fully functional in 1784/85. The year 1770 as the date of the devastating fire does not make sense.

Schmutz (1822): does not mention any catastrophic event

Knicht Gadolla (1847): *"Šalek was supposed to have been burnt down by lightning some 100 years ago"*²¹⁸ - that would have been much too soon at around 1750. And in second place *"... Šalek has been a ruin only for the past 90 years. According to the story, lightning struck the castle and burnt it down ..."*²¹⁹ - fire is explicitly mentioned as a folk tradition.

Orožen (1884): *"the castle was inhabited at the end of the previous [=18.] century"*²²⁰ - no mention of fire.

Janisch (1885): More probable *".../ is [a story] that not more than 100 years ago lightning struck Šalek Castle and cremated it"*.²²¹ *"Various data from this time of ownership prove with certainty that Šalek was still /.../ suitable for living until around 1770"*²²² - Janisch sums up Gadolla and describes the data on the fire as a "more probable story".

Piper (1905): *"the castle was still inhabited around 1770, then it was supposed to be burnt down by lightning"*²²³ - presumption of a fire.

Pirchegger (1962): *"the castle was left to collapse after 1770"*²²⁴ - there is no mention of fire.

Stopar (1975): *"around 1770 Šalek /.../ caught fire, the tradition says that /.../ lightning struck the castle and burnt it down."*²²⁵ Stopar quotes Janisch. *"After this fire, the castle was abandoned."* The fire is taken for granted.

Ravnikar (1999): *"In 1770, the castle burned down again, after this fire it was no longer repaired and began to decay rapidly"*²²⁶ - the fire and the year 1770 are stated as a fact.

Debevc and others (2018): *"In 1770, the castle burned down for the second time, after this fire it was no longer repaired..."*²²⁷ - the fire and the year 1770 are stated as a fact.

How could it be possible for a fire to burn down the castle (at least the roof) and for the bell from the chapel to remain intact? If the wooden structure burned, the bell would fall out of the bell tower and break or melt.

Let us draw the line: if we have an expert document about a fire in the 17th century, but no historical documents have been presented so far to testify to another fire (in the 18th century); earlier authors even explicitly cite this fire as a folk tradition. In 1785, the castle was still solid and useful. It is necessary to find a document about the second fire or allow the possibility that the castle was deliberately left to decay or perhaps part of the buildings were even deliberately uncovered, as the castle no longer had any practical significance for the owner at the end of the 19th century:

²¹⁷Our towns (section 163) belonged to the area of Inner Austria, which was recorded and described in 1784-1785. https://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Josephinische_Landesaufnahme, table with recording years for individual areas.

²¹⁸Gadolla, 2015, 60.

²¹⁹Gadolla, 2015, 168.

²²⁰Orožen, 1884, 147.

²²¹Janisch, 1885, 803. <http://www.dlib.si/stream/URN:NBN:SI:DOC-QQOVG1BG/95d7865e-f120-43e9-9d01-e2f4e6db7507/PDF>

²²²Janisch, 1885, 804.

²²³Piper, 1905, 172.

²²⁴Pirchegger 201 Schallegg, p. 222-224 – after Zimmermann, 2015, 237.

²²⁵Stopar,

²²⁶Ravnikar, 1999, 30.

²²⁷Debevc, 2018, 16. Mention of the 1770 fire also on page 46

- the defensive role has been no longer needed or is relevant
- the farm belonging to the castle was sold off, the remaining forests and a piece of pastures were managed from Turn
- they also managed the rustic part of the Šalek lordship from Turn

“Its legal, economic and social basis and thus its physical existence were threatened.”²²⁸

The roof tax (Dachsteuer), which was unthoughtfully introduced by the emperor Joseph II at the end of the 18th century, taxed buildings according to the size of the roof. The owners were no longer able to maintain castles that were not intensively used, or they became only a financial burden, so the roof was taken off and the building was left to decay.²²⁹ Such was the fate of many Austrian castles, for example: Güssing²³⁰ (east of Graz), Rauhenstein (Baden next to Vienna), Glanegg (north of Klagenfurt), Altschielleit, Klaus, Zagging, Gallenstein.

The roof tax and the consequent removal of the castle roof are also listed in students' notes as the main reason for its collapse.²³¹

Anyway, Šalek Castle was abandoned at the end of the 19th century.²³² Although this seems to only be the beginning of the end, it is probably a concluding act: in the Josephine cadastre (1789–90) it is clear that the commercial (dominical) part of the Šalek lordship was almost gone: it consisted of only five plots, and in the Franciscan Cadastre a building plot with the ruins of a castle, one plot with the ruins of an inner ward building and forests on Koželj. It was no longer a functional economic unit. The cultivated land within the castle estate was, therefore, sold to farmers before 1790.²³³ Did the barons Gabelkhoven decide to abandon the castle; was it decided by the caretakers who had their hands on it? Was “fire” just a convenient excuse or is it a mixed up folk memory of an older fire and maybe there was no other fire at all? How could a fire “burn” the castle if all the walls up to the original height, including the small masonry bell tower of the castle chapel, can still be seen in the Old Kaiser's Suite (1830)?

The owners of the Turn/Šalek estate changed relatively quickly after the Gabelkhovens:

- 1802 **Josef Franz Bayer**: in regards to him, Gadolla writes that he carried out many divisions and sales of land, also dismemberments of lordships in order to profit as much as possible from them;
- 1805 Members of the **Del Negro** family (Janez Nikolaj, around 1820 son Niklas Franc, 1835–45 his daughters Marija, Katarina and Terezia):²³⁴ during this time the roof on the tower of Šalek Castle was last rebuilt, and some stone elements were transferred from Šalek to Turn, which was partially restored by Del Negro family in the 1920s, and then leased for decades and no longer lived there.²³⁵ Branches of the del Negro family also owned the castles of Forchtenek, Šoštanj, Turn and Žovnek,²³⁶ Legant,²³⁷ Štrovsenek.²³⁸

In 1829, Joseph Skubic is mentioned as the caretaker of the lordships of Turn and Šalek,²³⁹ in 1838 as a tenant Mr Sajovic.²⁴⁰

²²⁸Komej, Grad, 13,

²²⁹<https://de.m.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dachsteuer>. Herwig Wolfram: Österreichische Geschichte, 1995, p. 224.

<https://books.google.si/books?id=MnoMAQAAMAAJ&q=dachsteuer+oesterreich+18+jhdt&dq=dachsteuer+oesterreich+18+jhdt&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=0ahUKEWiXouT72eTjAhXLmIsKHX1FB2QQ6AEIFDAC>. Example also Komelj, Grad, 14.

²³⁰<http://www.schloesserstrasse.com/seite.mv?10-30-00-00+&lg=si>

²³¹studentski.net/get/ulj_fif_ar1_al1_sno_zapiski_01.doc

²³²Brišnik, Ravnikar, *Grad Šalek*, 73, 74.

²³³A part of the commercial land belonged to St Martin's church.

²³⁴Gadolla, 215, 241.

²³⁵Golec, Domožnanec, 21 - op. 44: StLA, Steiermärkische Landtafel, LT II, Urkundenbuch Tom, 206377-378; Tom 214, fol. 532-542 ter op. 49: StLA, Handschriften, Gruppe 2, Hss. 1385, fol. 68.

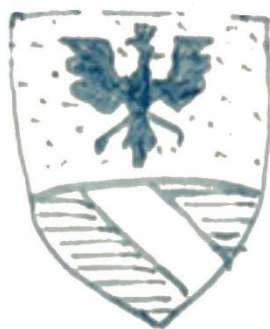
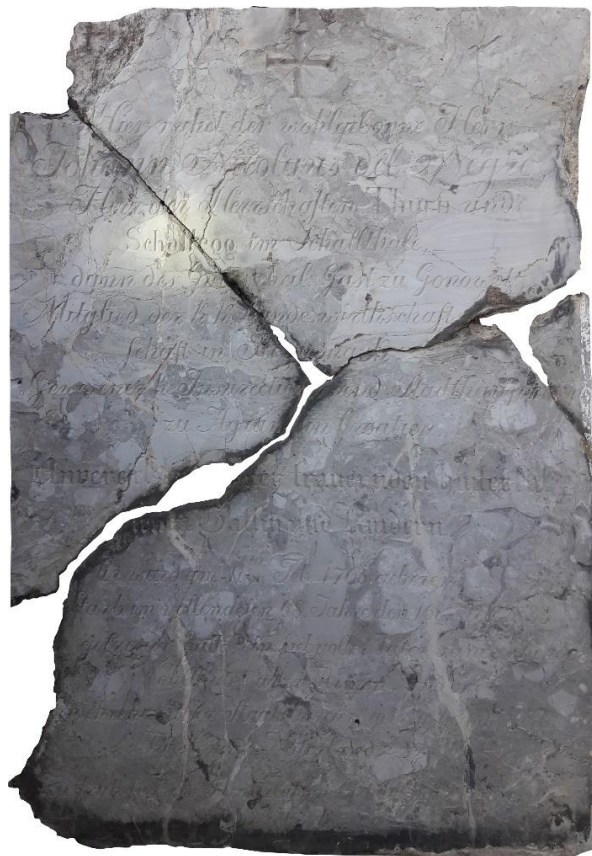
²³⁶Schmutz, 2-7.

²³⁷http://www.gradovi.net/grad/legant_stok

²³⁸http://www.gradovi.net/grad/strovsenek_dvor_dvorec

²³⁹Allgemeine deutsche Garten-Zeitung, 1829, p. 225. <https://books.google.si/books?id=OCVAAAAAcAAJ>

²⁴⁰Joanneum Jahresberich 1838, p. 3, <https://books.google.si/books?id=FrQ1z1S4AfAC>



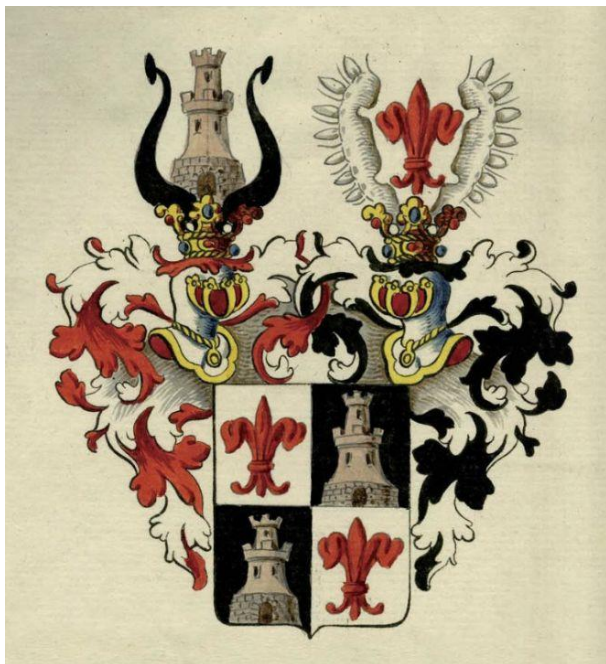
The seal of Turn and Šalek lordship with the del Negro family coat of arms in 1841²⁴¹ and the scheme of the coat of arms.²⁴²

Tombstone of Janez Nikolaj del Negro, "master of the Turn and Šalek lordships in the Šalek Valley, /... / conscientious mayor of Zagreb in Croatia".²⁴³Cemetery at the church of St Ana in Slovenske Konjice.

²⁴¹Historical Archives of Celje, Šoštanj magistrate. Sign: HERRSCHAFT THURN UND SCHALLENGER AMTS SIGIL.

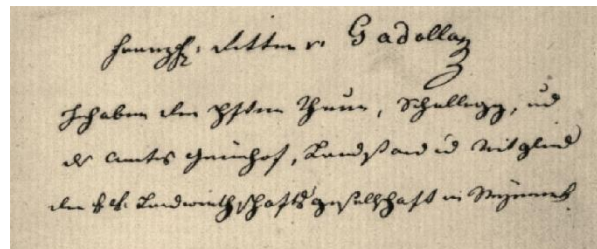
²⁴²Detail of the back of the catalogue map 21466, Fischnaler-Wappenkartei, online database of the library of the Tyrolean Provincial Museum Ferdinandeum. http://wappen.tiroler-landesmuseen.at:81/index34a.php?wappen_id=21467

²⁴³Nikola del Negro is mentioned as the merchant Schwartcz on the capitol side of Zagreb. Kaj, 2005, p. 69 - the internet.



- 1844 Franz knight Gadolla or Gadolla spouses purchase Turn Castle near Šalek with two land lordships,²⁴⁴

The coat of arms of Franz knight Gadolla²⁴⁵ and his signature



Karl Noé noble Nordberg



Frančiška Noé noble Nordberg

- 1861 Karl Greinitz,²⁴⁶
- 1871 Alfred knight Wilhelm,
- 1873 Karl and Franziska Noe noble Nordberg (later owners of Gorica),²⁴⁷
- 1874 Franz Ržiha,²⁴⁸
- 1877 Franz knight Kreil - supposedly Heinrich Knight Keil, Imperial Royal Lieutenant retired²⁴⁹,
- 1880 Karl Kratochwil,
- 1882 Ernest Pick,
- 1886 Rudolf Rathoff baron Schmiedl pl. Seeberg,²⁵⁰
- 1890 dr. Sigmund Ban,

²⁴⁴Golec, Domoznanec, 14 and 26 note 67: At the time of purchase, Turn included close to 311 acres of land (about 177 hectares), of which 220 acres of forest, 41 acres of meadows, 18 acres of orchards, 17 acres of fields, 10 acres of pastures, an acre of vineyards and 4 acres of buildings, i.e. Turn manor complex and the Šalek Castle ruins (StLA, Steiermärkische Landtafel, LT II, Urkundensammlung 1862/2381).

²⁴⁵Golec, Mali, 24. After knight graduation in 1784.

²⁴⁶On 18 August 1871, he is still listed as the owner of Turn and Šalek among the large landowners. Annex to number 188 Grazer Volksblatt. <https://books.google.si/books?id=fBO89oja-T8C&pg=PP381&dq=schallengg+verbrannt&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=0ahUKewjpn-u8lpLiAhWRqlsKHR00Do0QuwUIDzAB#v=onepage&q=schallengg%20verbrannt&f=false>

²⁴⁷Poles, Villa Bianca, 164 ss.

²⁴⁸Haj: časopis pro lesnika, myslivce a pritele prirody, 1875, 15.

²⁴⁹Der Steirische Landbote: Organ für Landes- und Landeskultur-Interessen, Graz 1877, p. 19.

https://books.google.si/books?id=OW6M0Qee_EQC&pg=PA19&dq=schallengg&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=0ahUKewjryaGFuaTjAhVl_CoKHel9CyE4RhDoAQgzMAI#v=onepage&q=schallengg&f=false

²⁵⁰Neues Wiener Tagblatt (Tages-Ausgabe), 30/5/1886, p. 4. <http://anno.onb.ac.at/cgi-content/anno?aid=nwg&datum=18860530&seite=4&zoom=33&query=%22Schallengg%22%2B%22%2B%22%2B%22ruine%22&ref=anno-search>; Österreichische Forst-Zeitung, 4/6/1886, p. 5. <http://anno.onb.ac.at/cgi-content/anno?aid=ftz&datum=18860604&seite=5&zoom=33&query=%22Schallengg%22&ref=anno-search>



- 1893²⁵¹ Daniel noble Lapp,²⁵²



Daniel noble Lapp, owner of the Velenje coal mine,
and his coat of arms



- 1916/17 Ludvik baron Haerdtl

Haerdtl's coat of arms

²⁵¹Grazer Tagblatt, 2/5/1893, p. 2. <http://anno.onb.ac.at/cgi-content/anno?aid=gtb&datum=18930502&seite=2&zoom=33&query=%22Schallegg%22%2B%22%2B%22%2B%22thurn%22&ref=anno-search>

²⁵²He used Turn for his annual residence and lived in Graz in the winter. Grazer Tagblatt, 15/10/1910, p. 2. <http://anno.onb.ac.at/cgi-content/anno?aid=gtb&datum=19101015&seite=2&zoom=33&query=%22Schallegg%22&ref=anno-search>

Suche zu kaufen gegen Barzahlung

2 Güter.

1. Gut nahe der Bahn oder größerem Orte, Oekonomie in Regie, Wald, mit hübsch. Schlösschen (Herrenhaus), Garten u. 30 bis 80.000 fl.

2. Größeres (landtäfl.) Gut, 100 bis 300.000 fl.

Dr. Josef Ritter v. Hohenblum
Wien, I., Fohringerstraße 15.

N.B. Durch obigen wurden in Steiermark, Kärnten u. Krain bereits folgende Herrschaften und Güter verkauft: Andenburg, Bezigrad, Drauhof, Eibismald, Gindd, Fichtenhof, Frauenhof, Freudenau, Grafenegg, Gallenberg, Grachnitz, Gollitz (3mal), Gunterndorf (2mal), Harbach, Herzhof, Hirchenau, Hohenhain, Hopfenbach, Jägerhof, Jellowitz, Johndorf, Klingenstein, Kraindorf, Krenegg, Kollegg, Koglhof, Laad, Langenthal (3mal), Lebmach, Lindenhof, Mahrenberg, Maria-Ropreinitz, Müllerhof, Neuhaus (2mal), Neuhünegg, Neulofner, Ottmanach, Poggeln, Podiegraz, Tonigl, Vosthof, Kadelstein, Reifenstein, Rotzhofer, Rothwein (Amal), Rupertshof, Stadlhof, Steinhof (3mal), Stein, St. Jakobshof, Teuffenbach, Töschdorf (2mal), Trantenburg (2mal), Thurn-Schallegg (3mal), Ulheim, Unter-Sichtenegg, Waafen, Wafenhof, Wegscheidhof, Welsberg, Weihenegg und viele unbekannte Rustical-Beitzte. 5090

- 1932 Emil Komorzynski – Oszerynski,
- 1937 Marija Bianca Komorzynski.²⁵³

The owners' position was difficult: in the period between 1920–41, Turn near Velenje was among the 40 major sales of castle inventory in Slovenia.²⁵⁴

After World War II., the castle was confiscated on 8 September 1945, and the Federal People's Republic of Yugoslavia became the owner.

- On 15 May 1948, the castle became a general public property
- In 1966, the castle became social property
- In 1998, the Municipality of Velenje became the owner of the castle.

A real estate advertisement in which the broker brags that he has already sold the Turn–Šalek lordship five (5!) times.²⁵⁵

Zap. št.	Št. zemljišča (parcele)	Označba parcele (hišna številka, obde-ovalna vrsta)	Površina po katastru			Z
			ha	a	m ²	
209	2086/78	hiva, drovnišče, travnik			8 03 79	21
210	2086/79	hiva, drovnišče, travnik			10 35 87	24
211	2093/11	njivna pom. vrst. - Rumik			32 03	21
212	2117	gora			29 30 33 21	21
213	2118/1	travnik			57 46 89	21
214	21144	gora, drovnišče			30 36	2
215	2145	hiva št. 1 drovnišče				2
		urt			4 3 06 86	2
216	2146	urt njiva			1 30 47	2
217	2373	rusovinu gradu Šalek			78	2
218	2150	javka pašnik			2 15 30 54	2

B	
redna vrsta	Vpis
1	Na posejstvenem zemljišču iz dne 14. februarja 1966, št. 811/64-207/895, se sta prejele v laste 17 njivne njivninske kote obravnane lastninske imetnik namre uporabi: obravnava Velenje
2	Proizvi se po c/1 knjigovodno popisane. Navedeno 28. januarja 1998, Dv 304.
3	Na Sporazumu o dokončni razdelitvi pamotnega obine Velenje iz dne 14.8.1997 in 3. čl. Zakona o lastninskega vpremenitvi in obratnosti lastnin: (Urad. list 1997/98) se obkupi lastninske pravice na ime: Mestna občina Velenje, mat. št. 533226000
	Velenj trg 1, Velenje

Excerpts from the historical land registry extract

In the second half of the 20th century, the castle walls, overgrown with bushes and trees, quickly fell apart; the massive walls cracked and crumbled due to corrosion of the surrounding terrain, poor foundations (about 2m of foundations of the northern corner were missing) and rainwater that spiralled the binder mortar from the walls and frost caused cracks. The interior of the tower was filled with rubble that rose to a height of 2m. They decided that the ruin should be immediately restored or completely removed, as (due to the stones falling from the top of the walls) it posed a great danger to random visitors and mountaineers taking the Šalek mountain trail right next to the tower, as well as to residents, living directly under the castle.

²⁵³ Orožen, Das Bisthum, 68. Zimmermann, Gradovi, 249. Based on: Reinhart baron Echt, Wilhel Hoffer: Geschichte der steirischen Jagdgebiete (II. volume of Jagdgeschichte Steiermarks). Leykam, Graz 1928, 565. Seher, Zgodovina II, 367. Reichert mentions Baron Seckendorff as the owner after Gadolla. Reichert, Einst, III band, 10-11.

²⁵⁴ Komelj, Grad, 22.

²⁵⁵ Grazer Tagblatt, 12/5/1892, p. 11. <http://anno.onb.ac.at/cgi-content/anno?aid=gtb&datum=18920512&seite=11&zoom=33&query=%22Schallegg%22%2B%22%2B%22%2B%22%2B%22thurn%22&ref=anno-search>. Also Amtsblatt zur Laibacher Zeitung. Ignaz Alois Edler v. Kleinmayr, 15/7/1896. <https://dlib.si/stream/URN:NBN:SI:DOC-SU4OEL3S/06ff342d-401d-4dd3-8d56-0ab379ba1020/PDF>

In 1971, the Velenje Tourist Association established a committee for the renovation of Šalek Castle ²⁵⁶, which in 1975 published Stopar's findings on the castle and its surroundings. That same year, the Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage of Slovenia, Celje Regional Office, produced a photogrammetric image and façade plans of the ruin.

A 93-metre-long tunnel was built between 1975 and 1977 under the castle ²⁵⁷, necessary to divert the increasing traffic from the core of the Šalek settlement. Vibrations during tunnel construction and heavy traffic further destabilised the ruin.



Transfer of the name Šalek from the name of the settlement ²⁵⁸ to the name of the road tunnel.

In 1983, the Assembly of the Municipality of Velenje legally protected the ruins of Šalek Castle as an artistic and architectural monument (on plots 2373, 2372/1?, cadastral municipality of Velenje). ²⁵⁹ In 1989, the ruin was documented, and a renovation plan was drawn up. ²⁶⁰ In 1990, Velenje Executive Council decided to restore the ruins in order to fortify it and thus prevent its further disintegration and potential casualties. Renovation plans were developed. ²⁶¹

Construction-related work began even before the archaeologists joined, the work was stopped by the Institute for the protection of cultural heritage of Slovenia and the archaeological excavations were taken over by the department of archaeology at the Faculty of Arts, University of Ljubljana. ²⁶²

²⁵⁶ Stopar, Grad, Uvod.

²⁵⁷ https://sl.wikipedia.org/wiki/Seznam_cestnih_predorov_v_Sloveniji, 19/11/2017, http://www.rotaryklubvelenje.si/kronologija_velenja, 23/11/2017.

²⁵⁸ <https://mojalbum.com/bischoflack/velenje-vollan-na-starih-razglednicah/velenje-salek-na-petih-slikicah-4-eur/21193997/povecaj>

²⁵⁹ Decree on the proclamation of cultural and historical monuments in the Velenje municipality area. Official Gazette of the Municipality of Velenje, 20/10/1983.

²⁶⁰ Marij Kogoj, Dragutin Šafarič, Projektna študija 1989.

²⁶¹ Dragutin Šafarič, Projekt za prenovo gradu Šalek, 1991.

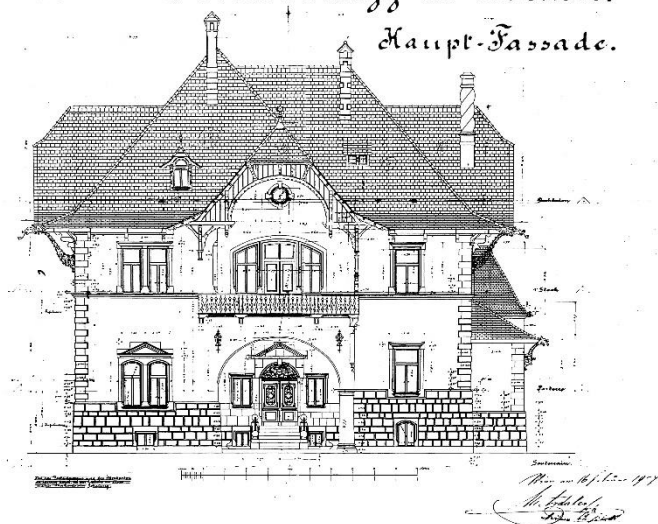
²⁶² studentski.net/get/ulj_fif_ar1_al1_sno_zapiski_01.doc

Around 1890, “Novi Šalek Castle near Velenje” was built southwest of Šalek Castle – planned by the Viennese architect Oto Hieser,²⁶³ for Baroness Ritter de Zahony.²⁶⁴ The building was later given different names (Villa Ritter, Villa Neu Schallegg, Villa Valdeck); today, it is known as Villa Herberstein. By transferring the name from the old ruins to the new villa/castle, it romantically presented itself as the successor of the primary castle building, just as the nearby Villa Eggenstein/Gorica was the (actual legal) successor of Eckenstein Castle and as Villa Bianca was considered Spodnje Velenje Castle or castle on the square.²⁶⁵



Novi Šalek castle vignette.²⁶⁶

Schloss Neuschallegg bei Wöllan.
Haupt-Fassade.



Front facade of Novi Šalek Castle, the inscriptions are enlarged.²⁶⁸



Šalek near Velenje in a view from the castle of Novi Šalek, 1908²⁶⁷

²⁶³ **Cyriak Bodenstern:** Hundert Jahre Kunstgeschichte Wien, 1788-1888: eine Festgabe anlässlich der Seculärfeier der Pensions-Gesellschaft Bildender Künstler Wiens, p. 87.

²⁶⁴ Janežič/Poles, 2003, 13.

²⁶⁵ Poles, 2011, 66.

²⁶⁶ <https://prodottitop.com/?q=SIEGEL>.

²⁶⁷ Velenje Museum, MV;R-0000294/2010 <https://museums.eu/collection/object/33739/salek?pUnitId=36>

²⁶⁸ Janežič/Poles, 2003, 28.



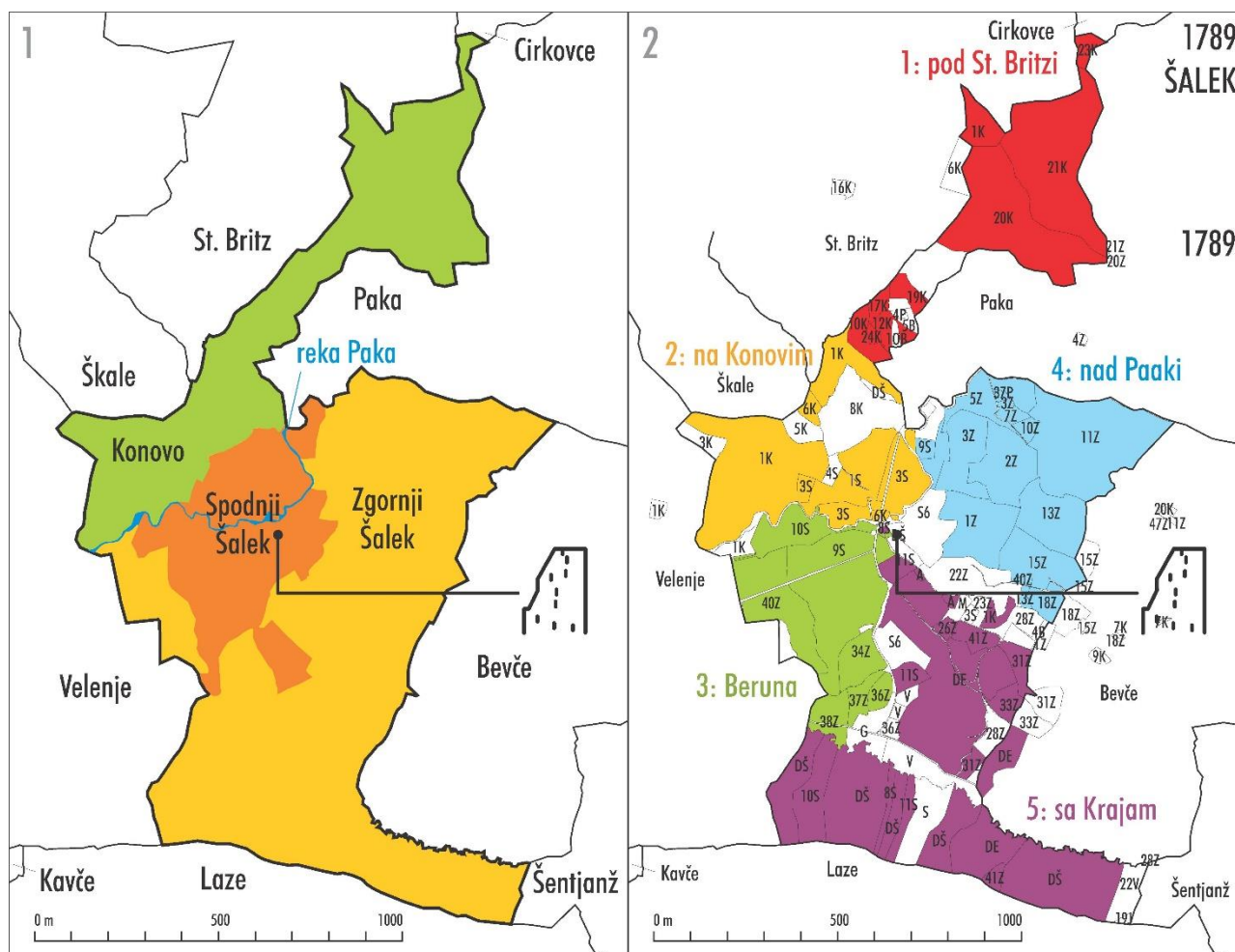
Timeline of the Šalek Castle owners according to Schmutz, Gadolla/Janisch, Orožen, Stopar, Ravnikar, Zimmermann / Bachofen/Hoffer, Seher

Timeline notes: baron Mauerbur,²⁶⁹ Zimmermann,²⁷⁰ Seher.²⁷¹ Baron Seckendorff is also mentioned as the castle owner after Gadolla.²⁷²

Location genesis (landscape analysis)

CADASTRE ANALYSIS

The Franciscan and Josephine cadastres provide valuable insight into the organisation of the landscape, where it is possible to compile a map of names from the end of the 18th century using retrograde analysis. These names testify to the former appearance of the landscape (overgrown with deciduous trees: oaks, beeches), about old cultures (plums, vineyards), about potential archaeological sites (hillfort, manor). The former organisation of the rural economy (farms in whole, farms with fragmented parts of the estate, house owners, hillside vineyard owners, dominical lands) before the Šalek Valley was actively industrialised and urbanised, is evident.



Spatial units around Šalek Castle according to cadastre analysis.

1: wider areas of the cadastral municipality of Šalek (Konovo, Spodnji Šalek, Zgornji Šalek).

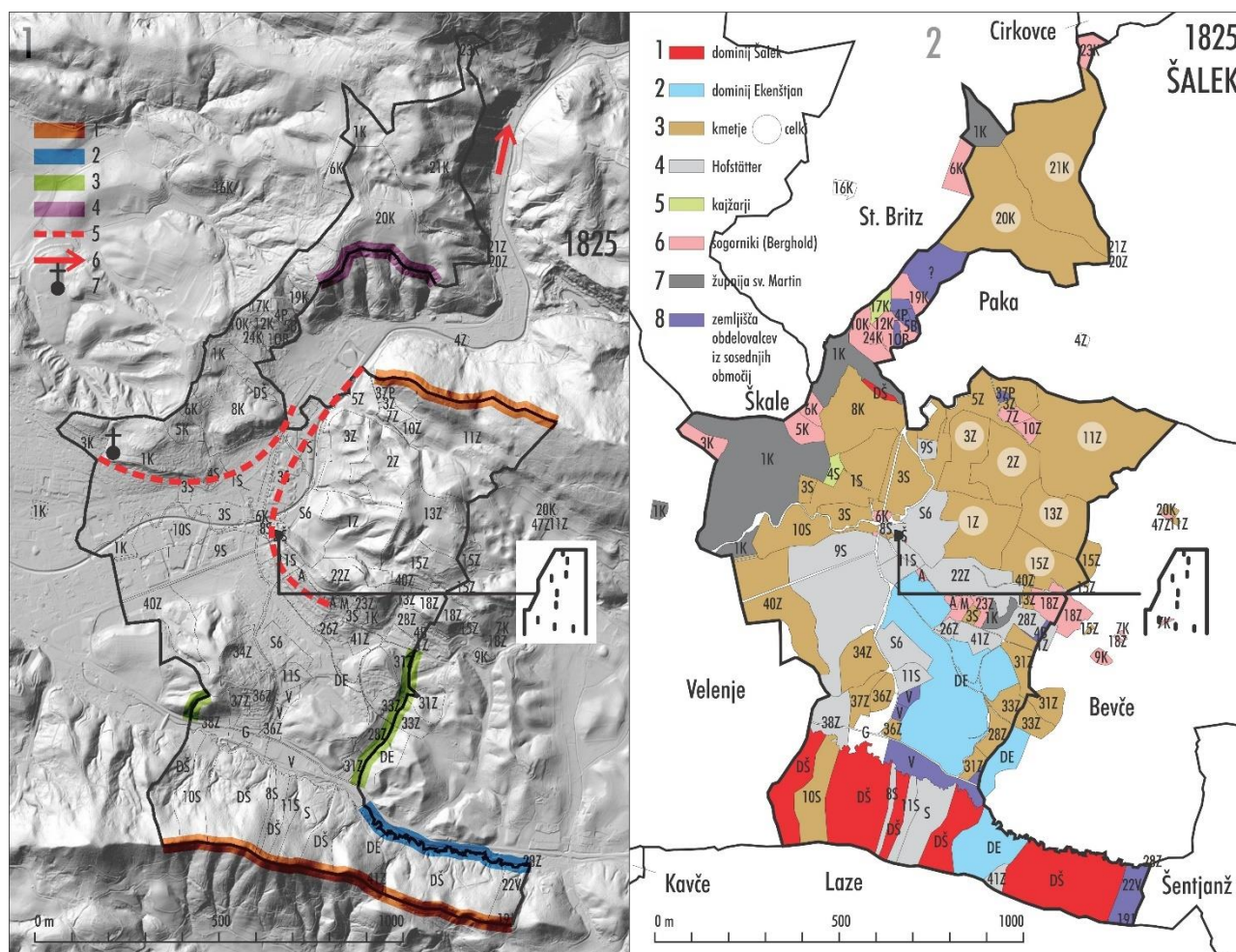
2: narrower areas ("ledine/ride": below Šembric, on Konovo, above Paka, Za krajem, Beruna (?)).

²⁶⁹Mention of the document in the archives of the Historical Society for Styria: Georg Ignaz baron Mauerburg, lord of the Šalek lordship, St. Jožef, etc. sold the farm belonging to the lordship of Šalek to Martin Maze and his heirs for 40 fl., but it is necessary to serve 4 fl. to the Šalek lordship /.../, Šalek, 28/4/1722. Jahresbericht über den Zustand und das Wirken des Historischen Vereins für Steiermark, 1859

²⁷⁰Zimmermann, Gradovi, 249. Based on: Reinhart baron Echt, Wilhel Hoffer: Geschichte der steirischen Jagdgebiete (II. volume of Jagdgeschichte Steiermarks). Leykam, Graz 1928, 565.

²⁷¹Seher, Zgodovina II, 367.

²⁷²Reichert, Einst, III band, 10-11.



Results of cadastre analysis:

1. The course of the cadastral municipality boundaries is locally linked to distinct geomorphological structures: 1 – ridge, 2 – stream, 3 – ditch, 4 – terrain break. The narrowing of the valley is clearly visible – 5 – at the entrance to the gorge towards Huda luknja – 6 –, which is controlled/watched over by the church of St Martin and Šalek Castle.

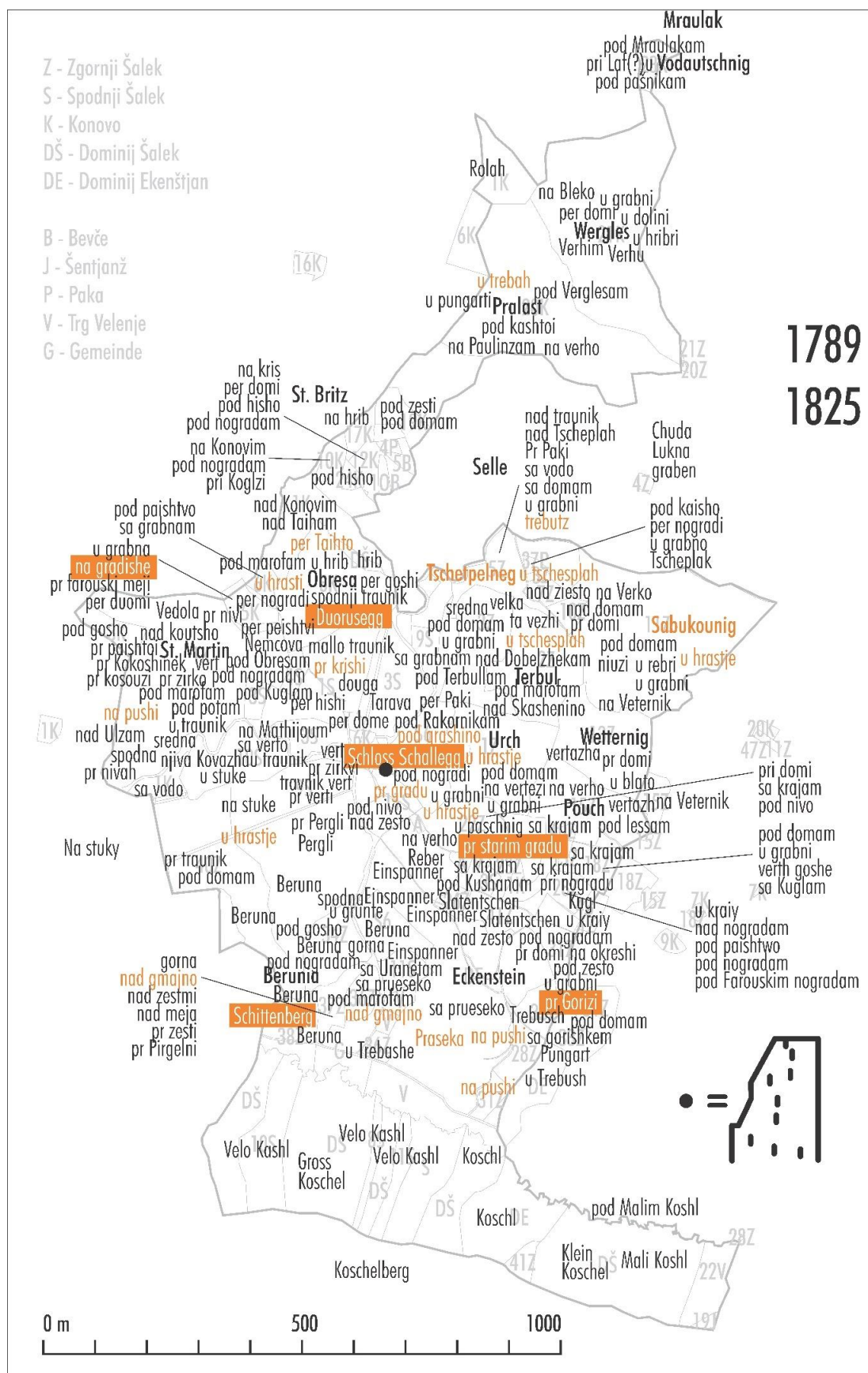
Year Economic use/land status: 1 remains of the dominion of the Šalek lordship, 2 dominion of the Gorica/Eckenstein estate, 3 farmers (circled = farms in whole), 4 owners of smaller farms (homeowners) – “oštetarji”,²⁷³ 5 houseowners, 6 hillside vineyard owners, 7 owned by the St. Martin parish (dominical land), 8 lands owned by cultivators from neighbouring areas.

On the next page: toponyms from the Josephine cadastre, shown on the graphic basis of the Franciscan cadastre. In order to understand the landscape, the more indicative names take after:

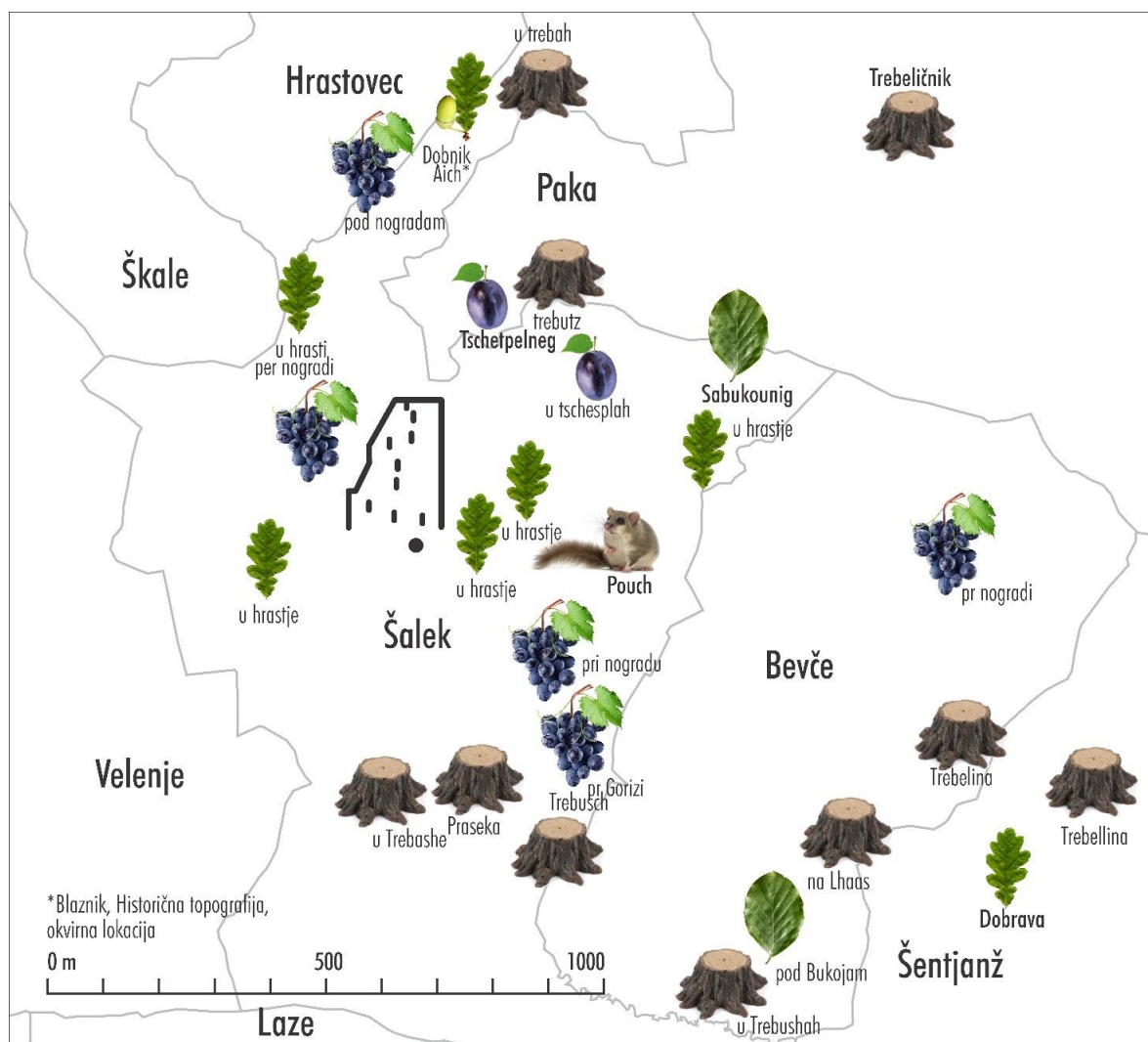
- names indicating deciduous trees (oak, plums, “Zabukovnik”), which indicate the former growth or cultivated crops;
- names indicating land shrinkage (“v trebah”, “preseka”), indicating subsequent expansion of arable land;
- names indicating land owners areas, which are usually of a younger origin;
- estate areas indicating second colonization (10–13th century);²⁷⁴
- names that indicate the possibility of older settlements or former castle buildings (“na gradišču”, “Dvorovšek”, “pri starem gradu”, “pri Gorici”, “pod graščino”, “Žitenberg”).

²⁷³<http://www2.arnes.si/~rzjtopl/rod/metode/r-slovar-nem.htm>

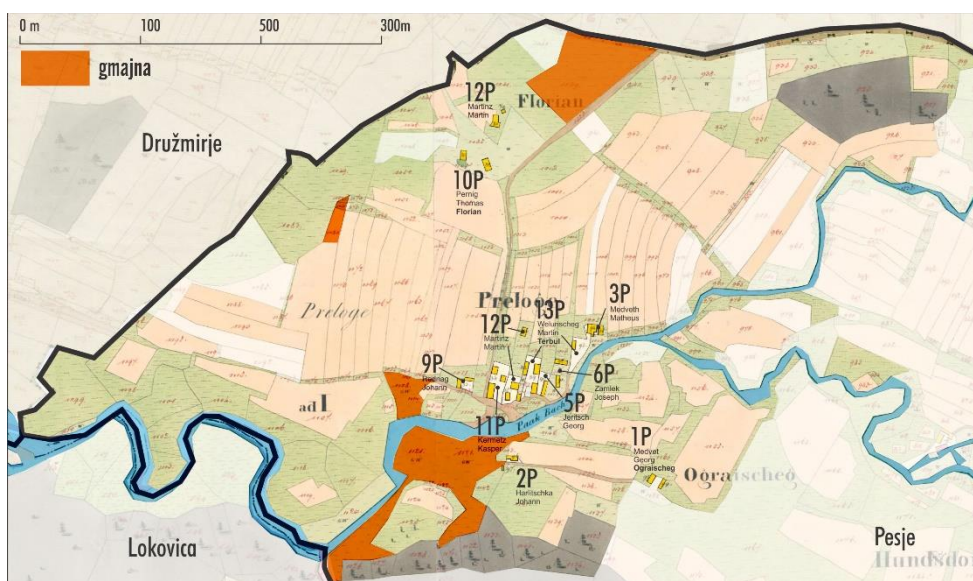
²⁷⁴ https://sl.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kolonizacija_na_Slovenskem



Microtoponym map, according to the Josephine cadastre. The names that point (or could point) to special locations are emphasised: the fort above the church of Sv. Martin and the court west of the "Skalca" bar in Šalek, Žitenberg court.

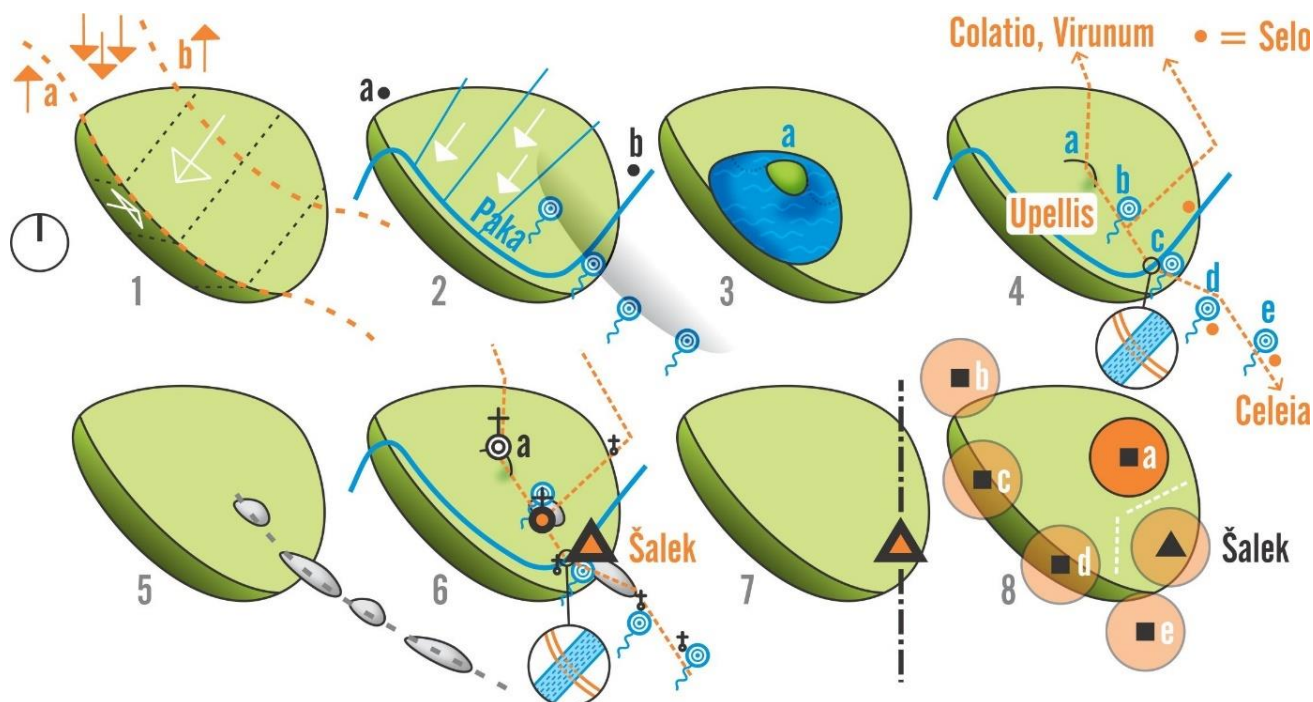


Map showing microtoponyms: **after deciduous trees** (oak, oak, beech), which show the former plant growth of the area, **related to deforestation** (= forest removal) and so obtained areas ("laze"), **former vineyards and orchards** (plums) and possibly hunting animals (dormouse).



According to the Josephine cadastre, the dominical lands of Šalek Castle also included "gmajna" (common meadows). in Preloge: upper in the north and southern along the Paka ("Na produ"). After the Franciscan cadastre, which is said to be about 35 years younger, the owner of Gornja gmajna (plot 1039) is Dominij Turn. The change of lordship (Šalek – Turn) probably took place because from around 1730 the lordships of Šalek and Turn were united and managed by the same managers/tenants for the same owners based on Turn Castle.²⁷⁵

²⁷⁵ Poles Rok: Walking through an erased landscape: Preloge. IN: Šoštanjski list, 2019. SI AS 1110: Josephine cadastre for Styria, 1784–1790, Velenje district lordship, k.m. Velenje, Grundertrags-Matrikel. Archive of the Republic of Slovenia.



Šalek Castle landscape analysis, comment below

GEOLOGICAL DEVELOPMENT OF THE LANDSCAPE MATRIX AND NATURAL ELEMENTS, CRUCIAL FOR SETTLEMENT

1. GEOLOGICAL-GEOGRAPHICAL NATURAL MATRIX: The Šalek Valley was formed due to differences in elevation between the Šoštanj geological fault in the south (a) and the Smrekovšek fault in the north (b). The former bottom of the valley is more than 1km below the current surface.²⁷⁶ The south-western edge of the valley is very steep, and the slopes to the north rise more slowly and more widely (asymmetrical cross-section of the valley).

Year HYDROLOGICAL CHARACTERISTICS: The consequence of the asymmetric cross-section of the valley is that all river affluents to the main waterway (Paka river) flow in from the north, from where they also brought alluvium into the valley and thus pushed the Paka towards the southwest edge of the valley.²⁷⁷ At the contact between the upper, permeable limestone layers of the last ridges of the Karavanke and the lower impermeable layers, a whole series of permanent springs was formed, which did not dry up even in the times of greatest drought.

CULTURAL LANDSCAPE DEVELOPMENT

3. MYTHIC LAKE: The tradition has been preserved in the valley that there was once a lake in the middle of which was an island with a castle/church.²⁷⁸ Opinions are formed that this is the people's memory of the lakes that were remnants of the Ice Age glaciation.²⁷⁹ The oldest human products that testify to the presence of people in

²⁷⁶Markič, Sachsenhofer, 2010, 4 and figure 1.3.

²⁷⁷Kotnik, 2014, 15.

²⁷⁸The arch-parish church in Škale was named St. George on the lake. Vijanski, 1857. Orožen, 1936, 132-136. Mlinšek, 1991, 126.

²⁷⁹Bizjak, 2017, 16:00 and further.

the valley were found in the caves Mornova zijalka (b) and Špehovka (c)²⁸⁰ in the higher outskirts of the valley, where the tradition of fairy women (“žal žene”) also appears, who advised people in agriculture²⁸¹—such traditions are said to indicate indigenous cultures.²⁸²

4. TRAFFIC: The oldest traffic route went through the valley from the direction of Celje (ancient Celeia) towards Slovenj Gradec (Colatio) and further to Carinthia.²⁸³ Ancient remains (brick, Sperat's tombstone), found on the slope below the church of St. Martin²⁸⁴ probably belong to the Upellis post office on the Roman vicinal road, which came to the valley along the slope from the direction of Janškovo selo, descended into the valley and on the northern side of the valley went further north, either through Škalski Cirkovci or Škale. The route also had to cross the Paka river in the valley: according to surveyors who drew the first Austrian military map, there were two places where it was possible to cross the Paka by boat, in Šalek (c) or near Selo.²⁸⁵ Along the supposed route of the Roman road, we find as many as three settlements of the “Selo” type, which are typical of the Slavic settlement (Janškovo SELO (e), Bevško SELO²⁸⁶ (d) and SELO ob Paki), in the area of St Martin's church Slavic graves from the last third of the 9th century with individual ancient additions were found,²⁸⁷ the toponym “na gradišče” appears above the church²⁸⁸, naming places after deciduous trees is common (Če(š)peljnik, Hrastje, Bukovnik), all of which testifies to the settlement of the valley in Slavic times. The legend of the countess, who is supposed to drive between the castles of Šalek and Eckenstein²⁸⁹ in a burning carriage on Christmas may also be an indicative. It is probably an analogy to the motif of Šembilja, which—at least in the karst region—“sticks” to routes of ancient roads.²⁹⁰

In the broader context of the landscape, the extraordinary role of water in the landscape is evident: we can follow the “water line” from Škale to Šentjanž and in this “water landscape” we can understand that the settlements were tied to permanent springs or wells, and in times of Christianisation, these sources of water (places of ancient worship) were somehow covered.

- St. Jurij on the lake - the arch-parish church on the former island - St. George as the dragon conqueror
- St. Martin in the suburbs - under the spring (current water reservoir)/on Gradišče (old settlement)/near the sinkhole, from where the devil crept (the door to the other side) - St Martin as an exorcist²⁹¹
- St Andrew/Christopher at the Paka crossing in Šalek; the stone depository next to the church where they donated is still preserved. Was it primarily a gift to the river deity for a safe journey/river crossing? According to a legend, St Christopher sailed across the water and carried people to the other bank.

²⁸⁰Brodar, 1999. Brišnik, 1999 a.

²⁸¹Poles, Izbir bele vode

²⁸²Bizjak, 2017, 12:06 and further.

²⁸³Brišnik, 1999 b.

²⁸⁴Orožen, 1884, 133, 134. Šašel, 1954.

²⁸⁵About a place, where the water is so shallow that one can walk through: graphics: The area between Velenje and Šalek on the Josephine

MilitaryMap.<http://mapire.eu/en/map/firstsurvey/?bbox=1678653.1438722084%2C5836553.089734621%2C1687825.5872664298%2C5841416.395659266&layers=osm%2C1%2C73,5/11/2017>. Description: Report of the cartographer Bodoky, pledgee of the Lika regiment, as part of section 163 for the area of Paka near Velenje Rajšp, 1999, 50.

²⁸⁶The name of the area can be concluded from the Josephine cadastre in relation to the Franciscan cadastre.

²⁸⁷Interview with Danijela Brišnik, head of ZVKDS OE Celje, Vinska Gora, 3 October 2018.

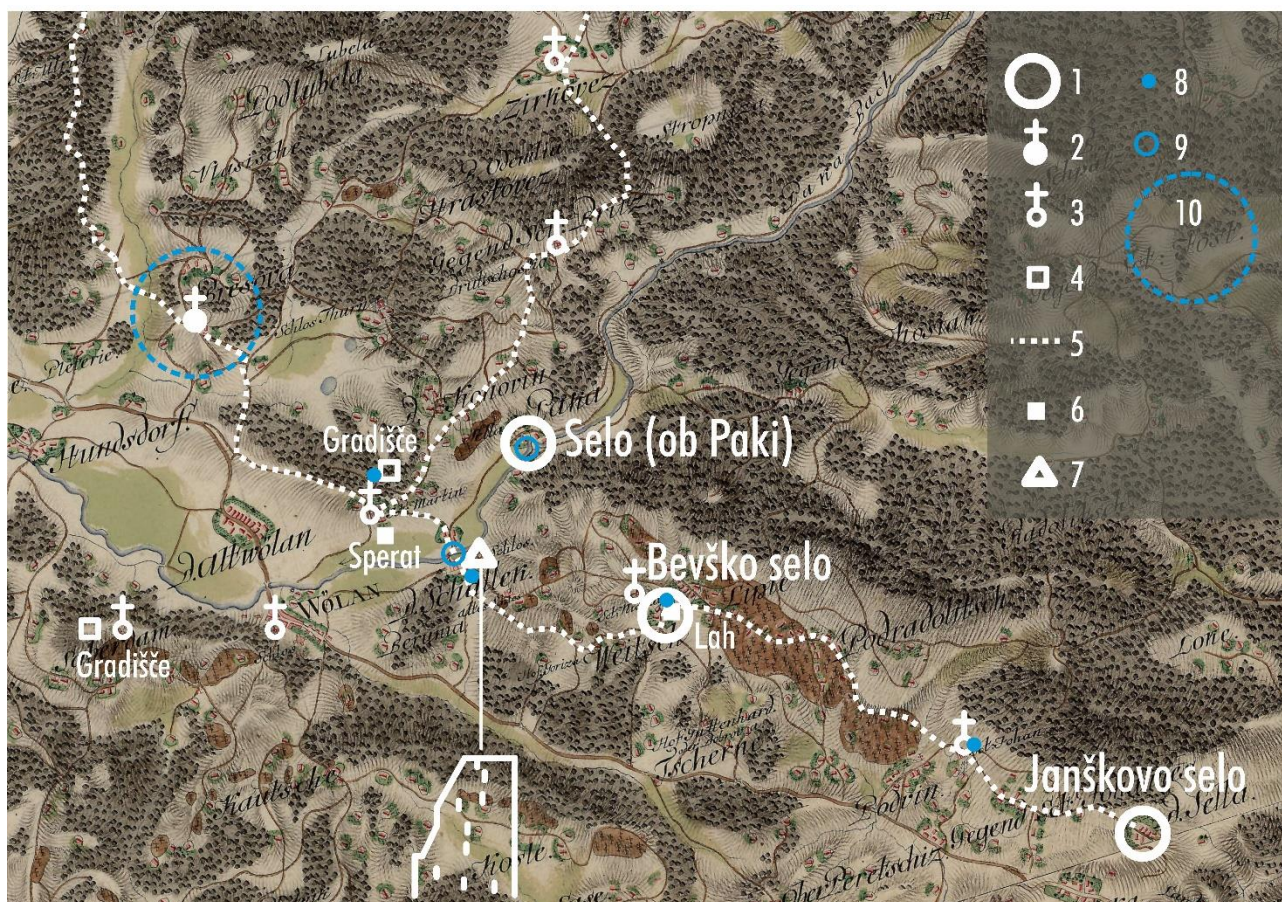
²⁸⁸Field “na gradishe” (on the fort), owner Maria Nemez (Nemec), house number Konovo (Konovim) 5, plot number 98. Josephine cadastre, Grundertrags-Matrikel der Steuer-Gemeinde Oberchalleg, p. 12. SI AS 1110. The location was determined after a retrograde analysis of the cadastre in relation to the Franciscan cadastre through the owners or house numbers.

²⁸⁹Poles, 2011, 36.

²⁹⁰Hobič, 2015, 86

²⁹¹He is depicted as such in the Baroque painting on the high altar.

- St Nicholas above the Drajšnica cave, where Bevški potok springs
- St. John the Baptist in Peč, at a permanent spring, below the church there is a rock shelf with caves.



Broader landscape around Šalek (from Janškovo selo to Škale): 1 Selo-type old settlement, 2 arch-parish church in Škale, 3 churches, 4 Gradišče, 5 old route, 6 location where the Roman stone (Sperat) was found and the location of Lah toponym, 7 permanent water spring, 8 River Paka crossing, 9 former lake island (according to folk tradition).

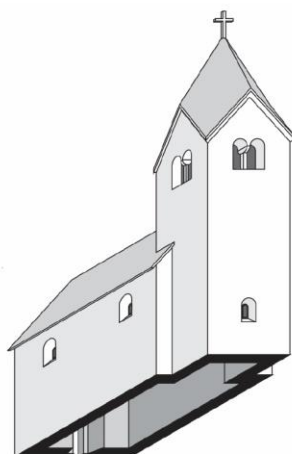
5. MICROLOCATION: In the southeastern part of the valley, at the entrance to the upper course of the River Paka, two rock shelves appear, each on its own side of the valley: on one shelf, there's St Martin's church, on the other Šalek Castle. They are part of a long, narrow rocky ridge, which runs further to the south-east and on which the castles of Eckenstein, Schlangenburg (the old castle in Dobrna) and Lemberg are also located.²⁹²The rocky ridge in Šalek reaches several tens of metres into the bottom of the valley.



St Martin's church²⁹³ and a series of castles on a rocky ridge from St Martin to Lemberg.

²⁹²Morlot, 1852, 7.

²⁹³A paraphrased drawing.



St Martin's church today and an attempt to reconstruct its original image in the Romanesque period.

6. THE CASTLE'S CHOSEN LOCATION: The location where Šalek Castle was built, presents an extraordinary coincidence of natural and cultural elements of the landscape:

- The Paka river was pushed right along the south-east edge of the valley here;
- The ancient (and probably even older) route Celje–Šalek Valley–Slovenj Gradec–Carinthia descended into the valley and crossed the river at the crossing;
- Above the crossing, a narrow, steep rocky ridge rises high above the valley like a natural shelf, the three sides of which are naturally inaccessible, and provides excellent defence position and control over the path and the valley;
- A strong and permanent source of drinking water springs nearby.²⁹⁴

Not long after the castle was built, the castle lords also built “their” proprietary church of St. Martin: in a similarly extraordinary location: under a permanent spring (the main reservoir of drinking water for the towns of Velenje and Šoštanj today), probably below the former fort, above the area of the remains of a Roman settlement and Slavic graves. There is probably some memory of the ancient city in the naming of “St. Martin in the suburbs”²⁹⁵ church, as Velenje and Šoštanj only achieved the city status in the 20th century. With the erection of the proprietary church with a crypt,²⁹⁶ in which the castle lords were probably also buried, the older cultural space was covered with Christian content – a connection to the older cemetery was established.

Šalek Castle was not built in an empty space: the church of St. Martin was subordinated to the arch-parish church of St. George on the lake in Škale, which was older.²⁹⁷ The unusual shape of the cadastral municipality of Šalek testifies that this colonisation was in fact an “interpolation”, an active arrangement of the intermediate space between the area of Turn Castle/surroundings of Škale church, the area of vineyards towards Vinska gora (Krško diocese) and the area of what would later become Velenje (a village, castle and square with that name), which is consistent with the historians’ findings.²⁹⁸

The cadastral municipality of Šalek, whose area can probably be linked to the castle establishment colonisation act²⁹⁹ included the dominical land of the castle, some larger farms in and smaller areas of vineyards under the jurisdiction of the hillside vineyard book of laws. Bevče enclave was added, an area of

²⁹⁴About the springs, according to Štefanija Prisljan’s notes. Also: Prialt, 1999, 35: “Kolavtar’s spring below Šalek Castle that is now gone. It always had the same water level: it never ran over the edge and never ran out of water.”

²⁹⁵Poles, 1998, 150.

²⁹⁶The crypt was discovered during archaeological excavations of the church in 2018.

²⁹⁷Ravnikar, 2007, 70.

²⁹⁸Kos, 2005, 21.

²⁹⁹E.g. Pletrski, 2011, 13: “/... / The boundaries of the cadastral municipalities [correspond to] the then economic areas of the villages, which are at the same time their environmental maximum.”

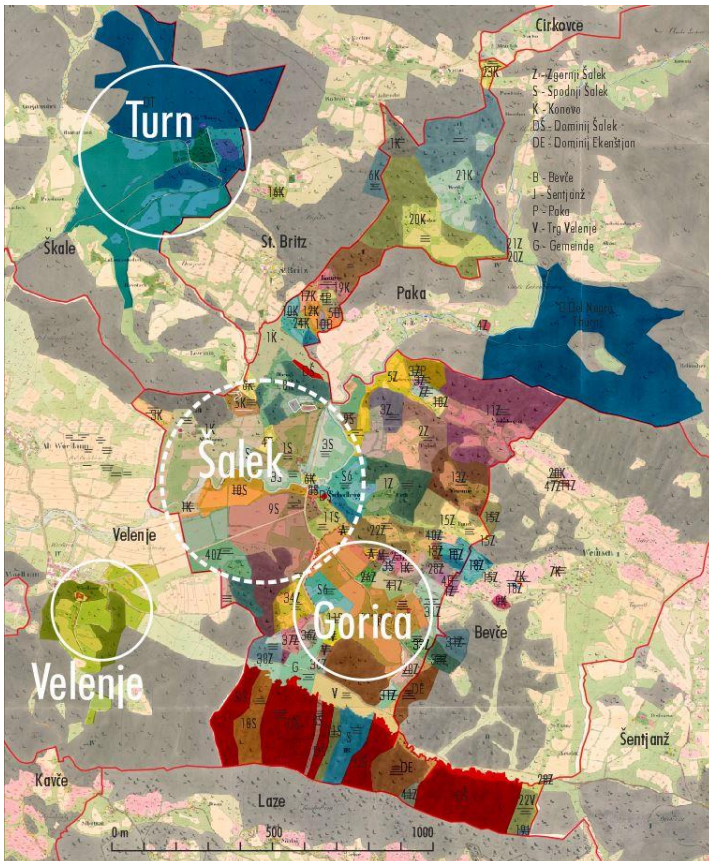
vineyards and village settlements that was older than Šalek: this is indicated by the name Bevško Selo, with the name “village” characteristic of the Slavic settlement (nearby are the places Selo v Paki (village = vas/selo) and Janškovo selo in Šentjanž na Peči /Vinska Gora), while the domestic name Lah in Bevče³⁰⁰ indicates the remains of an ancient settlement.

7. THE CASTLE AS THE COSMIC AXIS (axis mundi) OF SPACE AND HISTORY: The impression of the newly built Šalek Castle must have been extraordinary: the rocky ridge was cleared of trees; a deep castle moat was cut into the rock ridge, which enabled the defence of the location from the south-east side as well, and a six-storey white three-sided tower was built high on the rock above the valley using cut or excavated stones—probably a building beyond comparison in this environment, sown with low, small wooden farmhouses. The castle became the axis around which the life of the east part of the Šalek Valley came to turn, and after which it was named. The 17th century graphics clearly show how the spatial position of the built elements reflects the structure of the society of that time: the highest is the castle, the lowest the subjects’ residences, above them rises the church bell tower.

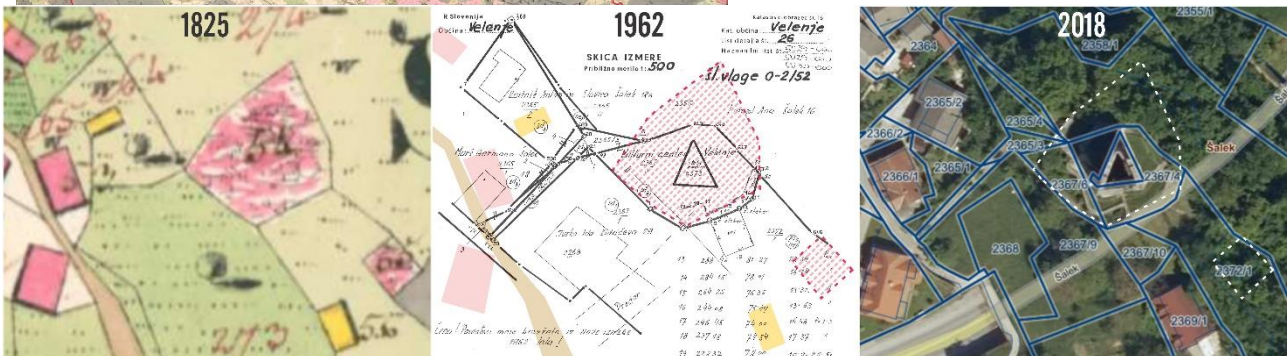
8. ADMINISTRATIVE DIVISION: There was a whole bunch of castles in the Šalek Valley, in its centre Šalek, Turn (a), Šoštanj (b), Limbar/Lilienberg (c), Velenje (d), Švarcenštajn/Gradič (e), each with its own dominical land. The castles of Velenje and Turn preserved the rounded castle estate around the castle until World War II, the Šalek estate was broken up in the Josephine Cadastre as early as 1789. This “disintegration” of the old landscape arrangement around Šalek Castle probably began little by little with the unification of the Šalek and Turn lordships (1732?), when the administrative focus shifted to Turn. The decision of the owners not to restore Šalek Castle after the 1770 fire was probably also the decision not to preserve the old dominical land of the Šalek Castle, which was in the hands of the Turn manager, and sold it to nearby farmers; the lordship owner retained only two plots with castle ruins, inner ward buildings and most of the forests.³⁰¹

³⁰⁰National topographic chart <https://www.geoprostor.net/piso/ewmap.asp?obcina=VELENJE>, 26/10/2018. Franciscan cadastre, rec. no. 20. Near the homestead, the Josephine cadastre mentions the toponym Duorshek (Dvoršek), which may be associated with the “lost manor in Bevče” (Brišnik), and the plot of the branch church seems to have once been part of the area owned by this farm (Franciscan cadastre).

³⁰¹List of building plots no. 54 and 55 in the textual part of the Franciscan cadastre (1825) of Šalek cadastral municipality. SI AS 177/C/F/C400/s/PT, <http://arsq.gov.si/Query/detail.aspx?ID=370626>, 12/9/2017.



An attempt to determine the extent of the nuclei of the former dominical castle estates of the Šalek Valley.

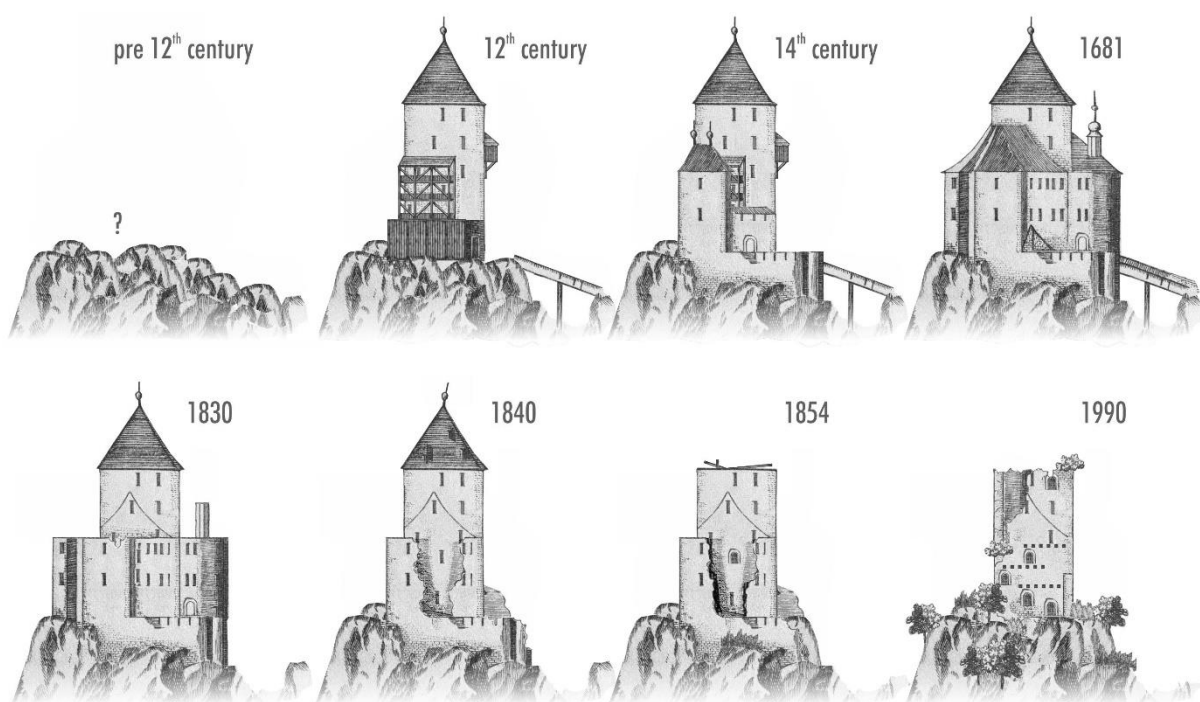


Comparison of the Šalek Castle plot over time: spatial ownership is fragmented, which makes it difficult to manage the ruin.

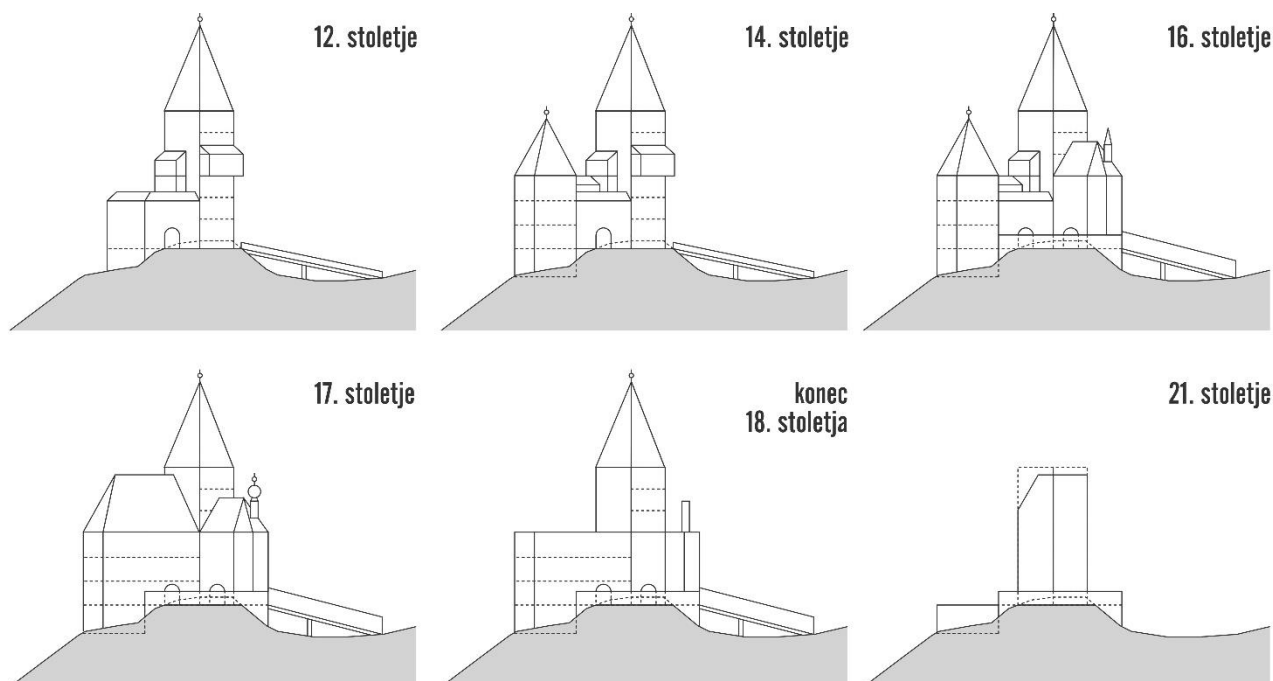
Facility genesis

DEVELOPMENT AND COLLAPSE PHASES OF THE RUINS

Šalek Castle evolved gradually over a period of more than 800 years.



Development and collapse of Šalek Castle (from the 12th to the 20th century), a paraphrase of Vischer's graphics. The phase where the courtyard would be surrounded only by a wooden palisade is dubious: since there are no tufa stone blocks at the corners in the lower level of the triangular tower (while there is some in the upper floors), the courtyard was probably walled from the beginning and the courtyard wall organically continued into the tower wall. If there was no wall in the yard, the tufa stone blocks at the corners would probably reach to the ground.



Castle volume development scheme

- Before 12th century: Remains found during archaeological excavations (older wall under the tower foundations, hand-made pottery) prove older uses of an attractive location on a rocky ridge.³⁰² Old toponyms show that there were oak forests in the area and in the middle of the 19th century the remains of huge oak trees were visible in the valley.³⁰³

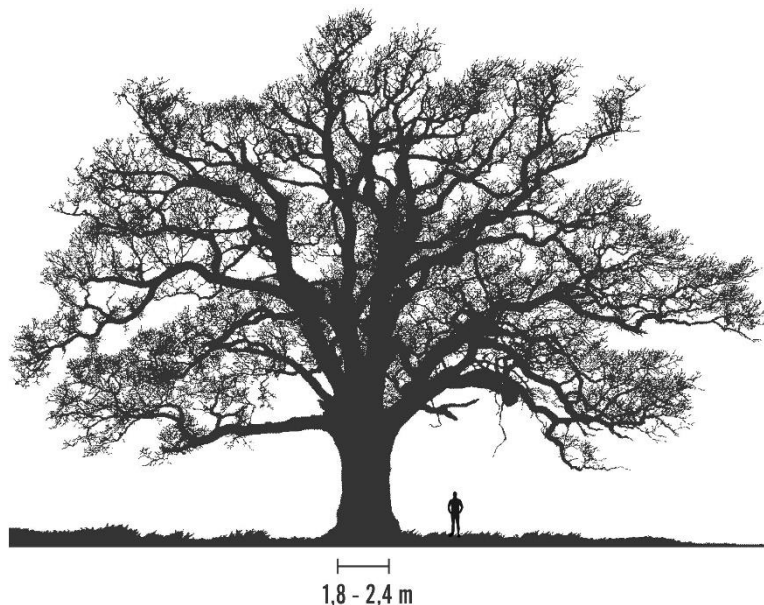


Illustration of the oak tree size,
cited by Gadolla

- In the twelfth century, a four-metre-deep and over 10-metre-wide castle moat was cut into the north-western end of the rock ridge, sharply separating the end of the narrow rock ridge from the continuation of the ridge to the southeast. This way they got a location that was protected on all sides (on three sides by a natural cliff rock, and on the fourth by a castle ditch), where the castle core was probably built with locally excavated/crushed material (white limestone): high three-sided defensive tower with external staircases and a courtyard protected by a palisade or wall. The tower was facing the access side with one of the corners. Probably, an external defensive corridor had already been made high on the tower in the place facing the access, so that the access was easier to defend.³⁰⁴ A steep wooden bridge led to the castle over a ditch, which could be quickly demolished in an emergency. Stopar writes that crushed brick is mixed into the tower walls mortar, which can still be found in several places today. This means that before the construction of the castle during the Romanesque period, there was already a solid building/buildings built of the nearby brick. This is probably a Roman brick from the Stara vas fields, for which Jar Šašl was told that it was full of bricks and stones, and a Roman tombstone was found nearby.³⁰⁵ Those are probably the remains of the Upellis post office between Celeia (Celje) and Colatio (Stari trg near Slovenj Gradec) on the old route to Carinthia (Virunim).

³⁰²Brišnik, Ravnikar, 1999, 73-78.

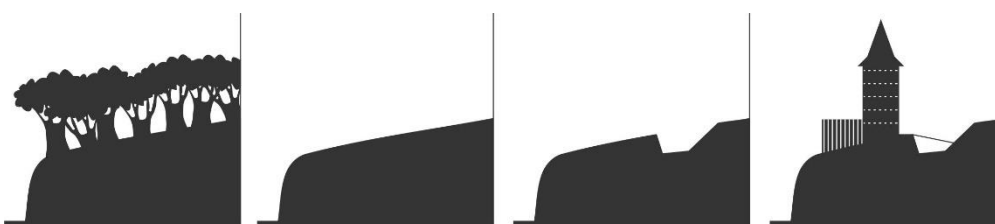
³⁰³Gadolla, 1847, 168-176, 181: In the middle of the 19th century, roots were found at the orchard and the outskirts of Turn Castle, from which it was possible to infer oak trees 6–8 feet in diameter.

³⁰⁴Jakič, 1997, 3.

³⁰⁵Šašel, 1954.



Crushed bricks in the castle walls mortar.



Act of building a castle: removal of the forest, dig ditch, built castle

In addition to limestone, the building material was sandstone (window frames) and tufa (portals, corner stones).



A sandstone lintel above the window on the ground floor of the tower, with a hole for a metal rod



The sewn corner stones of the palace basement are made of tufa³⁰⁶



General limestone masonry

- Supposedly, in the 14th century, a residential tower was added to the available side of the courtyard:³⁰⁷ because it was located towards the end of the ridge, where the terrain descends, it got a basement. The new tower was connected to the older defensive tower by external corridors. The courtyard was probably additionally reinforced. With the construction of the wall, an inner ward was created: the visitor is already inside the wall, but not yet in the castle. This was the point of complete control—a firing line, carved out of sandstone, was staring straight at the visitor from a massive defensive tower, and high above were the soldiers hidden on the defensive gallery under the tower roof. The path turned to the left—it was a defensive trick: the warrior carries the sword in his right hand, and the shield in the left, and if the path turns to the left, the attacker must reveal his unprotected side to the defenders, he cannot hide well behind the shield. From the inner wards, between the wall parapets, you could see the entire slope below the castle.

³⁰⁶Tufa should not be confused with tuff: tufa is a yellowish sedimentary rock and is formed when water flows over plants in streams and limestone is excreted on them. <https://sl.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lehnjak> Tuf ("groh") is a greenish rock, the dust of volcanic origin. <https://sl.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tuf> Confusion is created by the similarities of English names "tufa" and "tuff".

³⁰⁷Kos, 2005, 19, 375.



Visual reconstruction of Šalek Castle in the 14th century.³⁰⁸

- 1681: In the 17th century³⁰⁹, the castle was remodelled into the Renaissance style. In fact, there was no more space on the narrow ridge to expand outwards, so they rebuilt and redesigned the old structure: the former courtyard between the old independent towers was completely transformed into a connecting building between them, covered with an extensive saddle roof and a representative semicircular sandstone portal with an inscription about the owner; on the east side of the tower, buildings were built above the inner wards, including a polygonally finished chapel with an onion cap tower; a tower on the north side was added. The castle got the look of a central design because the lower, subordinate buildings surrounded the higher central tower like a mantle.

In terms of the Renaissance sense of landscaping, an avenue along the access path was added, otherwise the castle hill was left without trees (control, defence). Since the old proprietary church of St. Martin on the other side of the valley became a parish church, the castle lords from Šalek and Eckenstein and the guilds (blacksmiths, horseshoe blacksmiths, butchers, etc.) built a new, Gothic church in the Šalek settlement itself.



Church of St Andrew in Šalek, attempted construction phase reconstruction:

- 1.: 1516 - buttresses to the roof, coats of arms of nobles and guilds;
- 2.: 1/4 16. century - connection of buttresses with arches, coats of arms of nobles, Austria, imperials
- 3.: present appearance.

Local capital focus on the construction of a new Gothic church in Šalek may be the reason why the parish church of St Martin (the primary proprietary church of the lords of Šalek, then the parish church of Velenje) was not Gothic: the parish churches in Družmirje, Škale and Šentjanž got long Gothic barks, Šentilj church got one a little shorter.

³⁰⁸ 3D model and rendering Rok Poles, based on reconstruction drawings from the archives of the Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage of Slovenia, OE Celje, drawn by Ivo Gričar.

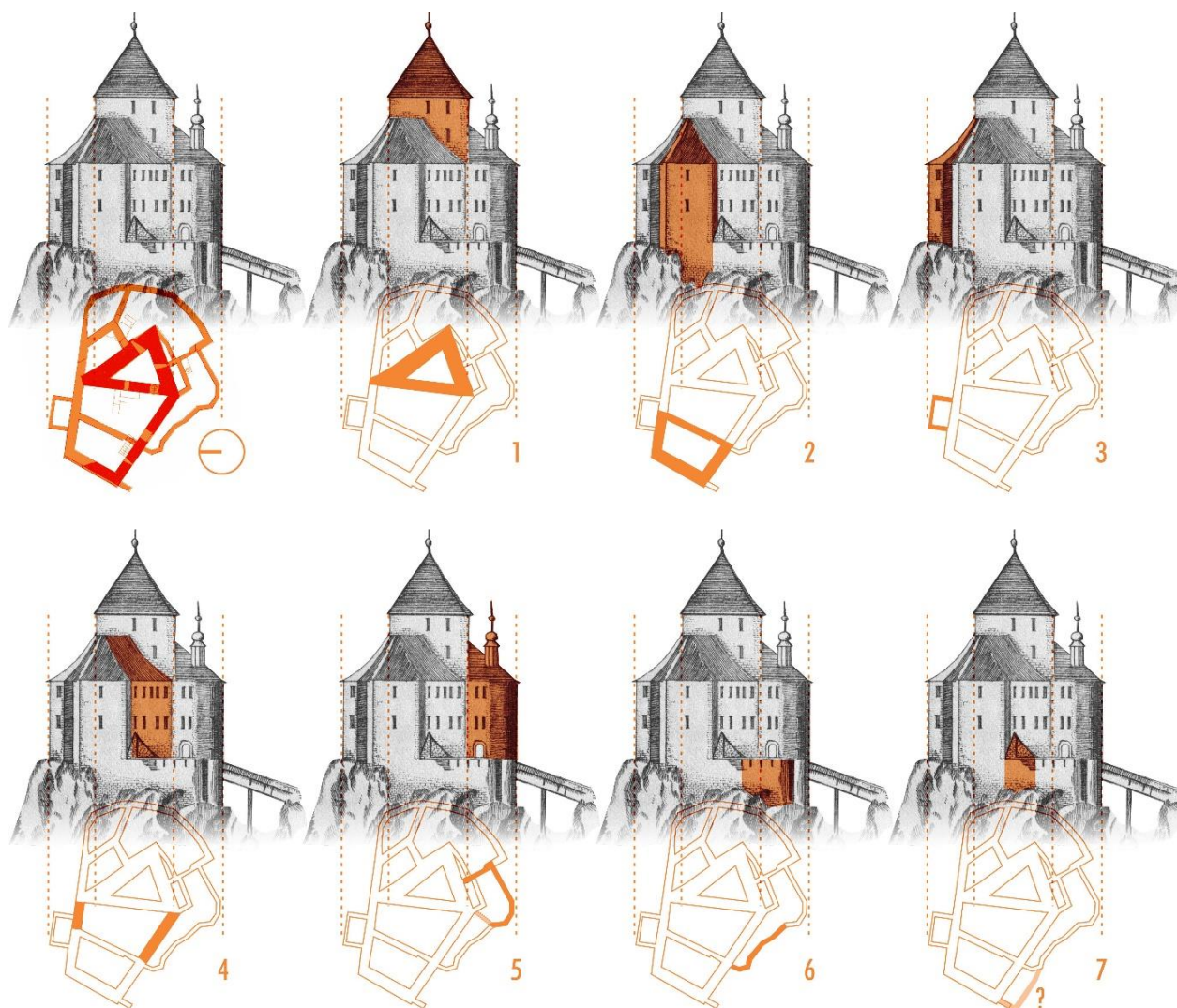
³⁰⁹ Gadolla, 1847, 57, 173 refers to the portal inscription of the year 1620/1626. Perhaps, the rebuilding happened just in time between Vischer's map (1678) and his topography (1681) and that is why the depictions are so different.

- At the beginning of the 17th century, the Šalek lordship was merged with the Turn lordship. For owners who did not reside in the valley, the estates were managed by stewards. Šalek Castle was abandoned at the end of 18th century. In 1830³¹⁰ the walls of the peripheral buildings were still preserved up to the primary height, only twenty years later³¹¹ they've mostly changed to rubble. On the bottom of the castle, there are visible remains of the rooftops, the descriptions reported that the remains of the chapel are still visible. In the middle of the 19th century, the three-sided tower was also left roofless. The castle served as a building stone quarry, some architectural elements were transferred to Turn Castle. In addition to the castle building, the former ownership and economic arrangement of the landscape around the castle also collapsed.
- From the middle of the 19th century onwards, there was a growing awareness of the extraordinary nature of the castle (triangular tower), there were efforts to preserve it and the first castelological and historical research was conducted (noble Gadola, I. Orožen, Piper, Stopar).
- After World War II., in the light of the political assessment of the area, the castle was perceived as a negative element of the landscape ("remnants of an unjust social order") and it would be best to remove it. In 1990, Šalek Castle reached a minimum of built material: the building perimeter around the tower is practically gone; tower surroundings and insides are piles of scattered ruins; the northern corner of the tower is demolished (the foundation was washed away and the walls of the tower were already hanging in the air); the castle and its surroundings were overgrown.
- In the 1970s, research and activities to preserve the castle began. With the restoration in the 1990s, the wall line was reconstructed and the walls of the three-sided tower were fortified. The remains of the second tower were discovered and presented. Renovation with just finished additions to the walls changes – geometrisises the characteristic contour of the ruin, which was previously organic, furrowed. An access road to the castle was made. Publications on castle history (Stopar, Ravnikar) and archaeological finds (Brišnik) were issued.

³¹⁰Depiction: Šalek, Old Kaiser's suite, 1830.

³¹¹Depiction of the Šalek castle ruins on the Dobrna spa poster (after 1854) Brišnik, Ravnikar, 1999, 23.

CASTLE BUILDING COMPOSITION ANALYSIS



Šalek Castle building tissue (built structures) analysis.

- Can we understand the Šalek Castle composition at its peak? If we reconcile Vischer's graphics (1681) and modern floor plan in terms of size and orientation,³¹² a stunningly exact match is shown: the graphics work practically as a perfect drawing/facade of the building. The building core is a triangular defensive tower/bergfried (1), which exceeds the other parts in height by two storeys. Closest to the viewer is the residential area (2), presumably from the Gothic era. To the north, a small tower (3) leans against the residential area and the former inner courtyard – its roof is countertop and follows the roof line of the central building complex (4). The centre of the castle occupies the entire floor plan of the former courtyard between the tower and the palace: it has an extensive saddle roof, which is unified with the roof of the palace. To the right of the tower is an extension with a chapel (5), which has a polygonal or semicircular finish, where the altar probably stood, and a bell tower with an onion roof. Bell towers were rare in castle chapels.³¹³ On the ground floor of the extension (below the chapel) is a semicircular passage connecting the area of the bridge over the moat and the entrance to the central

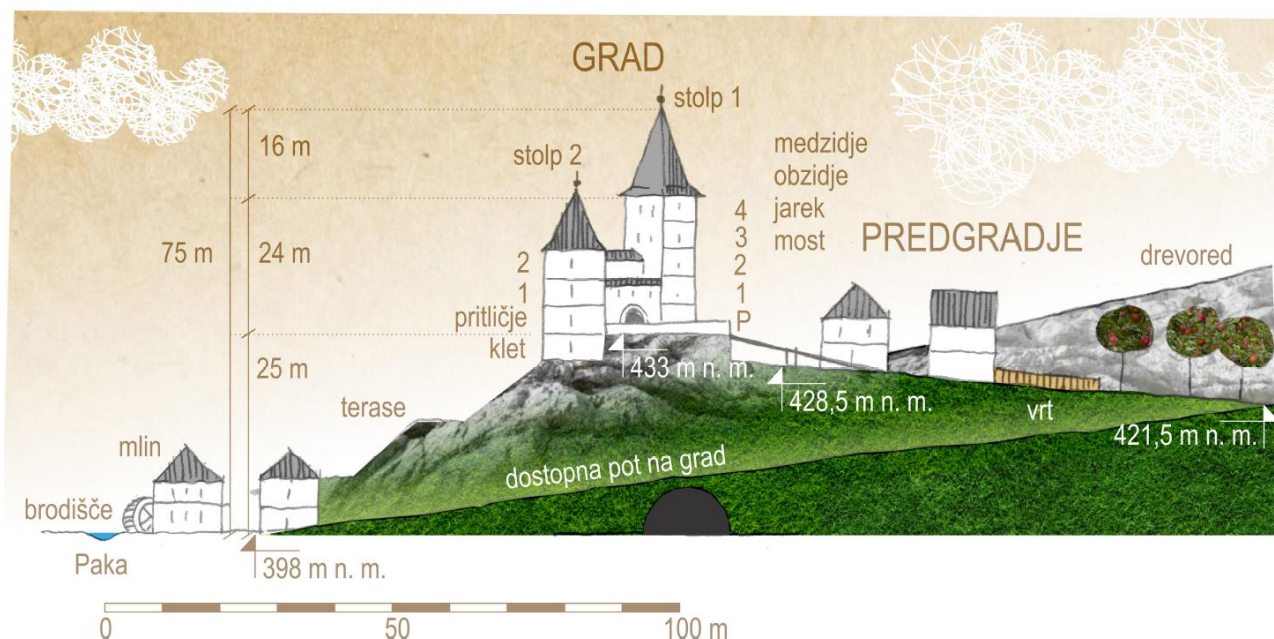
³¹²Ground plan of archaeological research and preserved structures at Šalek Castle, drawing by Ivo Gričar. ZVKDSOE Celje (Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage, Celje Regional Office). Brišnik, Ravnikar: 1999, 35.

³¹³They are also mentioned at the castles of Grub near Piber, Kornberg, Leonrod, Liechtenstein, Michael's Chapel at Feistritz / Ilz, Strechau. Zeitschrift *Historischer Verein für Steiermark*, 1957, p. 69.

<https://books.google.si/books?id=8x8SAAAAIAAJ&q=schallengg&dq=schallengg&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=2ahUKewib08iF1cnjAhWlplsKHfpZDEw4ggEQ6AEwBXoECAEQFw>

part of the castle. In front of the entrance, there's an inner ward with a parapet (6). From the inner ward to the end of the residential area, there is a ground floor extension, of which only a piece of the foundation has been preserved today.

- With the extensions, the central form of the castle was developed: we have a central tower, and all the other elements around it act as a height-unified perimeter of the additional spaces around the triangular tower. The original autonomy of the residential area completely disappeared, and it merged beyond recognition with other extensions.



Vertically developed landscape in the Šalek Castle area

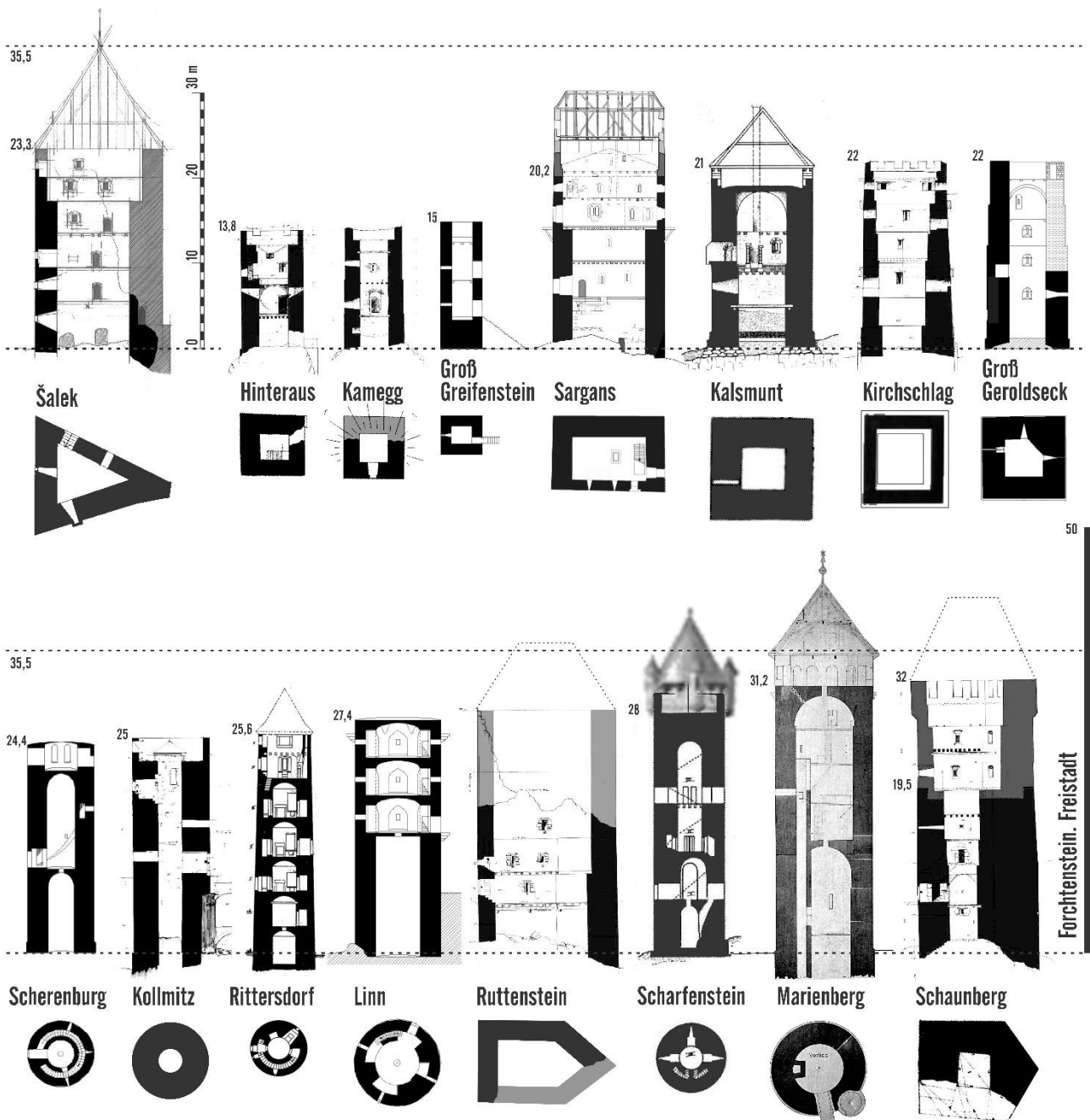
MORE ABOUT THE TRIANGULAR TOWER

A review of related material reveals that towers were of a wide variety of shapes, including those that seem at first to be at odds with common sense (single- and double-angled).



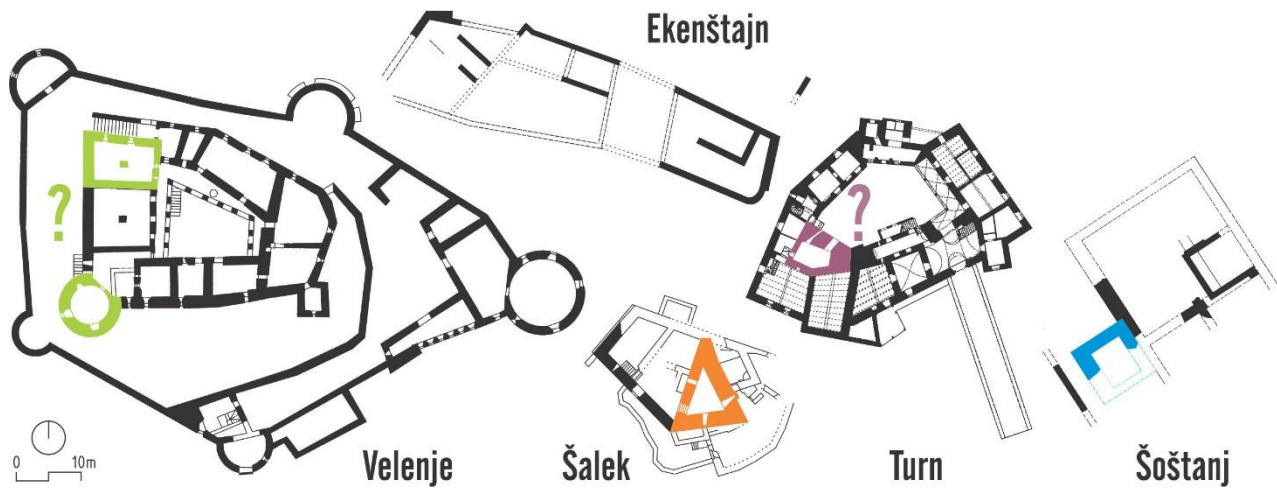
In the above comparison, it can be seen that the three-sided tower of Šalek Castle actually had quite a lot of interior space.

If we compare the Šalek tower with some other towers in terms of height, it turns out that it was among the very high ones: this was also due to its three-sided shape, which made its roof wide and positioned high. The height of the roof represented one third of the height of the whole building. No other compared (masoned) tower had such a high roof.

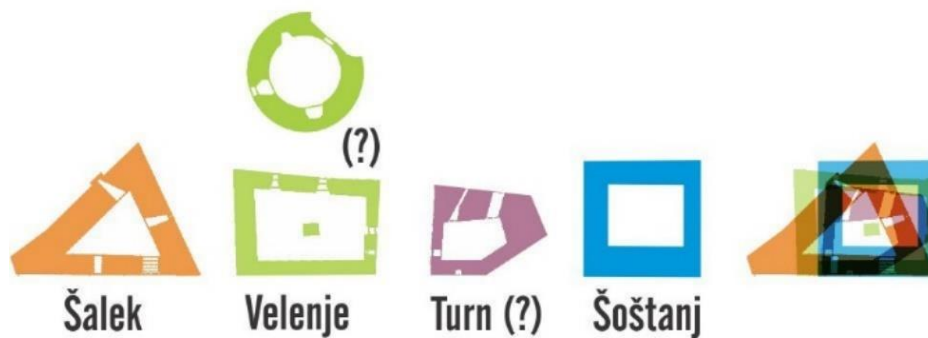


Comparison of Šalek and some other towers in height, source of plans: the internet.

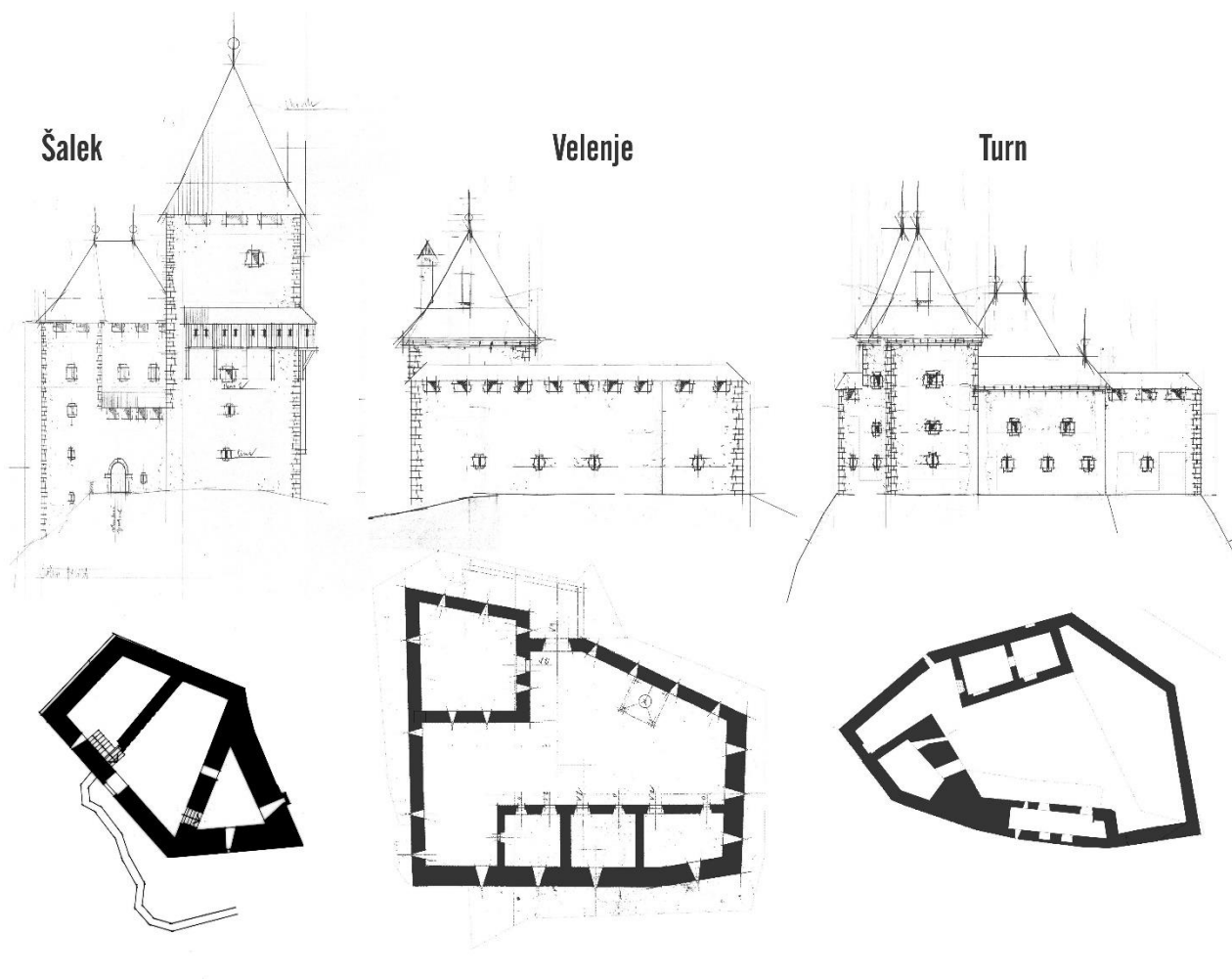
A comparison was made of the size of some castles in the Šalek Valley with Šalek: at first glance it seems as if it was a (very) small castle.



Three forms of Romanesque castle towers appear in the Šalek Valley: triangular (Šalek), rectangular (Šoštanj) and round (Kacenštajn in Florjan near Šoštanj). If we consider only these castle cores or of the first development phase, it is—surprisingly—shown that Šalek appeared the largest when positioned in its area.



If we take into account the heights of other castles in the Šalek Valley, Šalek's size is even more obvious: Velenje Castle had only 3 above-ground floors, just like Turn Castle. Šalek was at least a third taller than the other two.



The supposed appearance of the castles of Šalek,³¹⁴ Velenje³¹⁵ and Turn³¹⁶ in the 13th century – Šalek has a distinctly compact, vertical design, Velenje and Turn are more sloping, in a wider area.

Thus, it is again shown that due to the triangular shape, the tower looked large – bigger than it really was. Perhaps we need to change the view of the triangular tower diametrically: so far we have been amazed at how small the usage area is due to its unusual shape, but in reality we should probably admire the design that creates the greatest spatial impression with the smallest building mass: both in width and by height. With the building's bare defensive function, the presentative role of the building is shown as crucial. The castle served (also or mainly) as a “tool” for exposing the owner – to show off in front of neighbours, to demonstrate power, status, reputation. It was an expression of the owner's spatial wealth and importance. Obviously, Šalek was perfect for this role: it was more striking than its neighbours (Velenje and Turn castles) and the wider area remained named after it (Šalek Valley).

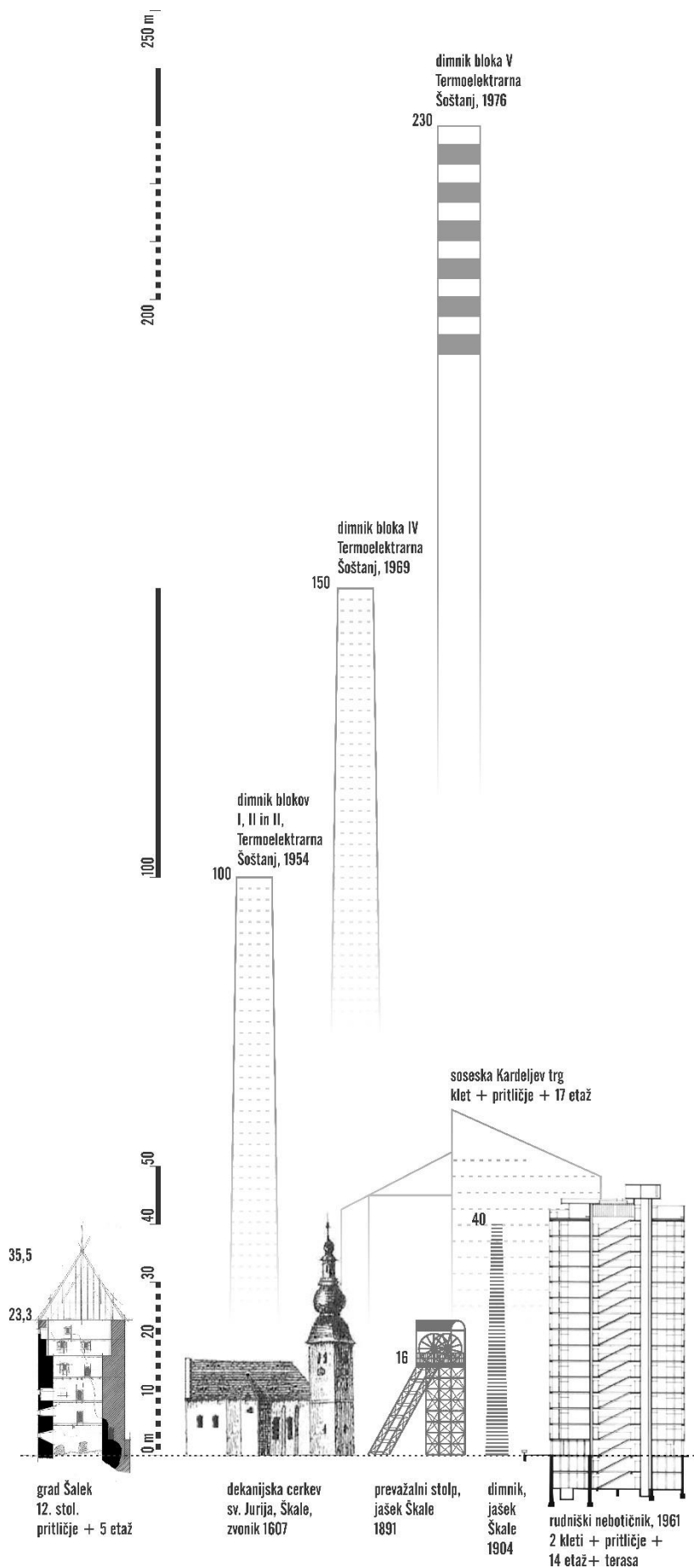
³¹⁴Adapted according to Ivo Gričar, ZVKDS OE Celje Archives.

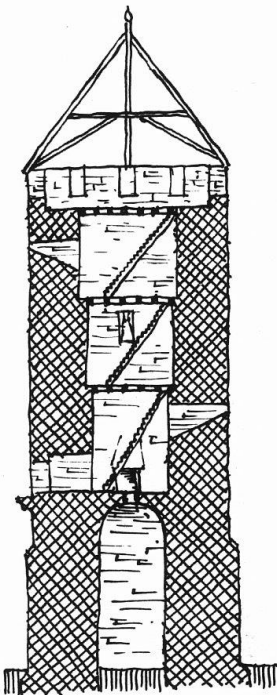
³¹⁵ Adapted according to Ivo Gričar, ZVKDS OE Celje Archives, based on the determination of the building phases according to Ivan Stopar (1989, 53).

³¹⁶From the ground plan according to Šifer (2010, sheet 1.3.2), the supposed castle core, which stood the highest on the rock (basement parts are excluded, as they are probably secondary extensions and were formed when the castle had to expand outwards from the top of the rock mound. A secondary internal staircase (Gadolla, 2015, 80) and arcade parts, which are probably (post) renaissance), have been removed. From the cross-sections according to Šifer (2010, AA sheet 1.3.9, GG sheet 1.3.14), it is evident that the marked castle core is nowhere higher than P + 1 + M, where we know that the castle walls were still raised when the roofing was replaced (Gadolla, 2015, 79). Thus, the castle was probably not taller than it was drawn, perhaps it was even a floor lower. Only by probing the walls would it be possible to make a more reliable reconstruction, but the castle was probably not primarily larger than in our drawing. Primary access was from the north side (Gadolla, Šaleški, 52, 58). The façade is composed as a collage of parts collected from Ivan Gričar's reconstructions of Šalek and Velenje in order to preserve the stylistic unity of the drawings.

Comparison of height dimensions of buildings in the Šalek Valley

The three-sided Šalek Castle tower was the tallest building in the area with its number of floors P + 5 (ground floor and at least five floors)



Seating area in the triangular tower of Šalek Castle.³¹⁷

Tower scheme after Piper, figure 69.

A few more words on the issue of two entrances to the ground floor of the tower. With Piper, the shaped portals are still visible: the right one is level above, and the left one is only slightly stretched, while the portals of the upper floors are semicircular. That would suggest the ground floor portals are younger. Piper writes in a similar direction: that there was a place for a fire in the corner of the ground floor, perhaps a hob—“probably not originally but after breaking through the door”.³¹⁸ So, we could primarily have a tower without an entrance to the ground floor from the outside, which is in line with the schematic image of the tower, characterised by the so-called elevated entrance = entrance from the ground floor but at the floor level of the tower and accessible via its own bridge, stairs or ladder.³¹⁹

³¹⁷Basis: construction documentation of Dragutin Šafarič in Velenje Museum, added to by RP.

³¹⁸Piper, 1905, 171.

³¹⁹<https://sl.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bergfrid>

Non-material heritage bound to Šalek Castle (motifs review)

The set of folk/oral traditions associated with the castle is very extensive. The material has been collected in several phases since the middle of the 19th century and includes the following motifs:

time	recorder	motifs
1847	Franz knight Gadolla ³²⁰	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lightning was supposed to have hit the castle during a dance and caused a fire • There were supposed to be 36 rooms in the castle • There was supposed to be a staircase with more than 80 steps, covered with shingles on the outside of the tower. • Water from the neighbouring hill was supposed to be piped into the kitchen • Due to the triangular shape, cannonballs bounced off the tower during the Turkish siege • The name Šalek is supposed to derive from the Slovene word skale, not from the German word Schall = echo • A Gothic mansion is said to have stood in the village of Šalek • The surrounding area was supposed to be an oak forest • A cave with a multitude of feet, overgrown with moss, the door slams shut, the entrance is never found again.
1878	Josef Andreas Janisch	He takes up after Gadolla, writes that the staircase is supposed to be made of stone.
1936	Janko Orožen ³²¹	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The construction of Šalek Castle, cruel countess is swallowed up by the earth, the count digs an abyss to save her • Underground tunnel to nearby Eckenstein Castle • In the village of Šalek, there is supposed to be a castle granary and a tower • Turkish bullets bounce off the three-sided tower • Lightning was supposed to have hit the castle during a dance and caused a fire • The castle owner gambles the castle and curses his wife and three daughters. The cursed countess mixes the coins in the tub, the countesses ride around the castle in a black carriage • A woman dances around the buckets of gold coins, a passer-by does not obey her, save her and loses a fortune • The lord is tormented by a snake because he went to drink wine in the cellar instead of going to a procession, the same punishment befalls the submissive.
2nd half of the 20th century	Štefanija Prislan ³²²	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A silent black shadow is said to haunt Šalek • The water in the castle was supposed to be piped from three different sides • Farmers Urh, Trbu and Doblčak had a special status • Oštir was a castle granary and an inn • Šafar was the castle caretaker • The castle mill had the year 16?? above the entrance • Plenty of permanent springs in Šalek • Human bones at Kolavtar's pigsty below the castle.

³²⁰Gadolla, 1847, 168-176.

³²¹Orožen, 1936, 119-122.

³²²Photocopies of notes in the archive of Špela Poles, original in the possession of Marjan Prislan.

2001, 2002	Špela Poles ³²³	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Underground corridors: from Šafar to Eckenstein, from Pavl's spring • Šalek Castle is said to be just a watchtower and observation tower of Eckenstein Castle, which was considered a real castle • There was supposed to be treasure in the underground tunnel between the castles of Šalek and Eckenstein • The entrance to the tunnel is at Šafar or in a rock crevice in the castle rock • Below the castle is a rock crevice, which is more closed up every year • Stone Turkish cannon balls are said to have been found in the crevice under the castle • The underground tunnel is supposed to connect the castles of Šalek and Velenje • The key to the treasure in the castle ruins is said to be in Šafar's house • A farmer curses a cruel noblewoman who is swallowed up by a rock • The countess in a fiery chariot with glowing horses is transported every hundred years on New Year's Eve from one ruin to another (Šalek–Eckenstein) • Below the castle is a rocky stone seat
---------------	---------------------------------------	---

Despite major physical and mental changes in the landscape, Šalek Castle remains one of the key spatial dominants and identity points of the valley and Velenje town.

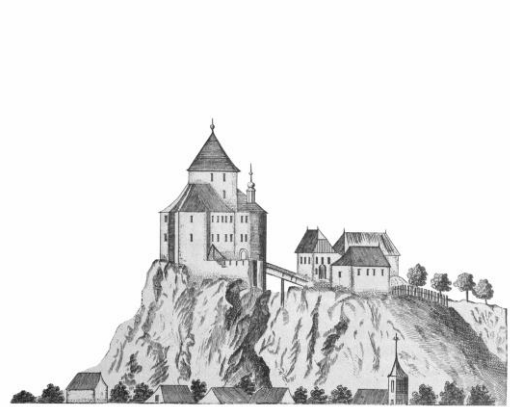
³²³Poles, 2000, 280. Poles, 2011, 36-38.

Explanation

Analysis of Vischer's depiction of the castle



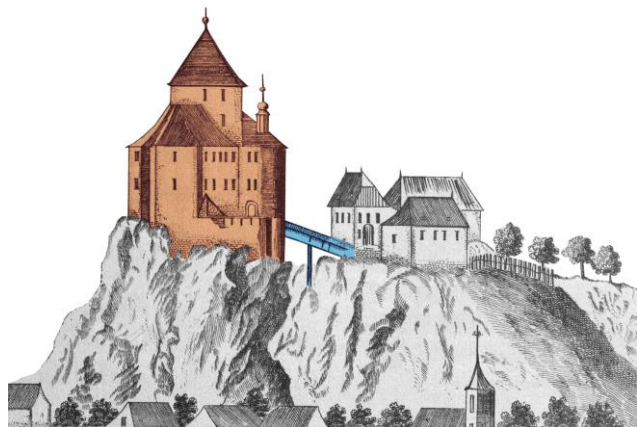
Vischer's graphic depiction of Šalek from 1681



By removing the background, the focus is on the castle. The ruins of Eckenstein and the wooded hills have been removed.



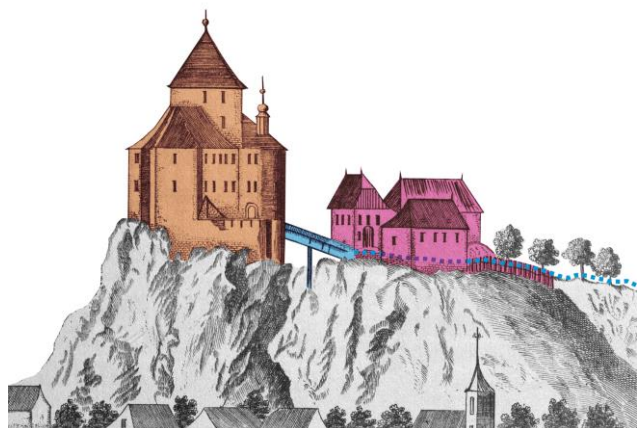
The castle stands on the very edge of a rocky castle hill. Behind the walls rises a set of buildings positioned around the central tower, a tower with an onion roof marks the castle chapel. The main tower reaches five floors in height.



The sloping castle bridge, apparently made of wood, supported by a central pillar.



The path to the bridge is right across the slope.



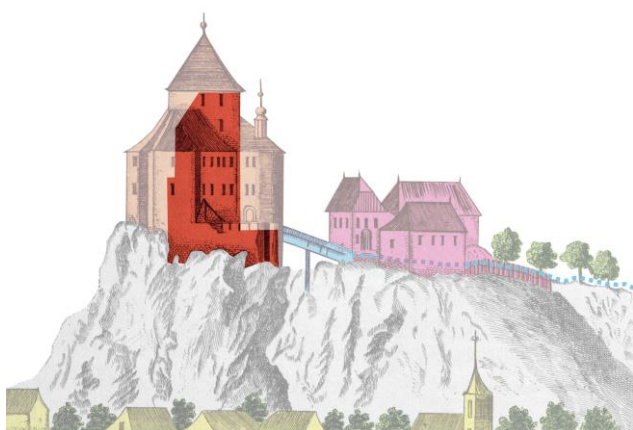
Three outbuildings in the inner wards, with a garden marked by a wooden fence.



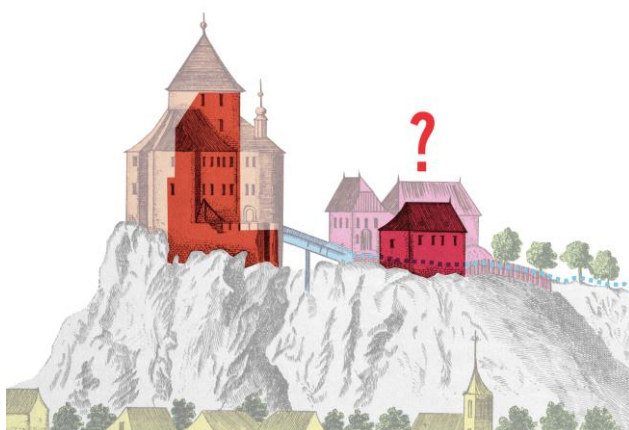
Settlement – the village of Šalek under the castle, with the church of St Andrew.



Trees: orchard or tree-lined avenue next to the castle garden. There were far fewer trees than there are today; vegetation was regularly removed from the slopes of the castle hill for security/defence reasons.



Volume of the built-in tissue preserved as ruins of Šalek Castle.



The dilemma remains as to how much is still preserved from the outbuildings, either as unrepresented ruins or as a part of a modern building.



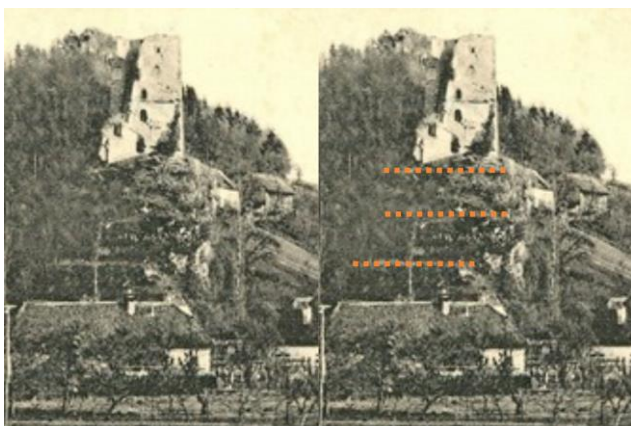
Destroyed remains of an outbuilding in the inner wards. A postcard, Velenje library.³²⁴



The wall south below the castle is now almost completely overgrown³²⁵

³²⁴<http://www.knjiznica-velenje.si/3242>, 22 October 2017.

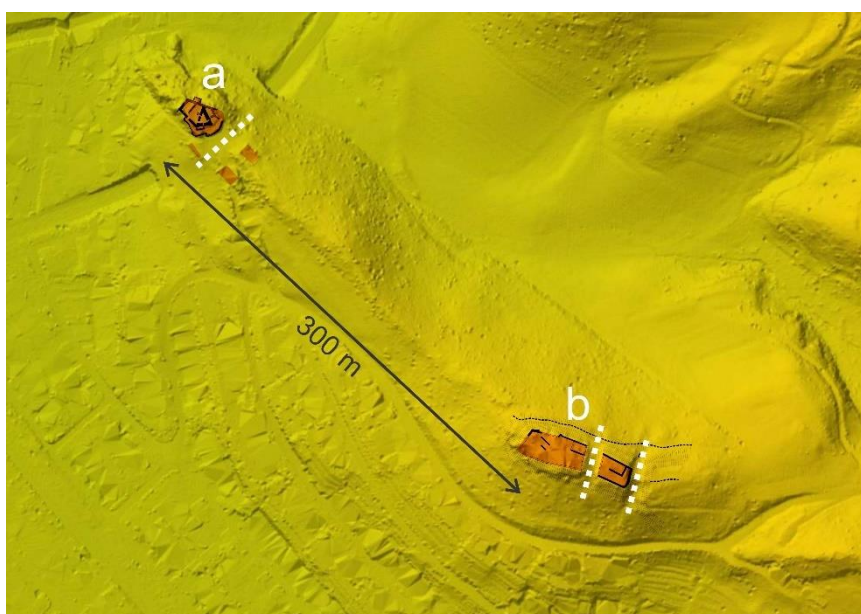
³²⁵ <http://www.gradovi.net/grad/data/salek/PICT7593.JPG>, 22/10/2017.



Older photos show the terraces below the castle on the north side.³²⁶



Castle hill on an old postcard.³²⁷



In the 13th century in the immediate vicinity, on the ridge of the same hill less than 300 metres southeast of Šalek, Eckenstein Castle was built as the seat of the Krško bishops' estate in the eastern part of the Šalek Valley. After the purchase of Šalek, the diocese did not merge the belonging estates of both castles.

According to oral tradition, the following applies: “Eckenstein was a real castle, Šalek was just his watchtower”.



When Šalek was still inhabited, Eckenstein was already in ruins.

Vischer's depiction of Šalek, 17th century.

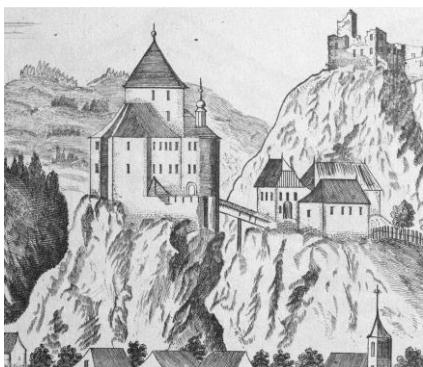
³²⁶<http://www.knjiznica-velenje.si/3242>, 22/10/2017.

³²⁷<http://www.knjiznica-velenje.si/3242>, 22/10/2017.



The ridge from Šalek to Eckenstein today

Old graphics and postcards enable us to **follow the collapse of the castle.**



1681: Depiction of the castle before it became a ruin.



Around 1830. The walls of the buildings around the main tower are still preserved up to the original height of the second floor, but are roofless.



The view from the north. The triangular tower still has a roof.



After 1854: the three-sided tower finally lost its roof, ramparts and walls of the residential area are collapsing.



Around 1860



Around 1864



The ruins before the restoration, when they had the smallest building mass.

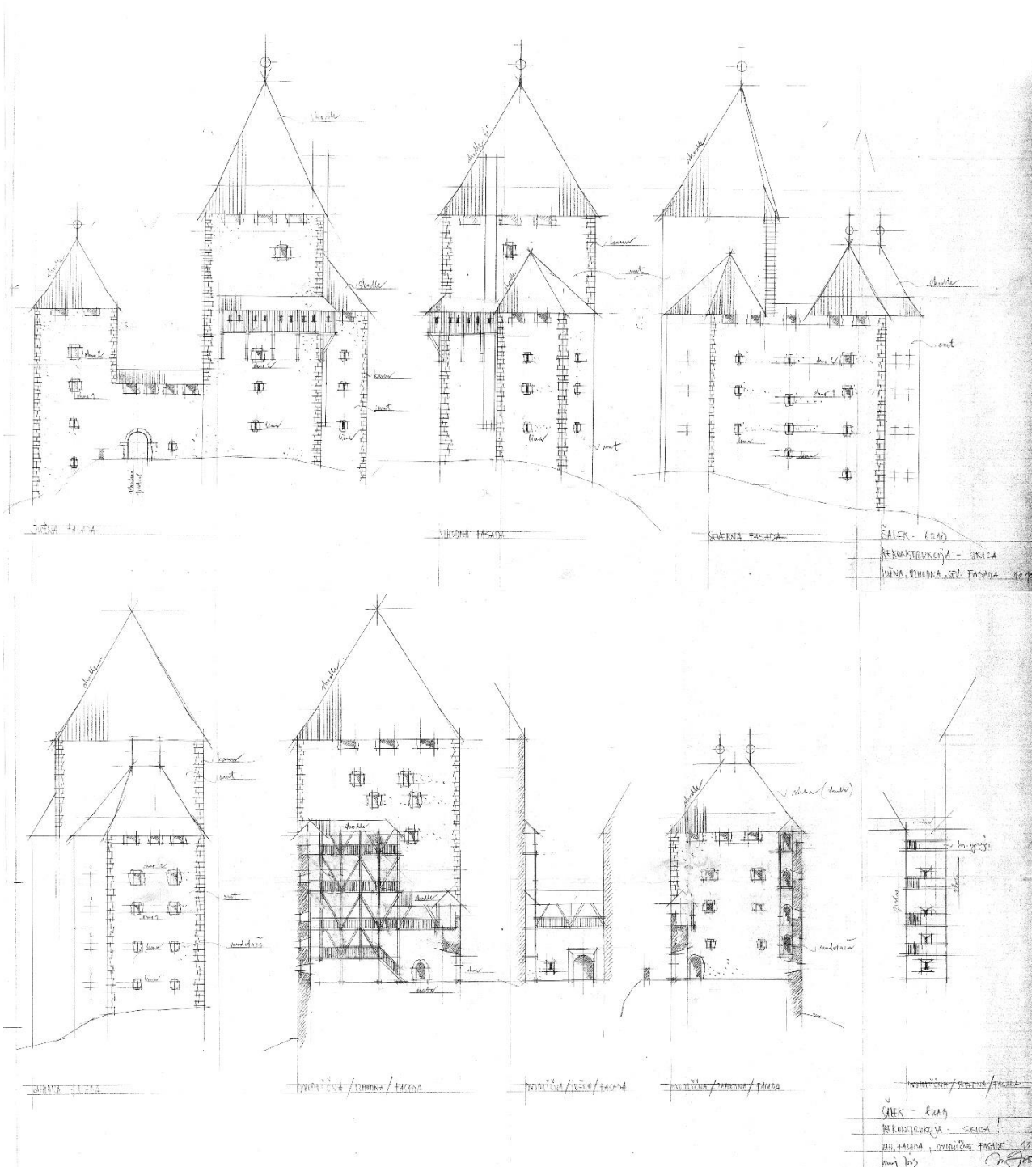


Šalek after renovation in 1990/91: parts of the ramparts, walls and tower were rebuilt, so the building regained some volume.



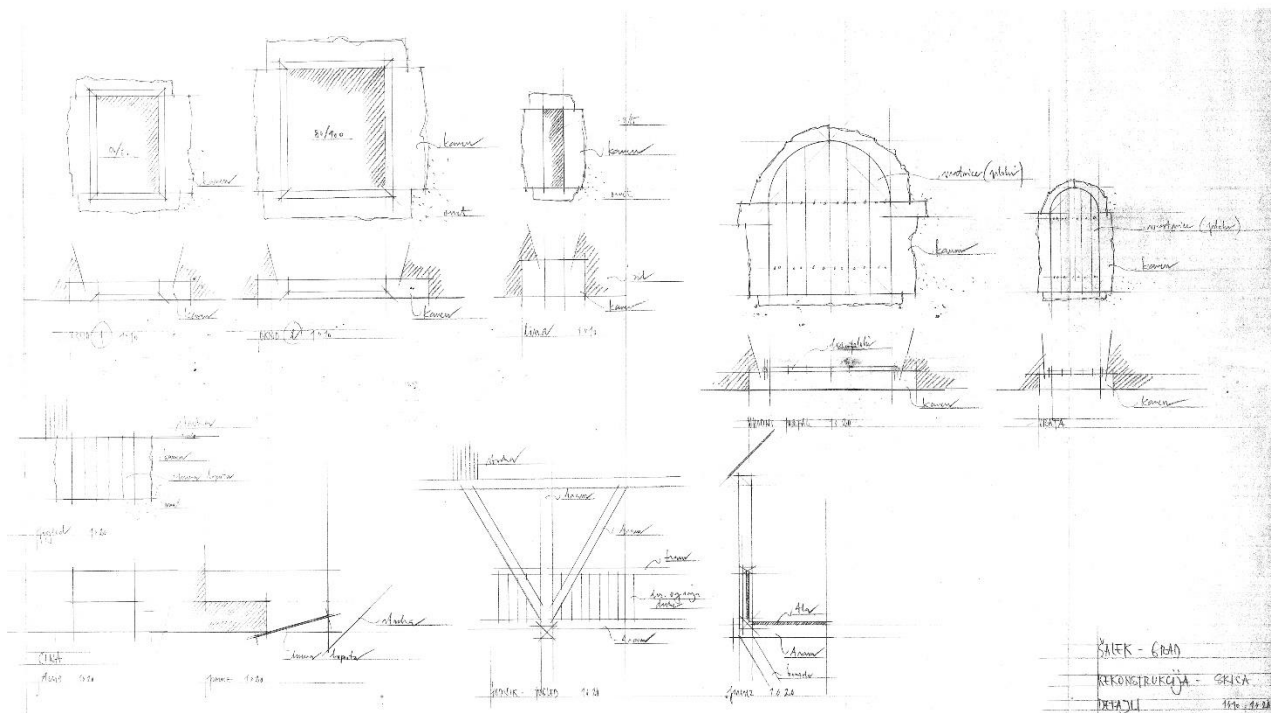
An illustration of the castle appearance in the modern environment.

A flat (2D) reconstruction of the castle's appearance and architectural details



Façades and cross-sections of Šalek Castle, reconstruction, drawing from the archives of ZVKDS OE Celje, drawn by Ivo Gričar.

The reconstruction is based on external staircases that reach several floors in height. It is about 14.5m to the third floor of the castle and if we take into account the oral tradition of an external staircase next to the tower with “more than 80 steps”, this would mean that the stairs would be 1450cm high, meaning approximately 80 steps = approximately 18cm/stair, which is a probable/usable height for a step.

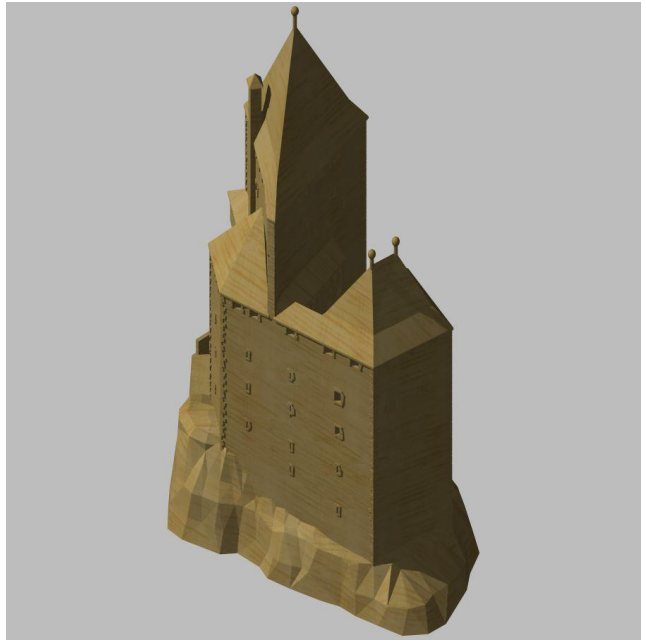


Architectural details and reconstructions, drawing from the archives of ZVKDS OE Celje, drawn by Ivo Gričar.

Computer generated spatial (3D) reconstruction of the castle's appearance



Three-dimensional reconstruction of the castle in the 14th century. The castle consisted of: two towers (a defensive tower with a triangular floor plan and a tower – a residential area with a square floor plan), an inner courtyard with vertical and horizontal external communications between the two floors (wooden corridors and staircases) and defensive walls (ramparts). Presentation with whitewashed walls, accentuated architectural elements made of sandstone or tufa and stone/wooden roofing. 3D model and rendering Rok Poles, based on reconstruction drawings from the archives of the Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage of Slovenia, OE Celje, drawn by Ivo Gričar.



A different surface treatment of the model – an illustration of wood.



Based on the 3D-virtual model of the castle, models were printed in three dimensions.



The 3D model is occasionally used to present the former appearance of the castle to the public.



Šalek Castle is one of the five stations on the Pozoj Castle Trail around Velenje. The route is described in a book/guide and each participant can get a special leaflet for collecting stamps (available from the Tourist Information Centre in Villa Bianca). Each of the stations on the Pozoj Castle Trail is marked with an information board containing a map, a special stamp to be transferred to a leaflet, basic information on the history of the castle and a folk tale.

Following the recommendation that the word “ruin” should appear as part of the heritage name in the logo, the working logo of the ruin has been modified:

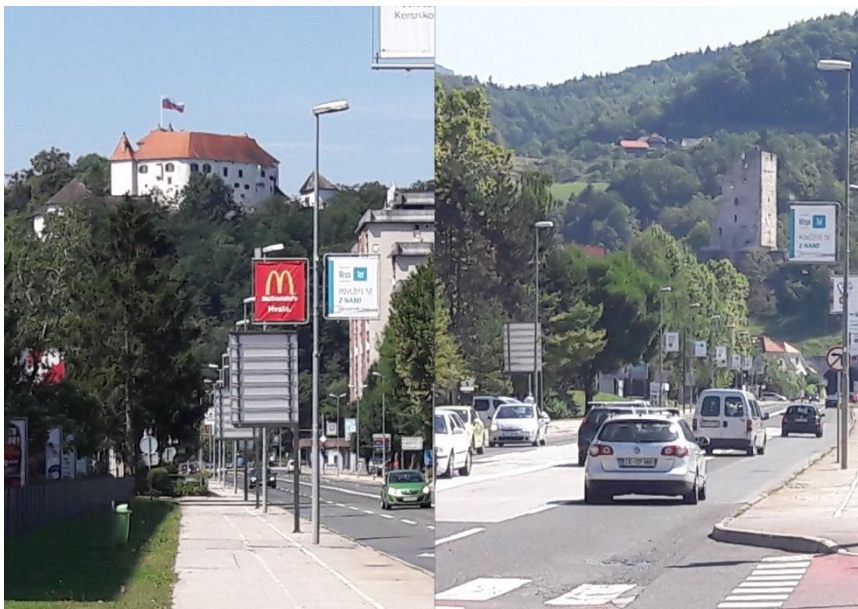


Development of a logo based on the characteristic outline of the ruin, with the word “ruin” added later.

Determining the meaning and value of the heritage

Artistic significance

The typical outline (contour) of the remains of Šalek Castle defensive tower defines the view of the western edge of the Šalek Valley as an immediately recognisable sign in the landscape.



A special feature of Velenje is the flat Šaleška cesta Velenje Castle on the west and Šalek Castle on the east side. Although this arrangement seems to have “always been there”, it is a rather young landscape gesture from the first quarter of the 19th century, considering that both castles are more than 800 years old.

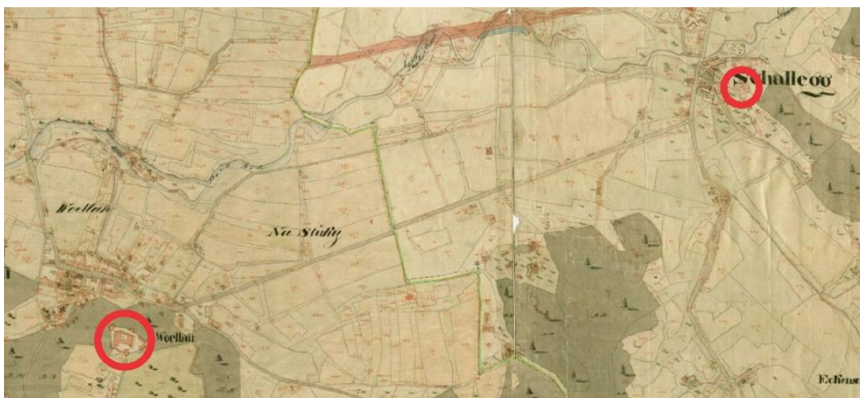


Night image of Šalek Castle

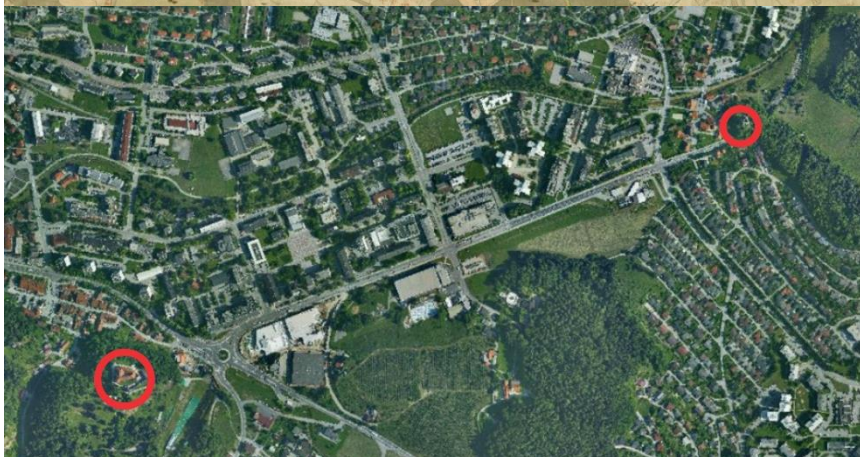
Despite the development of the eastern part of the Šalek Valley, the ruins of Šalek Castle have retained their visual role in the environment.



On the Austrian military map from the end of the 18th century³²⁸ it is evident that the road between Šalek and Velenje was curved. Velenje and Šalek castles are surrounded



The straight road between Šalek and Velenje can be found in the Franciscan cadastre (1825).



Contemporary situation: the geometric network of the urban centre of the modernist town of Velenje originates from the old road Velenje–Šalek.³²⁹

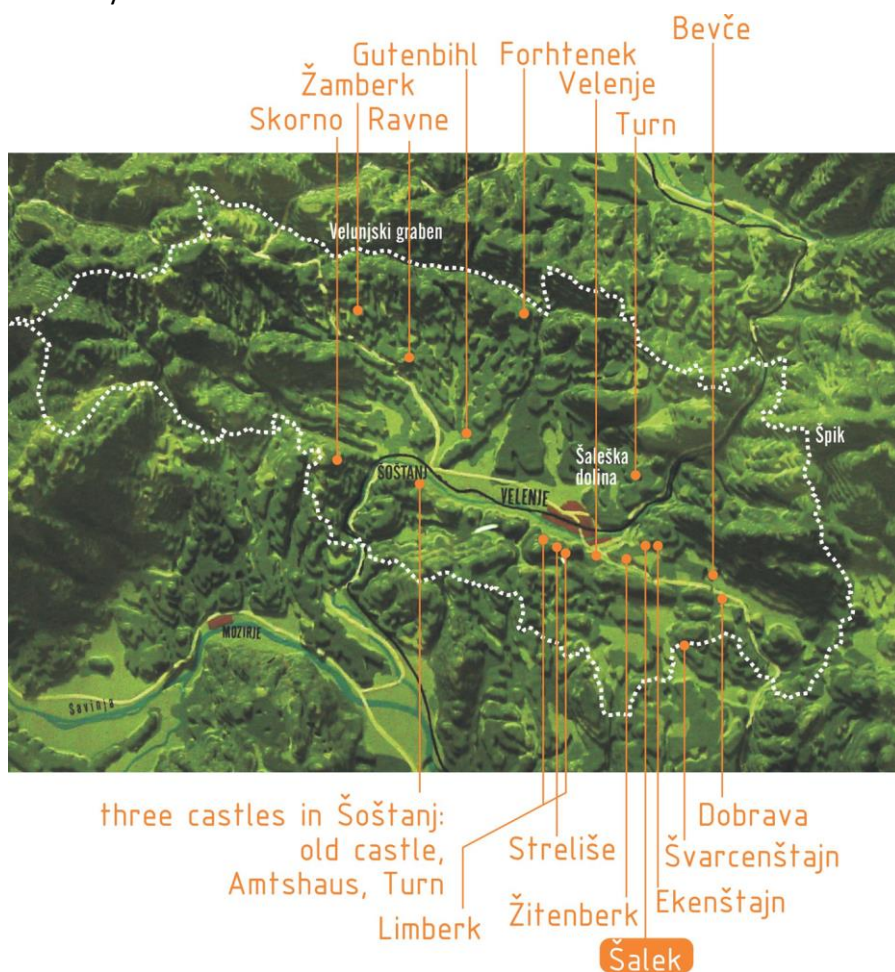


With the active urbanisation of the valley after World War II., the context of Šalek Castle and settlement changed.

³²⁹<https://www.geoprostor.net/piso/ewmap.asp?obcina=VELENJE>, 22/10/2017.

Historical significance

Šalek Castle is almost certainly the oldest castle in the Šalek Valley and the most important castle building in the valley.³³⁰



Castles and mansions in the Šalek Valley

³³⁰ Ravnikar, Razvoj, 2015.

The main feature of Šalek Castle is its triangle tower. Šalek Castle is the only castle in Slovenia with a three-sided defensive tower and one of the few castles that has this tower shape in Europe.

Although it was until recently considered that there were only about five three-sided towers in Europe (Šalek, Araberg/Araburg, Finstergrün, Rauheneck, Velika pri Požegi),³³¹, an internet search discovered several dozen:

Country	Number	Towers or analogue	Number	Other triangular towers
Austria ³³²	6	Ruggburg, ³³³ Streckau, ³³⁴ Rauheneck, ³³⁵ Waldstein, ³³⁶ Forchtenberg bei Semriach, ³³⁷ Klingenstein ³³⁸		
France	2	Rochebaron, ³³⁹ Beaucare – Chateau de Montmorency ³⁴⁰		
Croatia	1	Stari grad – Velika pri Požegi ³⁴¹		
Italy	5	Castiglione del Lago (Fortezza del Leone) ³⁴² , Passignano, Gardona, Nocera inferiore, Santa Lucia del Mela	1	Triangolo Barberini
Hungary	1	Boldogko		
Germany	1	Grenzau ³⁴³		
Poland			1	Uraz
Slovakia	2	Uhrovec, Košice		
Slovenia	1	Šalek (maybe Ranšperk?)		
Spain	1	Castelo da Mola		
Switzerland	2	Haldenstein ³⁴⁴	1	Rheinfelden (Messerthurm) ³⁴⁵ – city walls

For these three-sided towers we must distinguish:

³³¹Piper, 1905, 170. Stopar, 1975, 13.

³³²Araberg Castle is a composite of round and triangle forms.

³³³<http://www.burgenwelt.org/oesterreich/ruggburg/object.php>, 26/10/2018.

³³⁴<http://www.friedmund-hueber.at/strechau14.htm>, 21/10/2017. The Romanesque tower of Streckau Castle is generally referred to as being of a “triangular” shape; thus, in fact, it has five corners. Šalek Castle’s tower similarly has a triangular inner shape but a polygonal outer perimeter.

³³⁵https://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Burgruine_Rauheneck,
<https://www.google.si/maps/search/RAUHENECK/@48.0057367,16.2029432,236a,35y,60.7h,35.59t/data=!3m1!1e3>, 12/9/2017.

³³⁶ <https://meliponini.wordpress.com/2015/05/28/die-reise-zuruck-ins-mittelalter/>,
https://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Burgruine_Waldstein, 12/9/2017.

³³⁷http://www.burgenseite.com/unknown/forchtenbg_txt.htm

³³⁸ http://www.burgenseite.com/unknown/salla_txt.htm, 12/9/2017.

<https://www.google.si/maps/place/Burgruine+Klingenstein/@47.1060137,14.9601845,279a,35y,14.06h,4.87t/data=!3m1!1e3!4m6!3m5!1s0x4771d4d00b9f06e1:0x20779caebf94779a!4b1!8m2!3d47.1062357!4d14.9606682>

³³⁹<http://auvergne.travel/kulturerbe/bas-en-basset/burg-rochebaron/tourisme-PCUAUV043FS0000E-4.html>, 12/9/2017,
<http://a398.idata.over-blog.com/0/23/09/69/chateau/03-15-43-63/43/rochebaron-/43-Rochebaron-00.jpg>, 21/10/2017.

³⁴⁰https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Beaucaire,_Gard#/media/File:Chateau_de_Beaucaire_donjon_1.JPG

³⁴¹Stopar, 1975, after: Gjuro Szabo: Sredovječni gradovi u Hrvatskoj i Slavoniji, Zagreb 1920, 14, 117.

<http://www.templari.hr/strucni-radovi/Sredovjecni%20gradovi%20u%20Hrvatskoj%20i%20Slavoniji.pdfm> 26/10/2018.

³⁴²<http://www.miralduolo.com/de/castiglione-del-lago/>, 12/9/2017.

³⁴³ https://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Burg_Grenzau#/media/File:Burg_Grenzau_014.JPG, 12/9/2017.

http://www.regionalgeschichte.net/westerwald/staedte-doerfer/orte-g/grenzau/feeds/fotostrecke/tt_content_85295/0.html, 12/9/2017.

³⁴⁴ https://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Burg_Haldenstein.

<https://www.google.si/maps/place/7023+Haldenstein,+%C5%A0vica/@46.8792928,9.523107,164a,35y,9.38h,41.33t/data=!3m1!1e3!4m5!3m4!1s0x4784c637d3cab8d7:0x1d59b46d86a06f68!8m2!3d46.8786697!4d9.5261007>

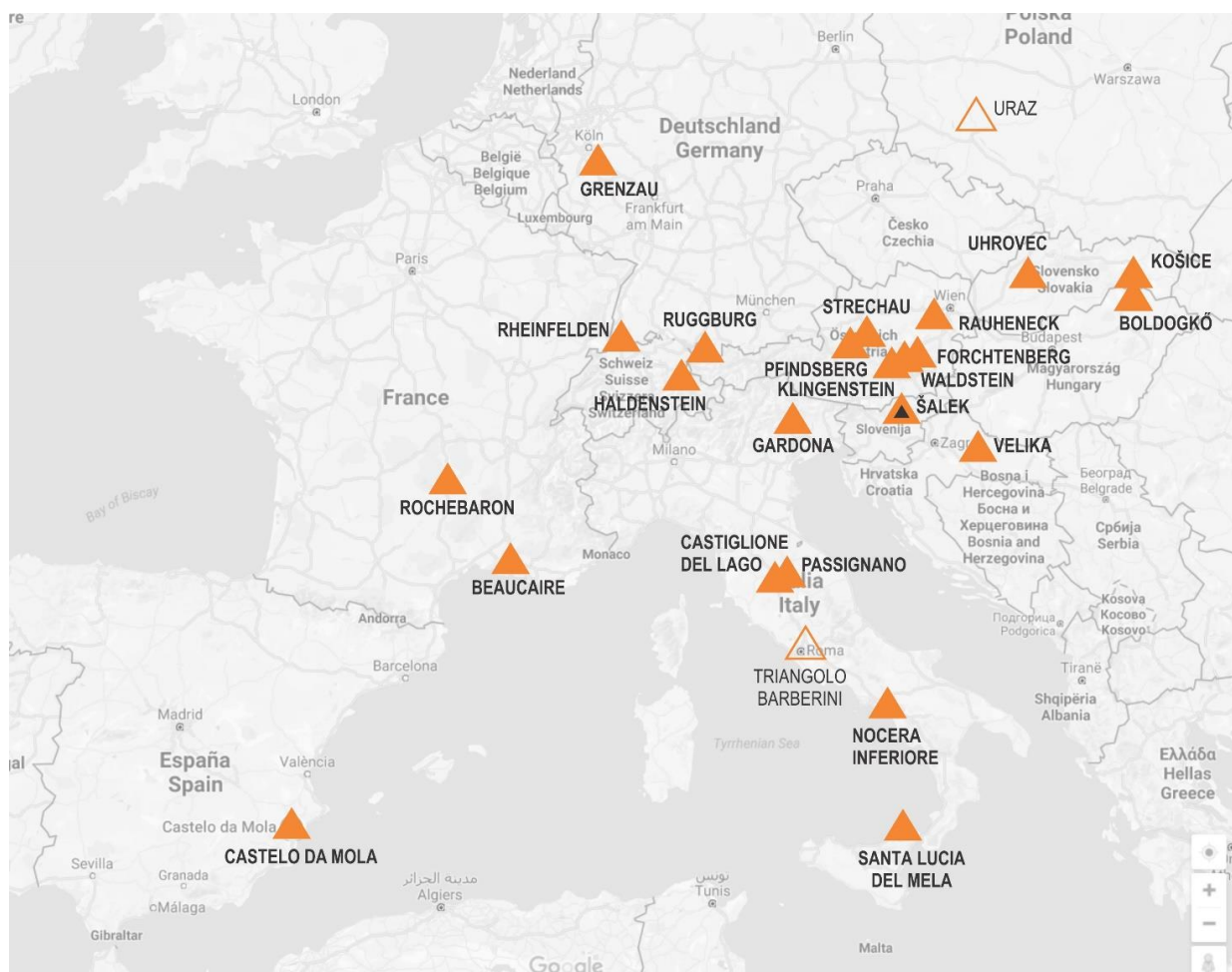
³⁴⁵<https://deutsche-Schutzgebiete.de/wordpress/projects/schweiz/aargau/>, 23/10/2018. <http://www.rheinfelden.net/rhf-f.htm>, 23/10/2018. Supposedly 15th century

- three-sided towers, which are comparable to Šalek in terms of form, function and time of built;
- three-sided towers within the city or castle walls, which only have three-sided shape and defensive purpose in common with Šalek;
- three-sided castle towers of later origin (Gothic, Renaissance, in historical styles), which were often built as formalistic architectural whims without an actual defensive function.

In the Spanish spatial area, a three-sided tower bears a special feature: the triangular tower was perceived as Christian as opposed to the square type, which is considered Muslim.

Towers with a triangular or pentagonal ground plan faced the side, more likely to be targeted, with one of their sharp corners.³⁴⁶ The tip of a triangle, called the “deflection wedge” (German Prallkeil or Sturmkante), is supposed to receive projectiles at an acute angle (not perpendicular) and thus reduce their impact strength.³⁴⁷

There are also hybrid forms of towers: with a triangular tip and circular convex walls (Castel Gavone: **Torre Diamante in Italy**), or the triangular apex was added to the original circular tower even later, during the Renaissance fortifications of the castle, (Araburg near Kaumberg in Austria, in the 15th century the apex was added at the site of the necessary reinforcement³⁴⁸) or the original rectangular tower - *Weitenegg* - in the 16th century the tip from the first half of the 13th century was added to the tower³⁴⁹).



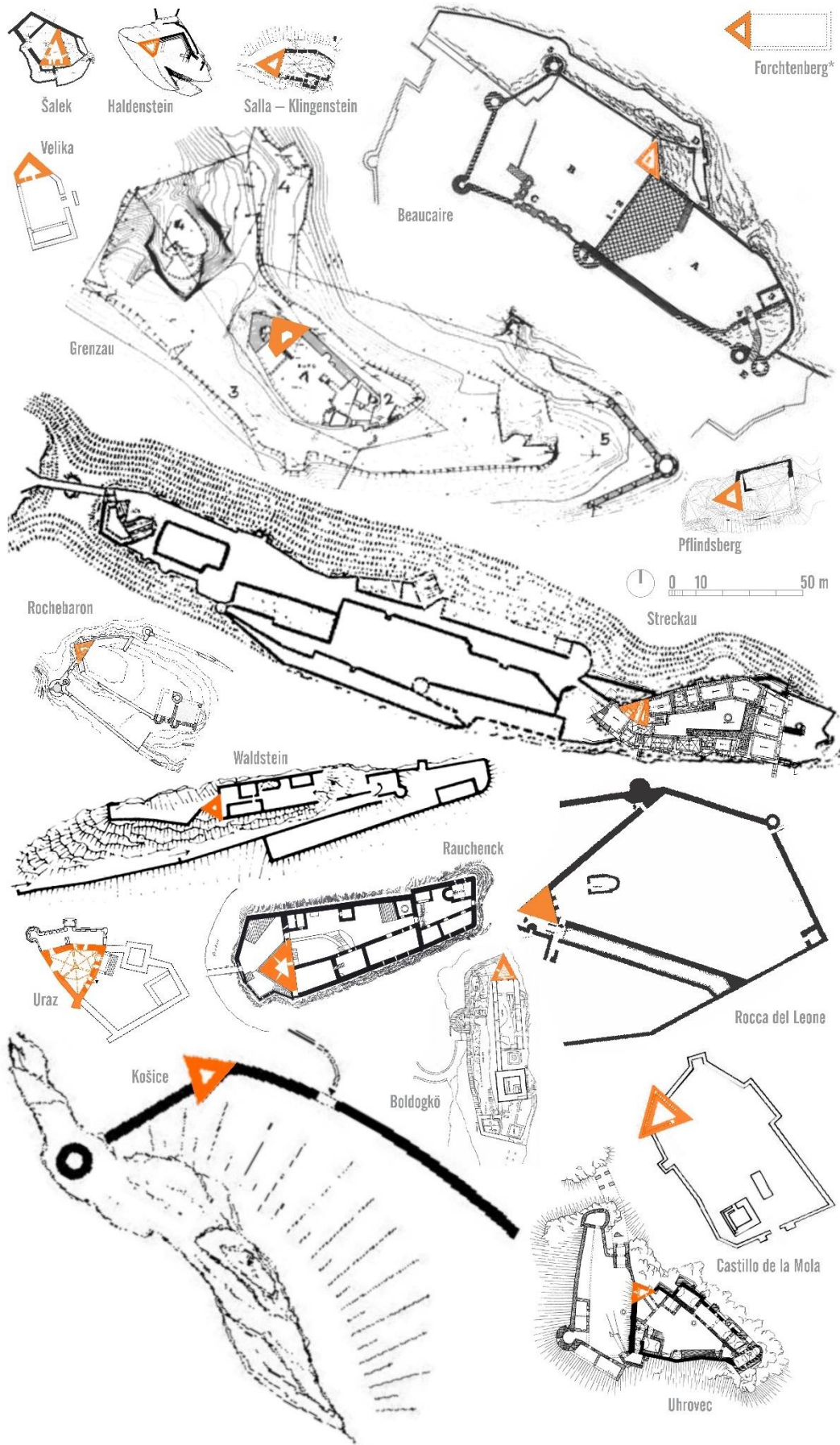
Map of locations of triangular towers

³⁴⁶<https://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bergfried>.

³⁴⁷<https://www.regionalgeschichte.net/bibliothek/texte/aufsaeetze/grathoff-alte-glossarartikel/bergfried.html>

³⁴⁸<https://baudenkmaeler.wordpress.com/2018/04/29/bergfried-araburg-niederosterreich/>

³⁴⁹ <http://www.imareal.sbg.ac.at/noe-burgen-online/result/burgid/2353>. *Weitenegg. Construction phase plan: Gerhard Reichhalter; digitalisation: Patrick Schicht*



Floor plan comparison of triangular tower forts. The size is unified, the orientation is realistic.

*orientation is not known.³⁵⁰

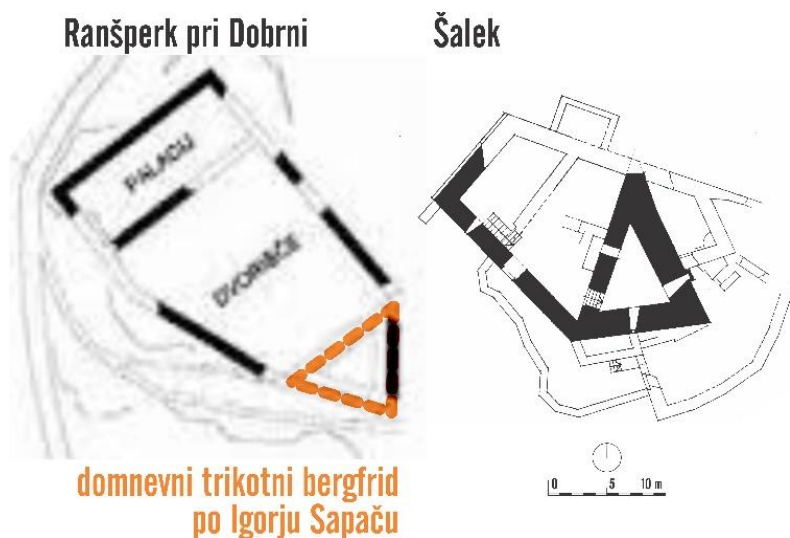
³⁵⁰Floor plans of analogue castles:

- **Salla – Klingenstein:** http://www.burgenseite.com/unknown/salla_gr.jpg

- **Grenzau:** Leop. Elester, floor plan of the ruins of Grenzau Castle, measured in 1847, from the map of Elster, Landeshauptarchiv Koblenz, https://www.regionalgeschichte.net/westerwald/staedte-doerfer/orte-g/grenzau/feeds/fotostrecke/tt_content_85295/0.html, http://www.ms-visucom.de/r30/vc_content/bilder/firma451/msvc_intern/74_23_20050520120704.gif
- **Rauchenck:** <https://diglib.tugraz.at/download.php?id=54100923926e6&location=browse>
- **Rochebaron:** <http://a398.idata.over-blog.com/0/23/09/69/chateau/03-15-43-63/43/rochebaron-/43-Rochebaron-00.jpg>, velikost in usmeritev po <https://www.google.com/maps/place/Castle+Rochebaron/@45.3160033,4.0987822,181m/data=!3m1!1e3!4m5!3m4!1s0x47f5c73ee9dac9e5:0x91854493b227e5ed!8m2!3d45.3155953!4d4.099405>
- **Velika:** http://landmarkings.com/velika_zanimljivosti_hr.php, Google Maps orientation
- **Beaucaire:** <http://chateauxenfrance.e-monsite.com/pages/plans-de-chateaux/chateau-de-beaucaire.html>, usmeritev po <https://www.google.com/maps/place/Chateau+de+Beaucaire/@43.8100667,4.6439076,180m/data=!3m1!1e3!4m5!3m4!1s0x12b5dc7f8915afb3:0xe150a27bb9d890e!8m2!3d43.8097585!4d4.6449082>
- **Fortezza / Rocca del Leone, Castiglione del Lago:** <https://tagliasacchi.wordpress.com/2016/08/28/20072010comune-di-castiglione-del-lago-italia/>, velikost in usmerjenost po: <https://www.google.com/maps/place/Rocca+del+Leone/@43.1277119,12.0558257,101m/data=!3m1!1e3!4m5!3m4!1s0x1329553b9238dc3f:0x3c33abbfd723716c!8m2!3d43.127564!4d12.055521>
- **Waldstein:** <http://www.burgenwelt.org/oesterreich/waldstein/object.php>, after: Krahe, F.-W., Burgen des deutschen Mittelalters, Augsburg, 1996, edited by Dr. Olaf Kaiser Size and orientation after: <https://www.google.com/maps/search/waldstein/@47.2310097,15.2816382,176m/data=!3m1!1e3>
- **Haldenstein:** Untervazer Burgenverein Untervaz, Texte zur Dorfgeschichte von Untervaz, 1940, p. 17. <http://download.burgenverein-untervaz.ch/downloads/dorfgeschichte/1940-Die%20Burgen%20in%20den%20V%20D%C3%B6rfern.pdf>, size and orientation after: <https://www.google.com/maps/place/Ruine+Haldenstein/@46.8804545,9.5232364,75m/data=!3m1!1e3!4m5!3m4!1s0x4784c7c690df4c3d:0x1af8448f31046158!8m2!3d46.8804472!4d9.5234185>. 3D model: <https://sketchfab.com/models/29c300011b5b4cc281241c7b91a378c3>
- **Streckau:** middle part: <http://www.friedmund-hueber.at/strechau12.htm>, whole: <http://www.burgenwelt.org/oesterreich/strechau/object.php>, after: Krahe, F.-W., Burgen des deutschen Mittelalters, Augsburg, 1996, edited by Dr. Olaf Kaiser. Size and orientation after: <https://www.google.com/maps/place/Rottenmann,+Avstrija/@47.5307255,14.3117229,714m/data=!3m1!1e3!4m5!3m4!1s0x477175724edbccf7:0xf4d9084cb076eab8!8m2!3d47.5253626!4d14.3573448>
- **Forchtenberg:** Remains of the 11th century castle. A triangular tower with approximately 2-metre-thick walls and a length of approximately 14.5m and about 30 x 15 other castle arrangements, surrounded by walls. Schematic sketch after: Hermann Truschning, <http://www.wehrbauten.at/stmk/steiermark.html?stmk/forchtenberg/forchtenberg.html>
- **Castillo de la Mola:** triangular tower from the first half of the 14th century. https://es.wikipedia.org/wiki/Castillo_de_la_Mola, <http://www.jdiezarnal.com/castillodenoveldaplano01.jpg> velikost in usmerjenost po: <https://www.google.com/maps/place/Castell+de+la+Mola/@38.4088271,-0.7936495,131m/data=!3m1!1e3!4m5!3m4!1s0xd63c42d62676a4f:0x9a117646cdf58a63!8m2!3d38.408608!4d-0.7928838>. Significant differences between floor plan and orthophoto.
- **Uraz,** Poland, 14th century: <https://medievalheritage.eu/en/main-page/heritage/poland/uraz-castle/> velikost in usmerjenost po: <https://www.google.com/maps/search/URAZ++polska+castle/@51.2439065,16.8492015,322m/data=!3m1!1e3>
- **Montegualtieri,** Italy, 12th century: https://it.wikipedia.org/wiki/Torre_di_Montegualtieri
- **Uhrovec,** Slovakia, second half of the 13th century: <https://medievalheritage.eu/en/main-page/heritage/slovakia/uhrovec-castle/>
- **Boldogkő,** Hungary, 13th century: http://www.hongaarskinderplezier.eu/indexen.php?pagina=99&att_id=30, velikost po: <https://www.google.com/maps/place/Boldogk%C5%91+Castle/@48.3451401,21.2294434,348m/data=!3m1!1e3!4m5!3m4!1s0x473f47e266c51b7f:0x18e00dc3545d361a!8m2!3d48.3447259!4d21.2325181>.
- **Košice,** Slovakia, beginning of the 14th century: <http://www.palba.cz/newspage.php?news=8275>
- **Pflindsberg,** 1250: https://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Datei:Grundriss_Burgruine_Pflindsberg.jpg
- **Gardona,** Italy:
- **Monte San Biagio,** Italy, 1100: http://www.marketing.territoriale.it/sudpontino/moduli/cultura.html.COD_CULTURA=186
- **Santa Lucia del Mela,** Sicily:
- **Passignano:**
- **Castello del Parco,** Nocera Inferiore: https://it.wikipedia.org/wiki/Castello_del_Parco - Torre Normanna 'Filangieri'
- **Triangolo Barberini,** Rom, 1660–1669, architect Francesco Romano Contini: http://baroqueart.museumwnf.org/database_item.php?id=monument;BAR;it;Mon13;21;en, http://www.acampromotes.com/attachments/1450623470-3+1_allegato%20A3%20HD.pdf
- **Severndroog Castle,** England, New Gothic style, architect Richard Jupp, 1784.
- **Broadway Tower,** plan James Wyatt, 1794.
- **Haldon Belvedere** triangle tower (including Lawrence castle) at Exeter, Devon, England, 1788.



Examples of triangular towers in Europe.



domnevni trikotni bergfrid
po Igorju Sapaču

Estimating that there are around 900 castle buildings in Slovenia,³⁵¹ the three-sided tower of Šalek Castle definitely presents an exceptional floor plan. However, dr. Igor Sapač assumes that another triangular castle tower not far from Šalek probably stood: at the Ranšperk castle near Dobrna.³⁵²

• **Blackwater castle** – triangular tower, defence walls from 14–16th century. <https://www.blackwatercastle.com/history-and-heritage/heritage/>

³⁵¹Jakič, 1997, 1.

³⁵²Sapač, 2014, 604.

Social/symbolic significance



Passing of the name Šalek from the castle to the valley, settlement, historic villa ...

Šalek Castle is one of the most important/iconic buildings in the history of the Šalek Valley. Sufficient proof of its importance lies in the fact that not only the settlement at the foot of the castle was named after the castle, but also the entire valley. Almost all other valleys in Slovenia are named after rivers running through them.

The settlement was named after Šalek Castle and consequently also the school, the fire brigade, the tourist association and also the villa "Novi Šalek" (Neuschallegg), which is known today as Villa Herberstein - one of the three local villas that declared themselves the successors of the old Šalek, Eggenstein (Gorica) and Velenje (Villa Neuwollan/Harnoncour/Adamovich/Pouilly/Bianca) castles.

The typical outline of the castle ruin was the basis for several logos, which proves the positive connotation of the ruin as an anchor element of local identity.



The image of Šalek Castle as the basis of the logos of the Šalek Tourist Association, the Velenje Tourist Association and the Šalek Fire Brigade.

Scientific/research significance

The untouched area of the ruins is a valuable archaeological site. The ruin itself is one of the oldest buildings in the area and provides evidence of old construction techniques and materials.

Heritage significance

Heritage proclamation/legal protection

In the Registry of Immovable Cultural Heritage of the Republic of Slovenia, the ruin of Šalek Castle is listed as a monument of local significance under number 4329. It is considered a permanent ruin.

REPUBLICA SLOVENIJA
MINISTRSTVO ZA KULTURO

Register nepremične kulturne dediščine

iskanje seznam pravilnik okoli ešd:

OPIS ENOTE NEPREMIČNE KULTURNE DEDIŠČINE©

IDENTIFIKACIJA ENOTE DEDIŠČINE

Evidenčna številka enote:	4329
Ime enote:	Velenje - Grad Šalek

OPIS ENOTE DEDIŠČINE

Zvrst dediščine:	stavbe
Tip enote:	profana stavbna dediščina
Obseg enote:	objekt
Tipološka gesla enote:	grad, ruševina

Tekstualni opis enote:
Od gradu je ohranjen le stolp, v tlorisu trikotne oblike in visok pet etaž. V stenah ohranjene okenske in vratne odprtine ter način gradnje postavljajo nastanek stavbe v 12. stol..

Datacija enote:
12. stol., zadnja četrtna 13. stol., 1278, druga polovica 17. stol., tretja četrtna 18. stol., 1770

Avtor(ji):

Varstvene usmeritve:
stavbe

LOKACIJA ENOTE DEDIŠČINE

Naselje:	VELENJE
Občina:	VELENJE

Lokacija:
Grad stoji na strmem, prepadnem griču na vzhodni strani zaselka Šalek.

PRISTOJNOSTI

Območna enota:	ZVKD Celje
----------------	------------

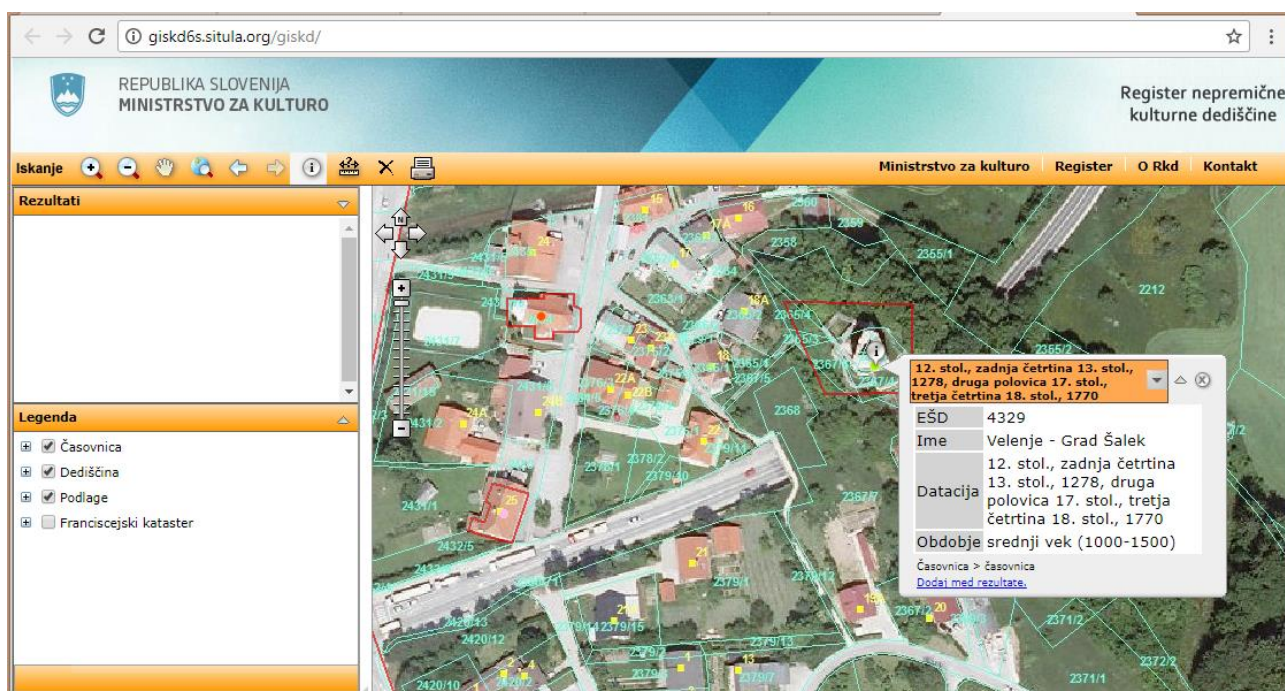
RAZGLASITEV

Vrsta spomenika	spomenik lokalnega pomena
Akt razglasitve:	Odlok o razglasitvi kulturnih in zgodovinskih spomenikov na območju občine Velenje, Uradni vestnik Občine Velenje, št. 10/83-75, 5/84-6
Vrsta razglasitve:	stalna razglasitev do preklica
Veljavnost razglasitve:	28.10.1983 -

©Register kulturne dediščine

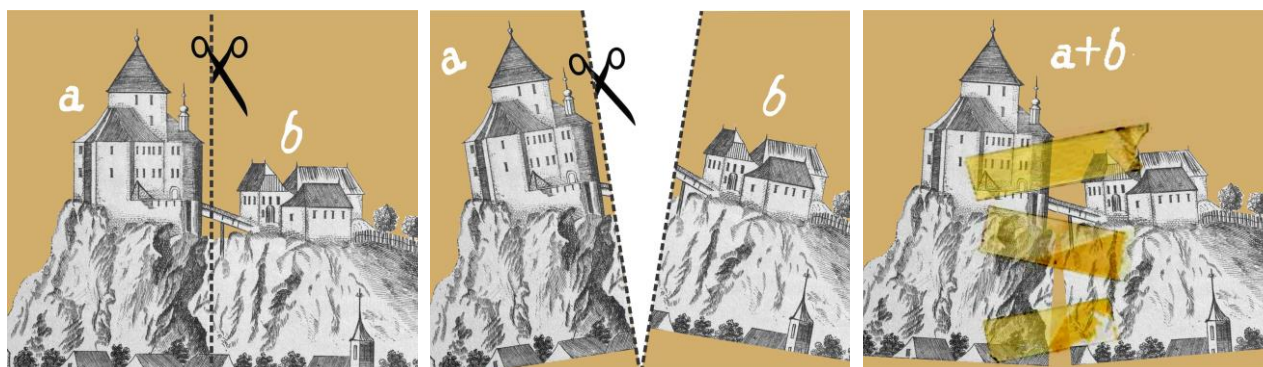
Description of Šalek Castle in the textual part of the Registry of Immovable Cultural Heritage of the Republic of Slovenia.³⁵³

³⁵³ <http://rkd.situla.org/>, 21/10/2017.



Description of Šalek Castle in the graphic part of the Registry of Immovable Cultural Heritage of the Republic of Slovenia.³⁵⁴

The official name of the monument is “Grad Velenje - Šalek”. The word “ruins”³⁵⁵ is added to the logo.



For early explorers, the ruins of the castle clearly consisted of two parts: the castle and the auxiliary buildings.

With legal protection in the 1980s and the research and renewal of the castle ruins in the 1990s only half of the original structure was maintained.

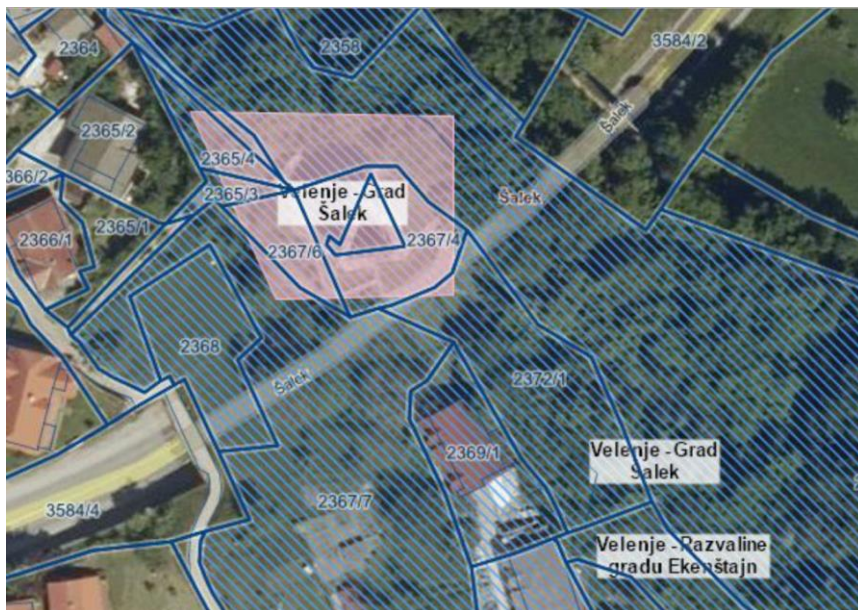
In the long run, it is necessary to re-establish the castle ruins as a whole: to “glue together” the castle, auxiliary buildings, the original access route, etc., in order to present a credible presentation of the layout of the buildings on the castle hill.

Following the rule of integrity, the entire ruin must be unveiled and then protected and managed.

³⁵⁴ <http://giskd6s.situla.org/giskd/>, 23/10/2017.

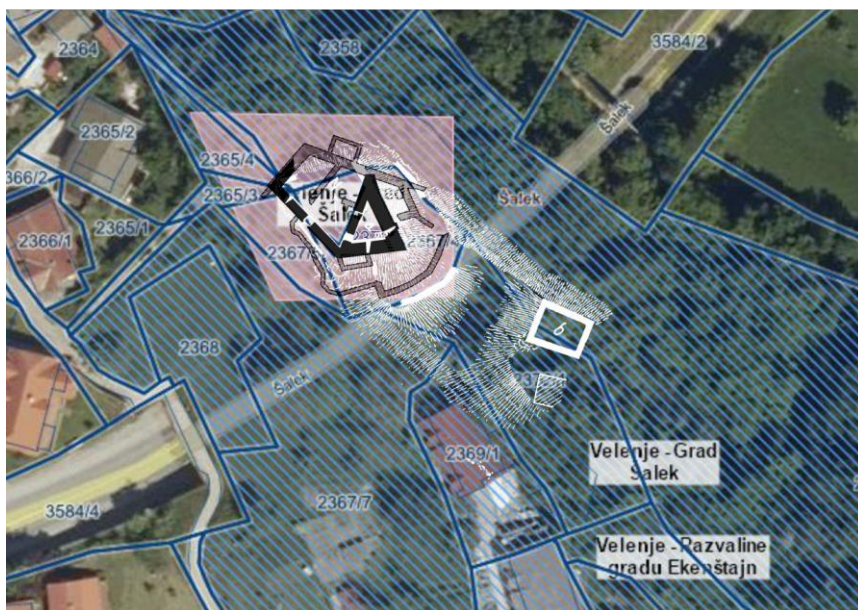
³⁵⁵ Johnston, Chris, Ian Travers, Jessie Briggs: Ruins, A guide to conservation and management, Commonwealth of Australia 2013, p. 17. <http://www.environment.gov.au/system/files/resources/e4e0fb1f-2553-4a3c-b454-2f7d630cdd6a/files/ruins.pdf>, 18/10/2017.

Protected area in spatial acts



Verification of the overlapping of the protected area of monuments and the actual term of hostilities of the ruins of Castle Šalek:

- Shrafry: influential area of cultural monuments (ruins of Šalek Castle)
- pink: a cultural monument itself.³⁵⁶



Overlap display of protected area and floor plans of ruins: many ruins actually fall from the central protected area.

It is essential that the protected areas of the monument are adapted to encompass the entire area of the ruins, perhaps even include a corridor of authentic castle access. Prior to that, of course, the entire scope of castle and auxiliary structures must be determined with field surveys and perhaps even with archaeological excavations.

³⁵⁶Official database of spatial data of the Municipality of Velenje, <https://www.geoprostor.net/piso/ewmap.asp?obcina=VELENJE>, 20/10/2017

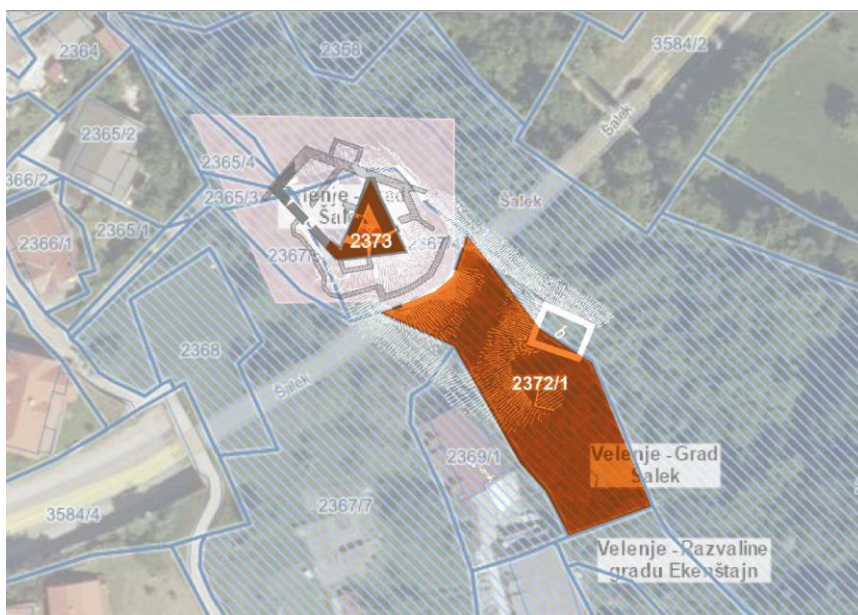


Areas of important views of the castle ruins

It is also important to expand the influential area of the ruin to allow management of the castle views at least from the main traffic routes.

Advertising in this area must be strictly limited or even prohibited.

Protected area in land register



Display of protected plots

In the land registry, only two plots are officially marked as a protected area of ruins.

Registration of the Šalek Castle ruins protection must be carried out on all relevant plots.

Podrobni podatki o izvedenih pravicah in zaznambah:

ID pravice / zaznambe	11329698
čas začetka učinkovanja	01.01.1849 00:00:00
vrsta pravice / zaznambe	612 - zaznamba - urejanje prostora
glavna nepremičnina:	katastrska občina 964 VELENJE parcela 2372/1 (ID 1039662)
podatki o vsebini pravice / zaznambe	
dodatni opis:	
Vloženo 04. 02. 1985, Dn 177/85.	
Po odloku o razglasitvi kulturnih in zgodovinskih spomenikov v občini Velenje se zaznamuje, da je ruševina gradu na parc. št. 2372/1 kulturni oziroma zgodovinski spomenik.	
zveza - ID osnovnega položaja:	
1638961	
pravice / zaznambe pri izvedeni pravici / zaznambi:	
Pri izvedeni pravici / zaznambi ni vpisana nobena pravica ali pravno dejstvo	

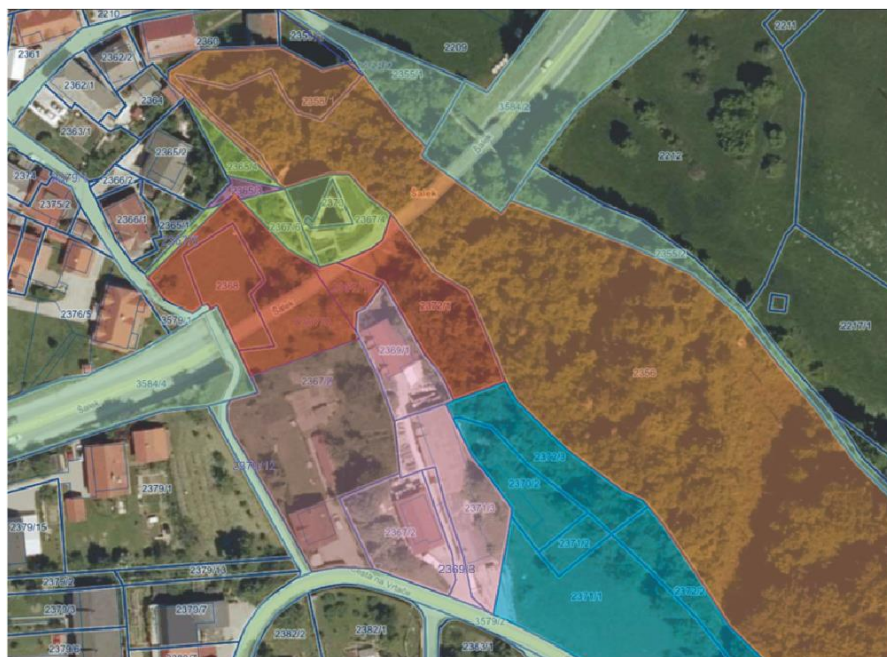
Extract from the land register for plot 2372/1: "According to the decree on the proclamation of cultural and historical monuments in the municipality of Velenje, it is noted that the ruin of the castle on the plot no. 2372/1 is a cultural or historical monument."

Ownership of the area



Comparison of land distribution according to the Franciscan cadastre (approximately 1825)³⁵⁷ and today (PISO basis for the Municipality of Velenje)³⁵⁸

The original plot division followed the natural spatial divisions/boundaries/elements: one plot covered the core of the castle, the buildings in front of the castle had their own plots, the paths were logically divided.



- MESTNA OBČINA VELENJE, TITOV TRG 1, 3320 VELENJE
- javno dobro
- Nevenka Lempl,
Nada Verdev,
Darinka Lempl Pahor,
- Miran Jurko,
- Robert Jurko,
- Marjana Verdev,
- Valentin Podpečan.
- Germana Marš,

Modern parcellation/ownership is chaotic: the area of the ruins is fragmented among many plots/owners, the plot boundaries do not follow the natural spatial divisions. The area of the ruins is owned by the Municipality of Velenje, the wider area is owned by various private owners, which makes it difficult to manage the ruins.

It would be very much desired for the municipality to buy most of the wider area of the ruins in the long run, which would facilitate quality management of the ruins.

³⁵⁷Franciscan cadastre: Gemeinde Schallegg sammt Enclave Weutsch in InnerOesterreich Zillier Kreis, Bezirk Woellan, 1825.

Recorded by surveyor Franz Nitsch, drawn by surveyor Wenzel Lagner. Surveying and Mapping Authority of Velenje and Archives of the Republic of Slovenia. SI AS 177/C/F/C400/g/A01S list A01S, A02S, 22/10/2017.

³⁵⁸<https://www.geoprostor.net/piso/ewmap.asp?obcina=VELENJE>, 22/10/2017.

k.o.	parc. št.	lastnik	vpis razglasitve	potreben vpis
Velenje	2373	MESTNA OBČINA VELENJE	da	
	2367/4	-II-	ne	da
	2367/6	-II-	ne	da
	2365/4	-II-	ne	da
	2367/5	-II-	ne	
	2379/12	-II-	ne	
	2355/1	javno dobro	ne	
	3584/2	-II-	ne	
	2355/2	-II-	ne	
	3579/1	-II-	ne	
	3584/4	-II-	ne	
	3579/2	-II-	ne	
	2365/3	Germana Marš	ne	da
	2356	Nevenka Lempl Nada Verdev Darinka Lempl Pahor	ne	da
	2358/1	-II-	ne	da
	2358/2	-II-	ne	
	2372/1	Miran Jurko	da	
	2367/9	-II-	ne	?
	2367/10	-II-	ne	?
	2368	-II-	ne	
	2367/8	Robert Jurko	ne	
	2369/1	Valentin Podpečan	ne	?
	2371/3	-II-	ne	
	2367/2	-II-	ne	
	2372/3	Marjana Verdev	ne	
	2370/2	-II-	ne	
	2371/2	-II-	ne	
	2371/1	-II-	ne	
	2372/2	-II-	ne	

Owners of the wider Šalek Castle ruins area in the spring of 2018

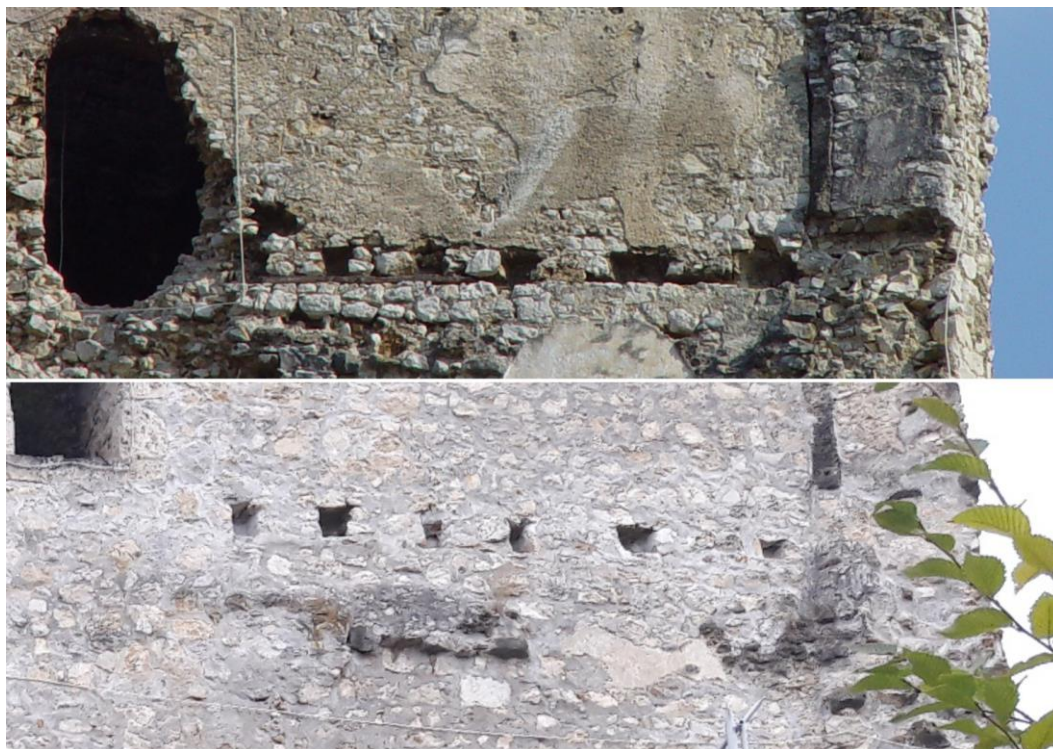
Condition assessment

Structural reinforcement

Over the years, weather influences and human activity (the castle served as a quarry of building material for nearby buildings) have damaged the castle and turned it into a ruin. The physical and mechanical properties of the walls have changed and their load-bearing capacity has decreased. The ruin was stabilised in 1990/91, especially the foundations of the north corner of the tower. Defence and tower walls were partially extended, and a crown of reinforced concrete was made on top of the tower to prevent water from penetrating the walls. The cavities on the walls have been repaired, as well as some door arches/frames.

External wall surface protection

General guidelines for the preservation of permanent ruins emphasise the preservation of the original building tissue. Due to the inaccurate execution of some of the works carried out during the general renovation of the castle in the 1990s, some building details have been lost, including the typical way of placing the beams in the walls where they were lined with a wooden board. Reconstruction of the original implementation is desired.



Šalek Castle – the same wall detail before and after the renovation (photo by Rok Poles)

Large parts of the original plaster were lost/peeled off.

The contact between the old and new parts of the walls was not marked.

Loose stones were fixed during the restoration of the walls, the depressions and gaps in the walls were repaired, and the castle was left in a state of permanent ruin.

Parts of demolished defensive walls have been rebuilt. A concrete crown was added on the top of the tower. Currently, the unprotected walls are gradually inhabited by perennial and annual vegetation, causing the stones to loosen. The same problem is present on the castle hill/rock, where falling rocks are a potential threat to visitors and locals living in the immediate vicinity = below the castle.

Rainwater drainage

Two excerpts of the drainage through the walls are visible. It would make sense to run the water farther away from the walls.

Protection of architectural details

There are two types of historical architectural details at Šalek Castle: stone details and plaster.

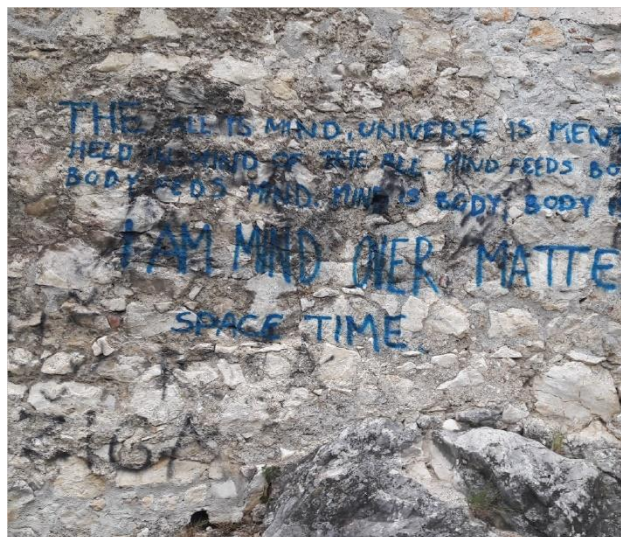
Plaster: The inner and outer walls of the triangle tower still have the original plaster. The plaster on the lower parts of the building is covered with historical and modern graffiti. No special efforts were made to preserve the original plaster. General plaster condition is poor.

Stone details: Romanesque and Gothic stone window and door frames and sewn corners have been preserved.

According to Gadolla, at least two stone portals and 11 stone steps were transferred from Šalek to Turn.³⁵⁹



Aerial view of the top of the tower with a reinforced concrete crown: there may already be some cracks in the left corner – it is mandatory to constantly monitor the ruins.³⁶⁰



Vandalism in the castle: large graffiti on the castle walls. Despite the fence, the lower parts of the castle walls are constantly threatened by vandalism. Video surveillance is recommended.

³⁵⁹ Despite efforts to identify these architectural elements, I could only find the inscription on one of the steps.

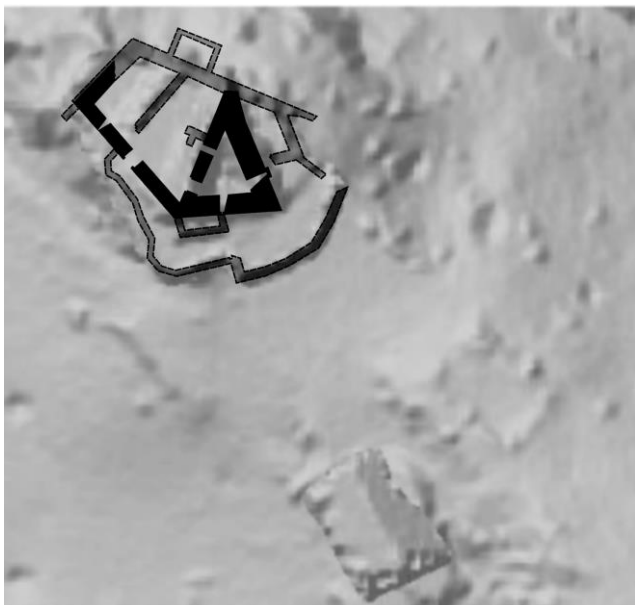
³⁶⁰ Drone camera, Ivan Rožej, <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=tsqOXMdus-M>, 22/10/2017.

Problem identification

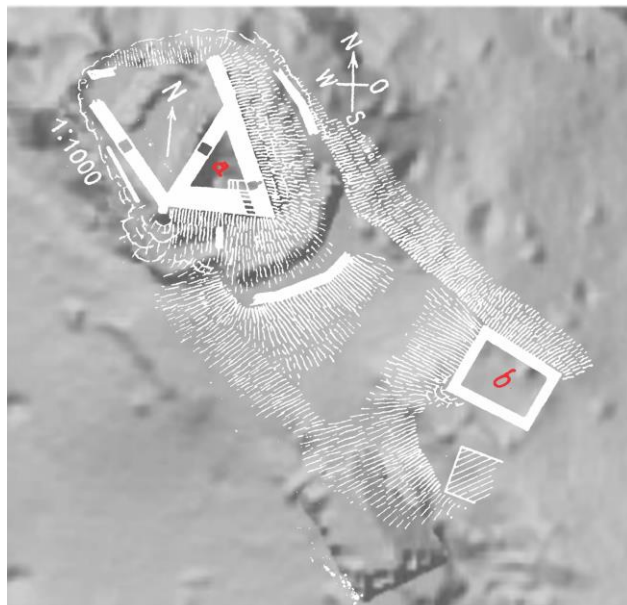
Archaeological research in the areas of potential archaeological finds – the scope and methodology of archaeological research is determined in the conservation plan in cooperation with ZVKDS OE Celje.

Excavation is required:

- to determine the exact volume of ruins,
- to assess their condition; and
- to answer certain questions, such as whether there is really a fountain on the platform below the castle, how the castle hill was used in prehistoric times, etc.



Lidar images allow checking the accuracy of architectural images of the ruins: the floor plan, which was created during the last reconstruction of the ruins, is well coordinated with Lidar data.



The older floor plans are less consistent with the Lidar images, but illustrate the initial perception of the ruins as a two-part whole: the castle is marked with "a", the auxiliary buildings are marked with a "b". This integrity of the ruins is currently lost and needs to be reestablished.

Urgent renovation and development

Interventions in the tissue of the ruin can be carried out in three different criteria:

- detail criteria,
- building criteria (architecture),
- landscape criteria.

Possible changes on level of building details

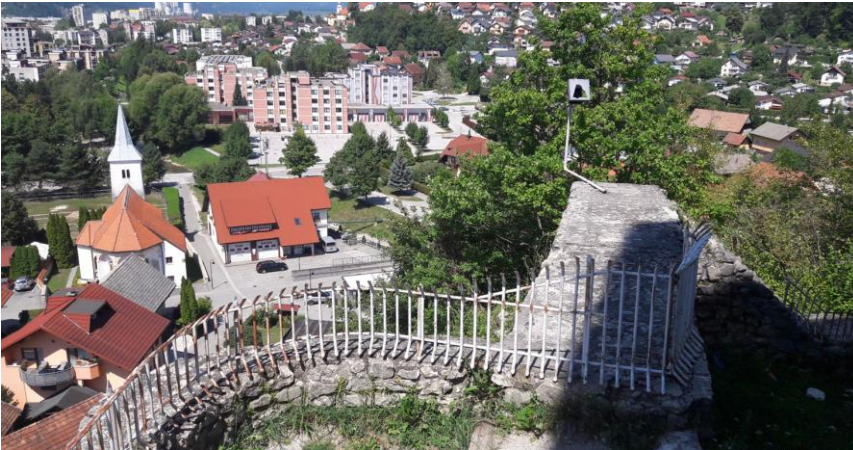
In general: current aggressive fences are replaced, usable areas for sitting, viewing, events are created ... These interventions do not require a building permit, but the consent of the Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage of Slovenia, Celje Regional Unit, is required.



Inner courtyard between two towers in 2017. The surface is not used. Despite the fence, it is possible to walk along the outer edge of the walls.



Possibility of a new yard arrangement: the existing fence on the inner edge of the wall is removed, a new fence is installed on the outer edge, the top of the wall is used as a wooden bench. By fortifying the surface with a sand backfill, a smaller space for events could be created. Presentation of R.P.



Walls in front of the entrance to the courtyard and the west wall of the residential tower, 2017. Photo by R.P.



By moving the fence to a new position, part of the wall would become a viewing corridor. Greater security would also gain more space appeal. Presentation of R.P.



South outer defensive wall, where the bridge to the castle once stood, 2017. Photo by R.P.



With the new fence, it would be possible to show the position of the former bridge, thus illustrating the original access to the castle. Presentation of R.P.



Notice (only in Slovene): To access the Šalek manor ruins, you will need a key, which you can pick up at the Velenje Tourist Information Centre, in Villa Bianca, at Stari trg 3. Contact phone: 03 896 18 60, e-mail ...



A plate sample on the ruins of a castle abroad, highlighting possible dangers

The current system of entry to the castle must change.



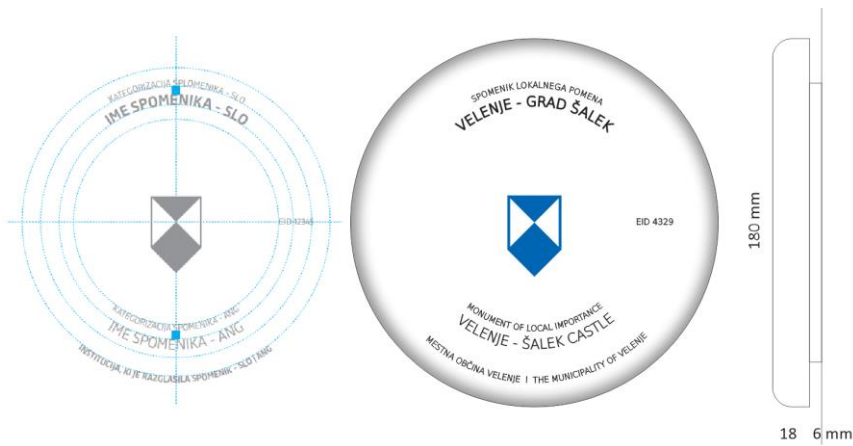
The castle gates and the way the ruins are usually accessible without a key.



The castle ruins must be properly marked as a cultural monument

The Rules on the marking of immovable cultural monuments (UL RS 57/2011) require that each monument be marked in accordance with the prescribed rules. The plaque must be round, metallic, white and contain basic information in Slovene (optionally also in English), such as: name/address of the monument, identification number from the cultural heritage registry, type of monument, name of the municipality declaring the monument. A mandatory element of the board is also a sign of the Hague Convention. Detailed instructions are on the website of the Ministry of Culture of the Republic of Slovenia.³⁶¹ The suitability of the location for the board must be confirmed by the conservator of the Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage of Slovenia. The board should be installed at least 2.5 metres above the ground.

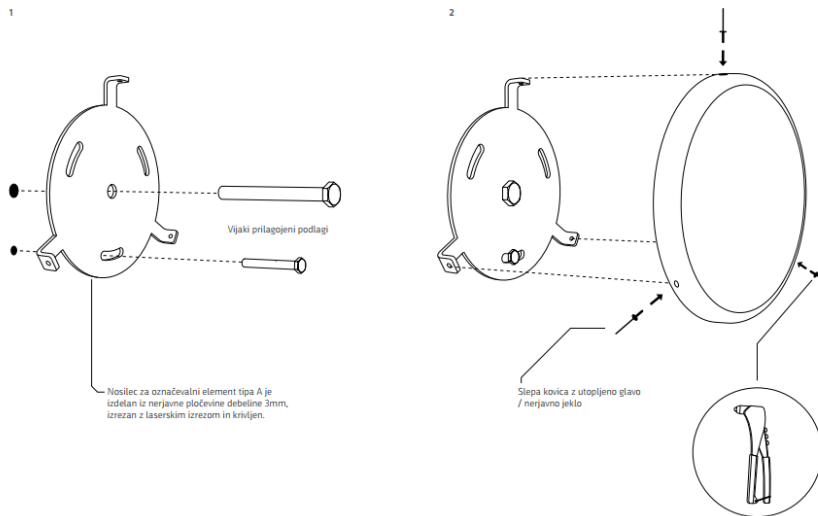
³⁶¹ http://www.mizs.gov.si/fileadmin/mizs.gov.si/pageuploads/zakonodaja/Veljavni/kultura/Prirocnik_oznacevanje_2382011.pdf, 21/10/2017.



Marking board for Šalek Castle, designed in accordance with the instructions of the Ministry of Culture. The prescribed font "Republica sans" cannot be obtained.

REPUBLIKA SLOVENIJA | MINISTRSTVO ZA KULTURO
PRIROČNIK ZA OZNAČEVANJE NEPREMIČNIH KULTURNIH SPOMENIKOV

1.3 MONTAŽA
1.3.1 POSTOPEK MONTAŽE ZA OZNAČEVALNI
ELEMENT A1



Instructions for installing the board from the manual with instructions on the website of the Ministry of Culture.



Example of an alternative labelling implementation.



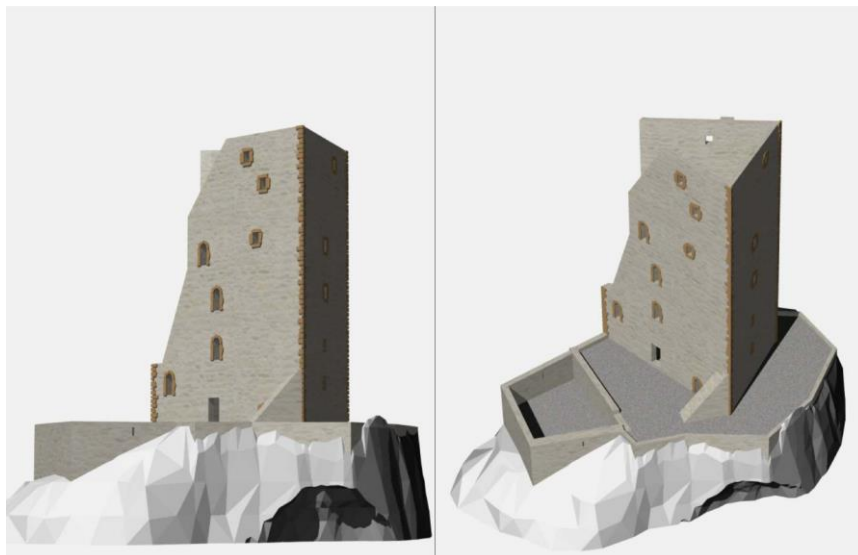
Example of explanatory boards for the monument. Explanatory boards must be evenly distributed throughout the space so that visitors can move across the entire surface of the monument.



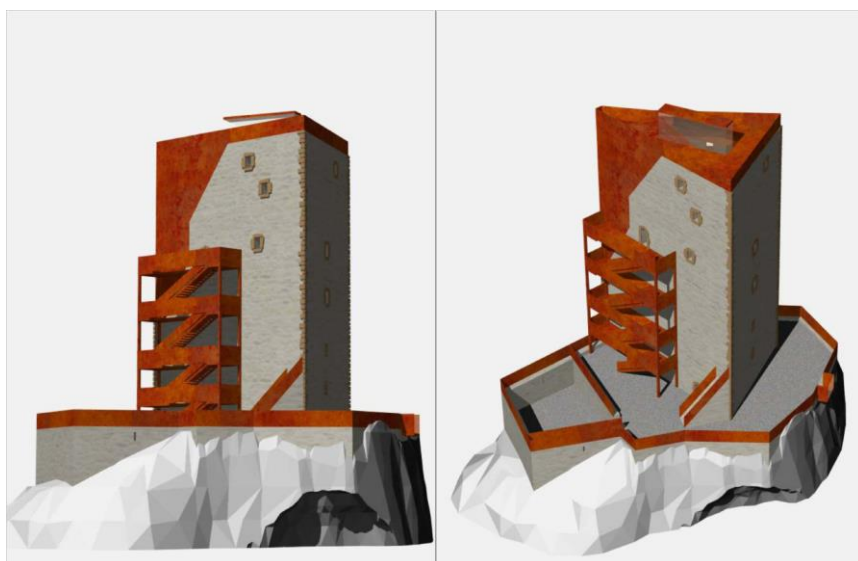
To better understand the current state of the ruins and the original design of the castle, a three-dimensional model in durable material (bronze) could be set up, equipped with an explanation of individual parts (defensive walls, defensive tower, residential tower, inner courtyard with external communication...).

Reconstruction of the castle ruins at the building level (architectural reconstruction)

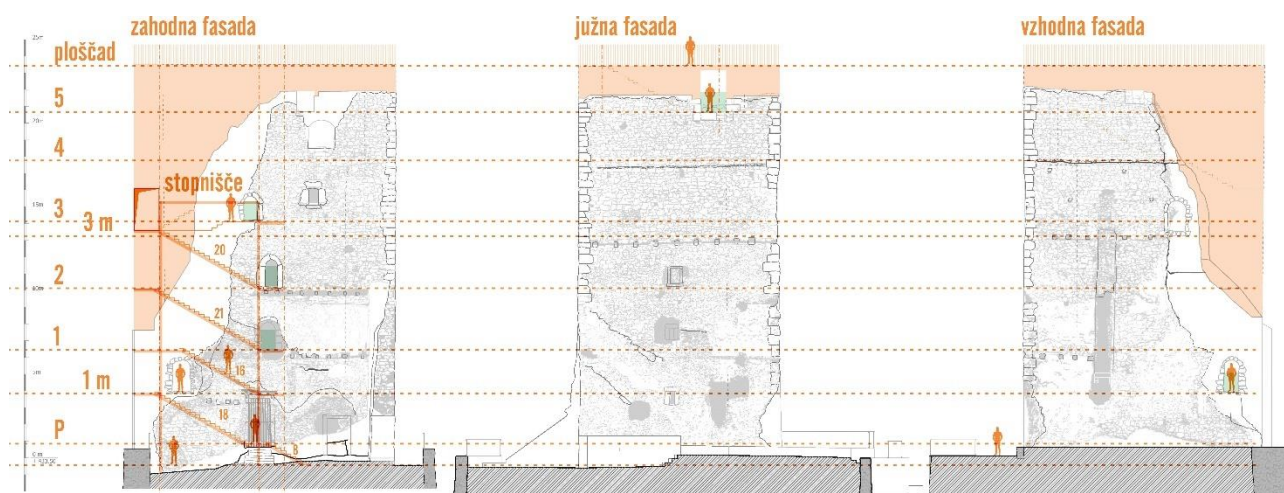
The main objective of this phase is to establish the presence of the second castle tower and to provide vertical communication in the preserved tower and reconstruct it into a viewpoint and create a place for exhibitions and small events in its interior.



The current state of the Šalek Castle ruins, 3D computer model. All the drawings are the work of the author.



A possible reconstruction of the ruins using weathering steel. In their original position, vertical communications are outside the defensive tower and significantly change the appearance of current ruins. The upper floor is used as an observation platform.

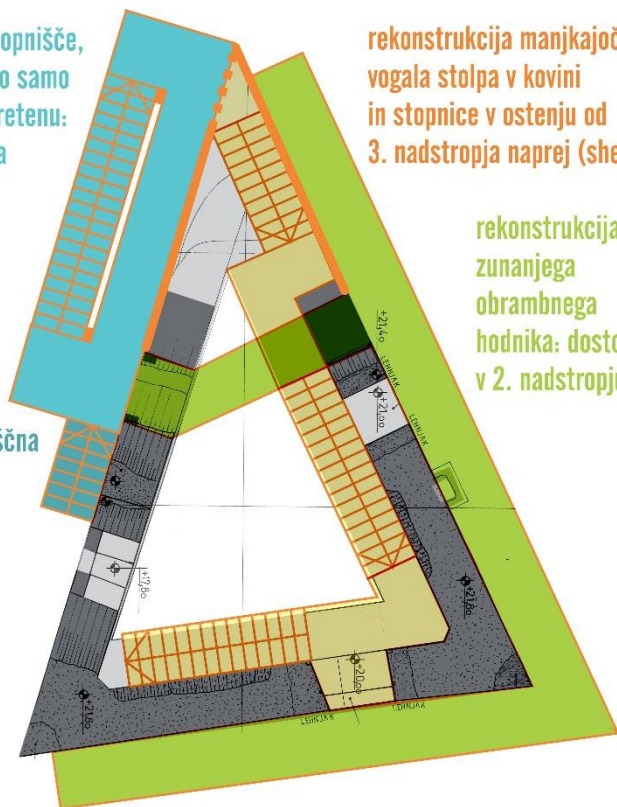


ново zunanje stopnišče,
statično podprto samo
na osrednjem vretenu:
do 3. nadstropja

rekonstrukcija manjkajočega
vogala stolpa v kovini
in stopnice v ostenju od
3. nadstropja naprej (shematsko)

rekonstrukcija
zunanjega
obrambnega
hodnika: dostop
v 2. nadstropju

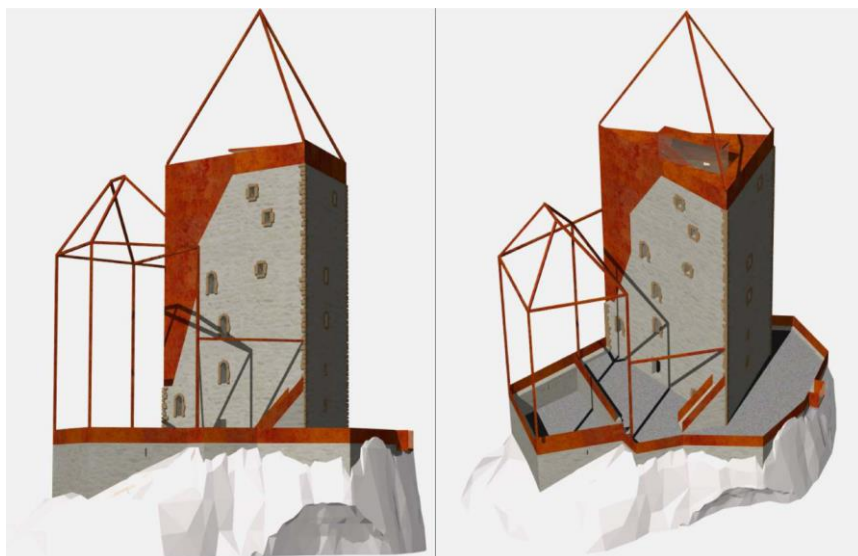
dodatna stopniščna
rama v pritličju



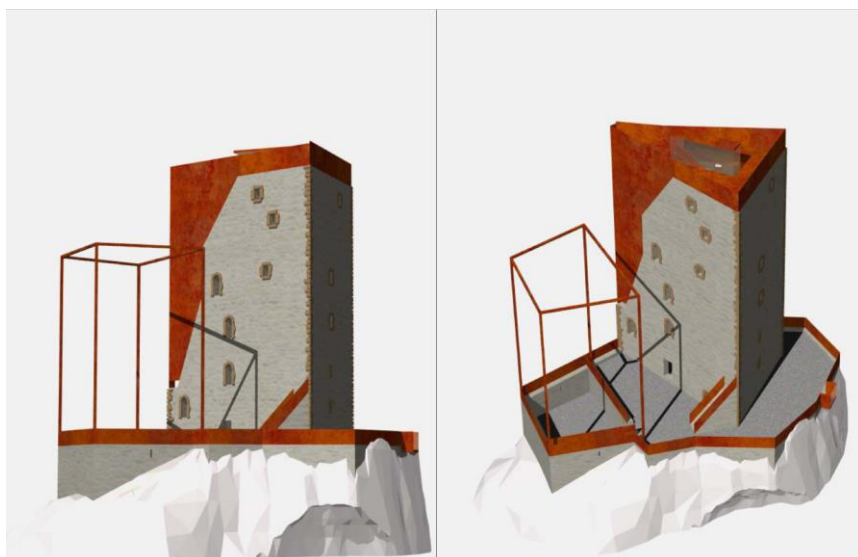
The possibility of installing the stairs: up to the third floor through the external staircase (modification of the initial external staircase), then in the tower in the area of a narrowed top wall – in this way the interior space of the three-sided tower would only see small changes (i.e. best preserved).



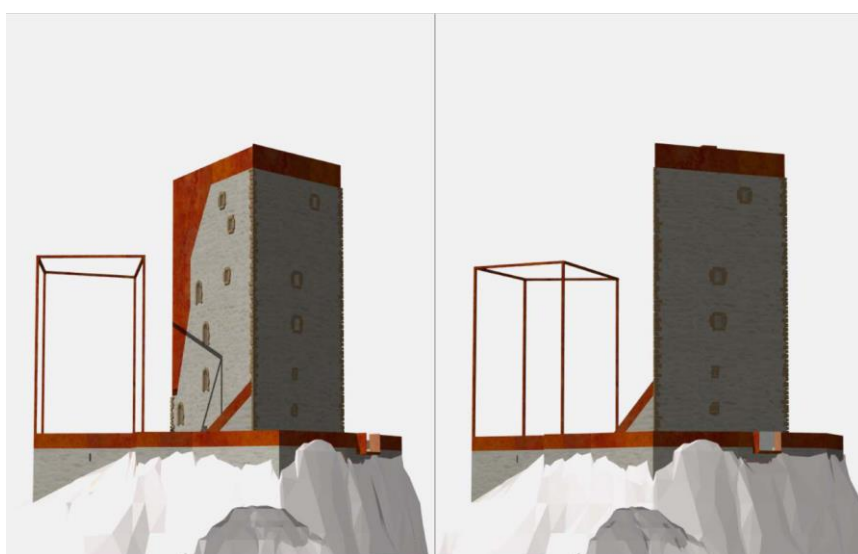
If the stairs were entirely relocated to the interior of the tower, the current characteristic appearance of the ruins would be preserved, but the usable interior space would actually disappear.



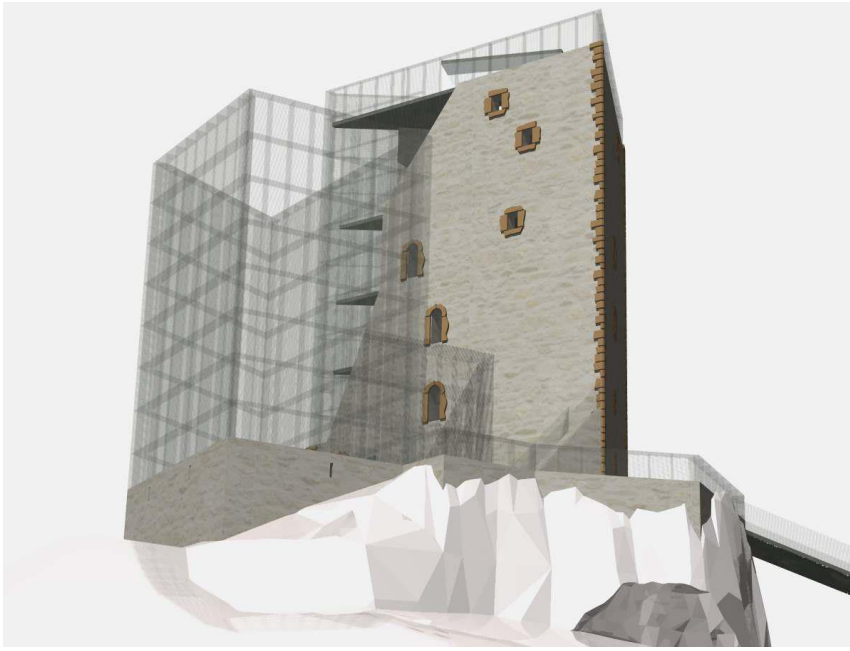
Possible reconstructions of the Šalek Castle ruins: by using weathering steel plates, the stereometric volume of the defensive tower is reconstructed, while the outlines of the second tower (palatium) and rooftops of both towers would be made of weathering steel profiles, i.e. only a linear outline of the geometry of the building would be created. The outline of rooftops is a step outside visually acceptable interventions, which is why rooftops were omitted in the next version of the rooftop line.



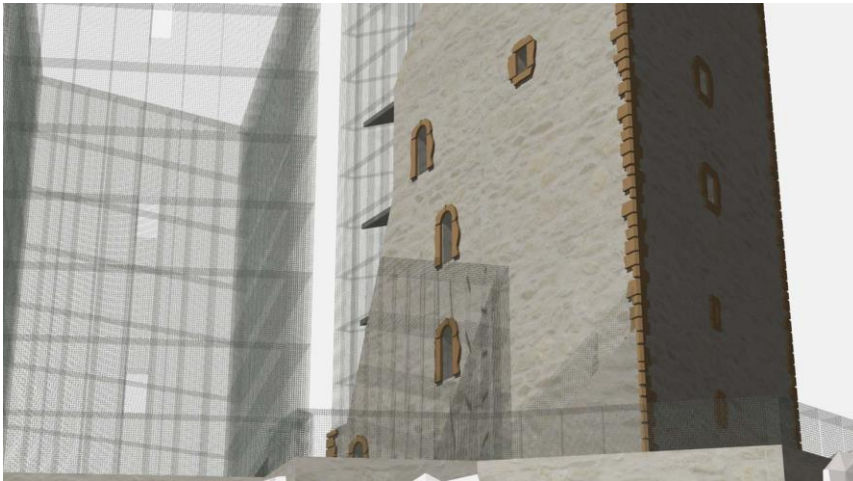
The reconstruction as stated above but without any roof lines; only the impression of once built volumes is recreated. The impression of the whole is far more calm and discreet.



The same model from a lower angle.



Reconstruction of the towers with a wire mesh/gabions/inox wire mesh. A structure of less colour intensity would be created (compared to the use of orange-brown weathering steel), while the perception of the volume of the second tower would be enhanced by using wire walls and not only lined corners as it is the case in weathering steel reconstruction. Windows could also be outlined to create an impression of former floors.

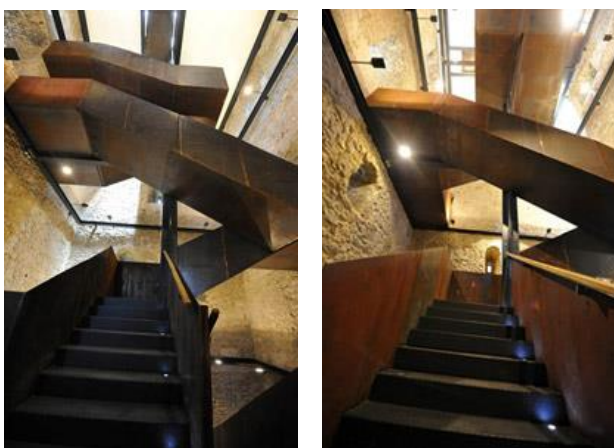


Reconstruction detail by using wire mesh.

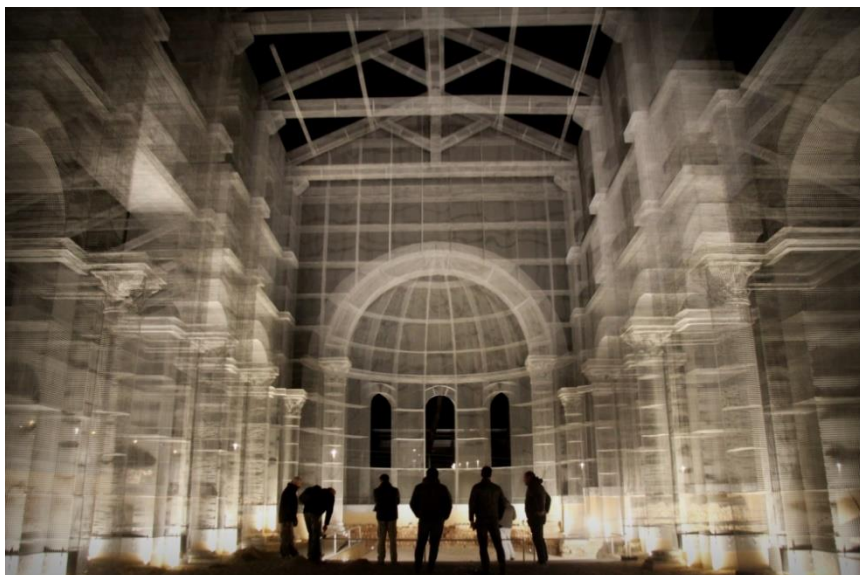


Examples of interventions from abroad using weathering steel and wire mesh.

Example of the use of weathering steel in castle ruins. It is important that structural additions are clearly identifiable/separated from authentic structures and designed in a minimalist and non-aggressive way.³⁶²



Internal staircase made of weathering steel in Friedrich's Tower of Celje Castle.³⁶³



Reconstruction of the basilica in the town of Siponto, Italy, by using galvanised wire mesh, artist Edoardo Tresoldi, 2016³⁶⁴

The use of the wire mesh creates a special visual effect of a non-material floating illusion – similar to the hologram reconstruction and thus completely different as the reconstruction with weathering steel plates, which give a feeling of finality and heaviness.

³⁶²Centre for visitors of the Pombal Castle, Portugal, Comoco Arquitectos, <https://www.yatzer.com/pombal-castle-visitor-centre-comoco/slideshow/8>, 19/11/2017.

³⁶³<https://moc.celje.si/zakljuceni-projekti/8-staticne-strani/1215-z-obnovo-friderikovega-stolpa-postaja-stari-grad-celje-se-bolj-atraktivna-turisticna-tocka>, 21/10/2017. Photo: Gregor Katič, design Arch design d.o.o. Ljubljana.

³⁶⁴http://www.corriere.it/cronache/16_marzo_12/siponto-rete-metallica-ricostruita-basilica-cb0e8620-e846-11e5-9492-dcf601b6eea6.shtml?refresh_ce-cp, 22/10/2017.

Landscape level castle ruin reconstruction

These interventions would allow the integrity of the space as part of the historical landscape to be reconstructed, provide visitors an authentic access to the castle, enable the access by wheelchair, car, etc. The level of interpretation/narrative aspect of the location is very high, creating a perfect mental image about how the place worked and looked. The level of tourist infrastructure is very high (toilets, benches, showrooms, museum store, guided tours, etc.).

The cost for achieving this situation is high: additional land would have to be bought, further research would have to be conducted and planning/designing, construction works would be quite extensive.

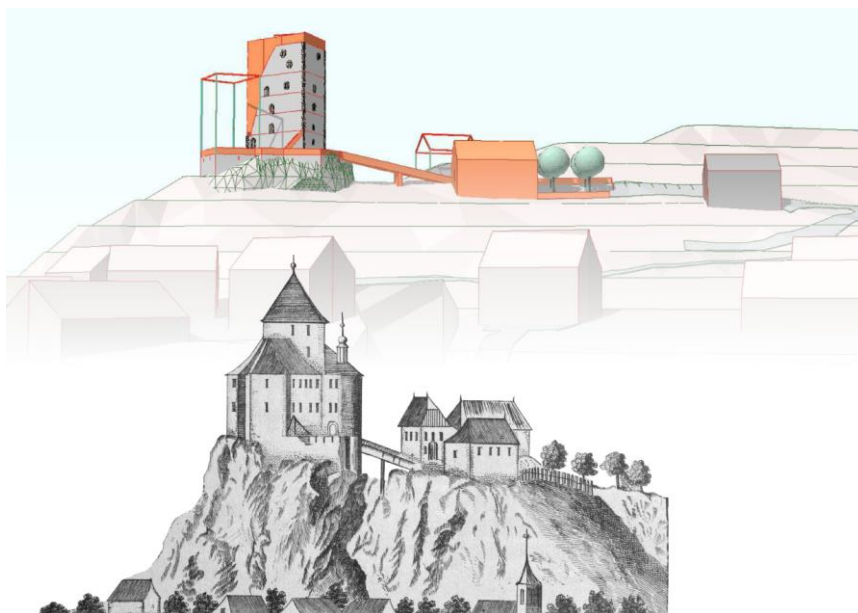
Two different ways of design are proposed: using weathering steel and wire mesh.



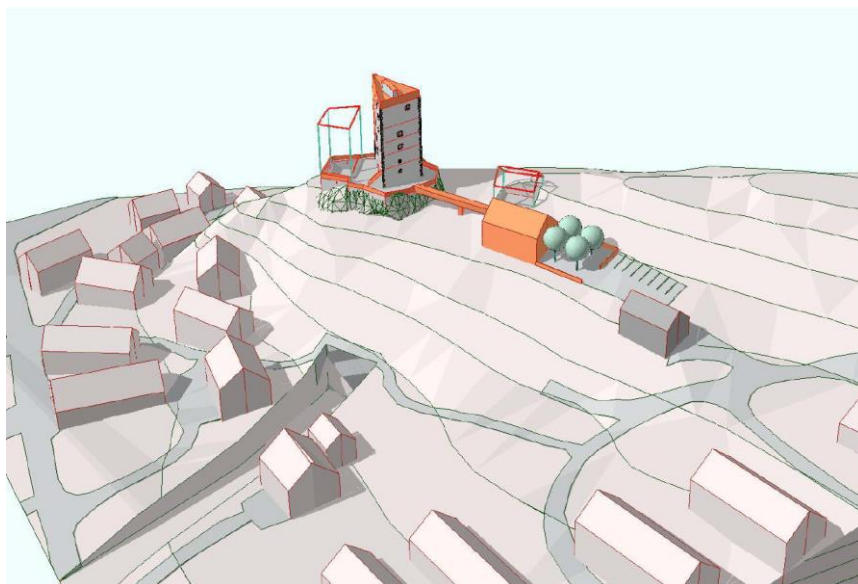
The computer 3D model is expanded, wider landscape is created including castle hill, Šalek settlement, access routes/roads and road tunnel.



Possibility of long-term landscape reconstruction of the Šalek Castle area: If the municipality bought privately owned plots (stonemasonry), it would be possible to restore the elements of historical medieval landscape, depicted in the Vischer's graphics of the Šalek Castle: the authentic path, orchard, enclosed garden, ancillary buildings in front of the castle and the bridge.



Comparison of the proposed landscape reconstruction and depiction of the castle from 1681: all basic/essential elements of former/historical landscape are re-established.



3D top view of the proposed landscape reconstruction:
by removing modern industrial building of the stonemasonry a space would be created for a few parking spaces in front of the castle garden/orchard. The authentic access route to the castle would be reconstructed, thus enabling access by car to the immediate vicinity of the castle and access to the ruins by wheelchair (with an assistant) – across the reconstructed bridge.

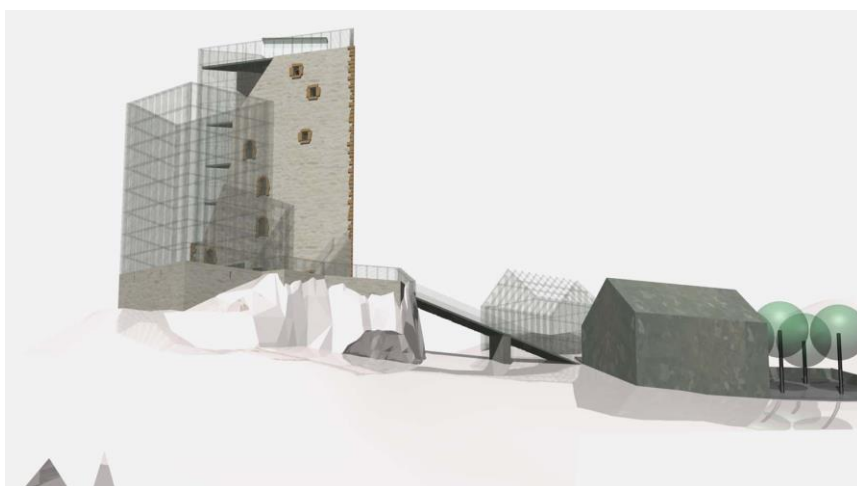


The view from another angle shows how short a direct reconstructed linear access to the castle would be. The current wood-paved access route across the slope below the castle would have to be abandoned since it is not authentic and creates a false mental image in the visitor. Along the Cesta na vrtače road, a pavement should be built for safe access.



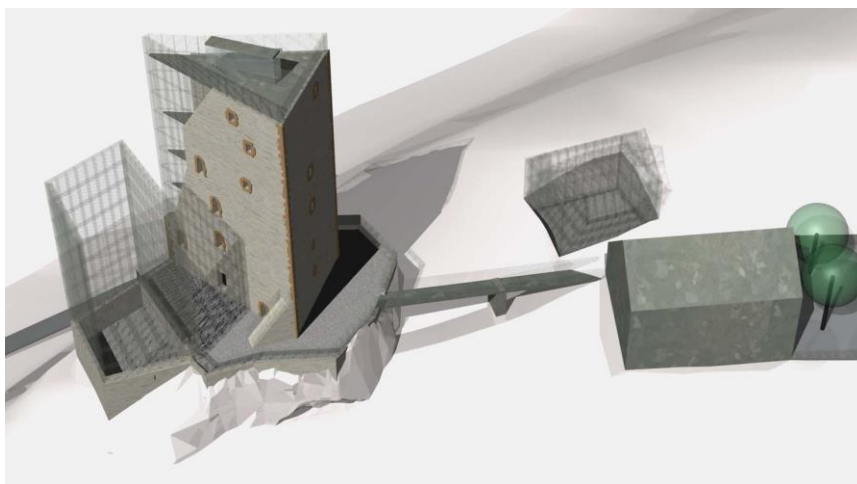
The same landscape reconstruction, made by using wire mesh/gabions/galvanised steel plates.

The use of wire mesh/galvanised steel plates would create less colour and more dematerialised effect of the intervention.



Reconstruction of Šalek Castle with a wire mesh, a view from the road in front of the tunnel.

The current residential building could be redesigned into a small information centre with museum shop, exhibition space for presenting archaeological findings from the castle and its surroundings, toilets, room for visitors/rest, snack, etc. In this way, a basis would be created for tourist infrastructure, which is insufficient at the location today.



Reconstruction of Šalek Castle with a wire mesh, top view.

The destroyed ancillary building could be reconstructed in terms of its volume by using a wire mesh, while the existing residential building at the location of the former house of the castle manager ("Šafar") could be covered with galvanised steel plates to reduce it to a bare stereometric body without prominent architectural features.



A new garden in the medieval style. Castelnaud la Chappelle, France ³⁶⁵

As part of the reconstruction of the landscape a former garden³⁶⁶ and traditional orchard/tree avenue could/should be reconstructed. The old arrangement was almost certainly destroyed by modern buildings, nevertheless a historical survey should be done with an analysis of the medieval garden/landscape arrangements, as well as a precise physical inspection of the location itself, geophysical research, and perhaps even an archaeological research/evaluation/study.

The design of the garden would be based on the Vischer's graphics depicting a wooden fence as a border of the garden at the top of the slope and trees, while the access route is shown in old cadastral maps. Medieval gardens were used for food production rather than ornamental flower gardens, whereby apple, pear, plum or walnut trees would be most suitable.

³⁶⁵ <http://www.medieval-recipes.com/medieval-garden/>, 19/11/2017.

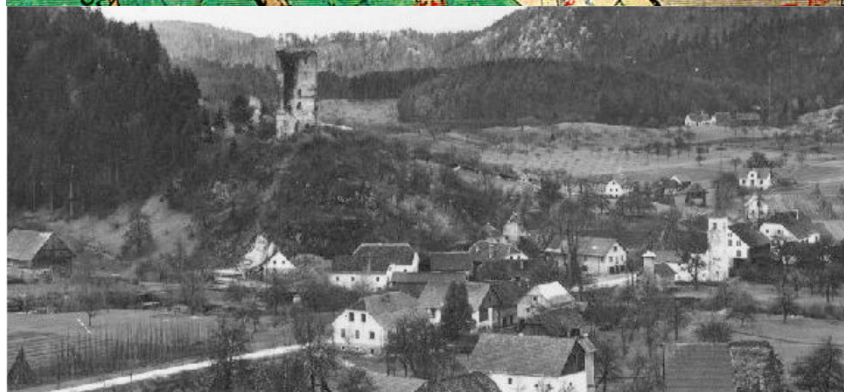
³⁶⁶ <http://www.buildingconservation.com/articles/garden-archaeology/garden-archaeology.htm>,
<http://www.buildingconservation.com/articles/traditional-orchards/traditional-orchards.htm>, 11/11/2017.

Forest edge management/forest area

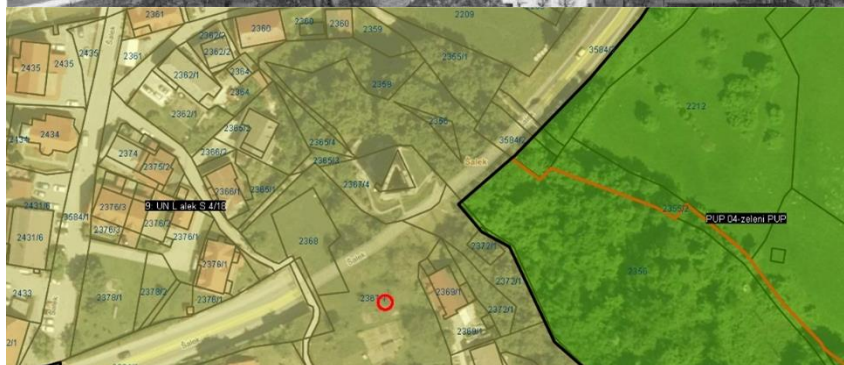
Initially, the moat and slopes under the castle were covered only by meadow plants. After the castle ceased to be used for defensive purposes and became a ruin, trees started to grow on the slopes. It should be considered to cut down trees on the castle hill; almost all trees could be removed. As a result, the completely naked slope would enable better views of the ruins and thus increase its role as a landscape highlight. Currently the dry moat and slopes are covered with bushes and small trees on the west and north side, large trees on the northeast side and several fruit trees on the south side. Further maintenance work must be carried out.



The old cadastre (1925) shows that the edge of the forest reaches the area of ancillary buildings in front of the castle.³⁶⁷



The same spatial information is also evident from the photos from the time before World War II, which show the part of the castle hill completely without vegetation. Due to the forest spreading directly to the castle, the ruin is becoming less visually prominent, and thus the role of the castle as a dominant element in the landscape is deteriorating.³⁶⁸



The border between two spatial acts - Land-Use Plan of the Šalek Settlement (left) and the "Green Spatial Arrangement Conditions" act (right) roughly corresponds to the old forest line as evident from the old cadastre. This means that it is formally possible to remove the forest from the area around the castle, since this forest is not legally protected.

³⁶⁷ Source: Archive of the Velenje Surveying and Mapping Office.

³⁶⁸ Slovene Ethnographic Museum, F0038385, photo by Vekoslav Kramarič. <https://www.etno-muzej.si/sl/digitalne-zbirke/vekoslav-kramaric/f0038385>, 12/9/2017.

Interpretation possibilities (interpretation potential)

Additional information boards outside or inside the castle could tell stories about the most important objects that were found at Šalek Castle during archaeological excavations or were preserved in the castle ...



Ivory sundial, prestigious high status building, a typical product of Nuremberg workshops from the 16th and the 17th century illustrate the everyday life of Šalek landlords. A fragment of a colourful majolica mug most likely originates from Italy (the second half of the 16th century) and is a proof of trading routes of that time.

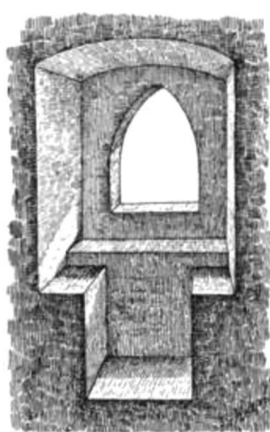
The "Šalek beer mug" is a part of the knight culture of the Middle Ages.

The tombstone of Ursula Raumschüssel (1662) originates from the Protestant period and illustrates changes in the spiritual world which castles brought from abroad.



The votive image from 1694 (also allegedly from the chapel of the Šalek Castle) shows two noblewomen, kneeling before Mary. Mary with Jesus, portrayed with a papal tiara, is a very unusual iconographic motif associated with the earliest depictions of Mary of Loreto. It possibly indicates the worshipping of the then "modern" iconographic type. Both ladies of the castle are dressed in the latest French fashion, wearing "juppe" skirts, covered by "manteau" dresses tied at the back, and with "fontange" on the head. Another example of direct influences from Italy and Spain.

... and stories about different parts of the castle, e.g. moat, outside defensive walls, defensive tower, internal court yard, embrasures, sedilias, etc.



Specific architectural elements must be underlined and explained, e.g. sedilias by windows in the upper floors of the tower.³⁶⁹

³⁶⁹ Illustration from Piper, Oesterreichische - these are not sedilias from Šalek, they are only used for illustration. Photo from Šalek: Dragutin Šafarič.

Additional events possibilities

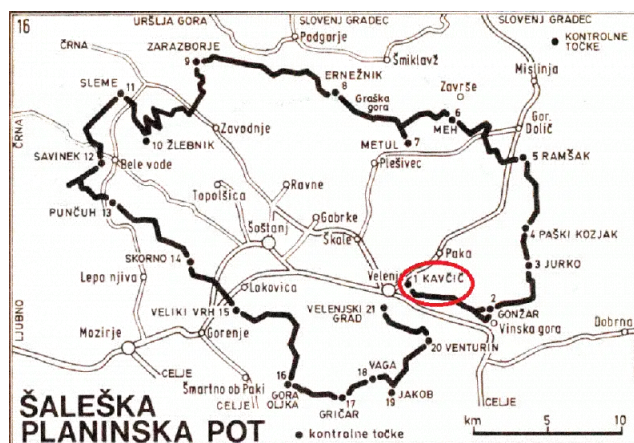
Since Šalek Castle is one of the most important points on the Šalek Mountain Trail, it should have its own stamp (as does Žovnek Castle on the Savinja Mountain Trail). Stamps are very popular with children in particular and would be an additional attraction when visiting the ruins.



Stamp of the Savinja Mountain Trail on Žovnek Castle.

An image of Šalek Castle is used as a logo of the Šalek Mountain Trail (leaflet, guide, commemorative badge).

The first station of the Šalek Mountain Trail is in Šalek.



Castle ruins are visited by children from kindergartens and schoolchildren: additional activities could be provided by combining the visit with the existing teaching material.



The story of how the castle was destroyed by fire caused by a lightning strike is included in the illustrated story for children: Rok in Aca Poles: Poskok po Šaleški dolini, Berivka, Velenje.

Increasing the involvement of ruins in traditional events



Actors in action in the Šalek settlement.



Invitation to the traditional Starotrški dan (the old borough market day) in Šalek.³⁷⁰ The Šalek settlement actually never had the status of market town, but was considered a village. There were only two market towns in the Šalek Valley: Šoštanj and Velenje.



A several hours long event which has attracted more than 1,000 visitors for two years in a row.³⁷¹



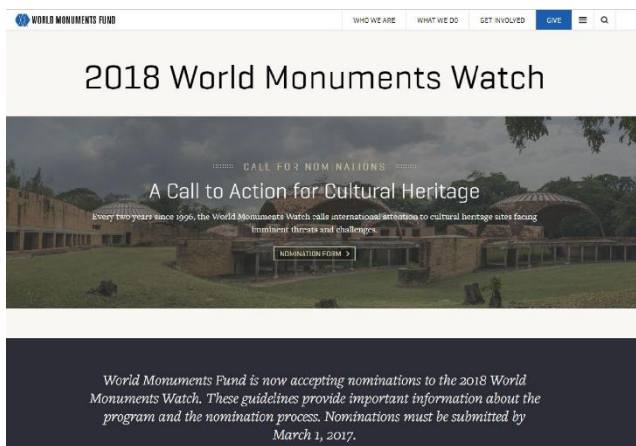
Effective communication with broader area during the event, 2019



³⁷⁰<http://www.velenjcan.si/nb/napovednik/tradicionalni-starotrski-dan-v-saleku>, 22/10/2017.

³⁷¹ <http://www.velenjcan.si/nb/napovednik/na-saleskem-gradu-zopet-strasi>, <http://www.nascas.si/na-saleskem-gradu-res-trasi/>

Inclusion in non-Slovenian programmes for heritage popularisation



It would be sensible to make effort to revitalise the Šalek Castle in one of the programmes of organisations creating opportunities for awareness raising, improving protection and positive changes in the fields of heritage, such as World Monuments Watch.³⁷²

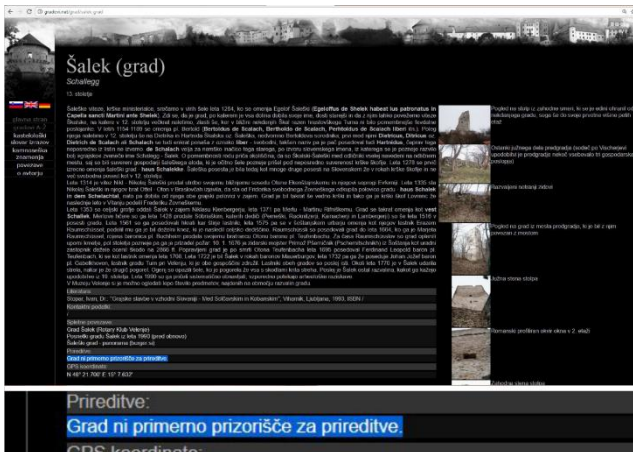


Good practices for the popularisation of castles from abroad could be used, e.g. by emphasising a different aspect of living in a castle or a different meaning of a castle each year (theme years).³⁷³

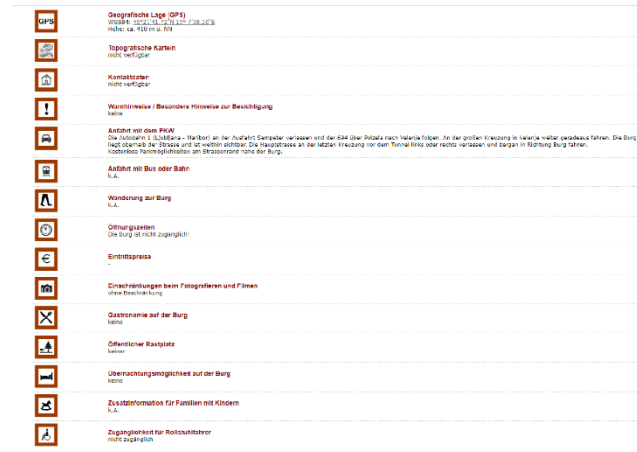
³⁷²<https://www.wmf.org/watch>, 12/9/2017.

³⁷³<http://www.schloesser-und-gaerten.de/themenjahr-2017/>

Electronic information platform and a visual identity of the castle ruins



An example of the presentation of Šalek Castle on the Slovenian website with an explicit statement: The castle is not a suitable venue for events.³⁷⁴



An example of presentation of Šalek Castle on the German website³⁷⁵

The situation is even worse than on the Slovenian website:

- There are no topographic plans/maps of the castle
- No special warnings as regards the visit of ruins
- A description of the access route from the highway to Šalek is wrong/misleading
- There is no information about the possibility of coming to the castle by car
- There is no information on the route to the castle ruins
- In the "Opening time" section there is a statement "Castle is not accessible"
- Admission fee – no data
- There is no food and drink available at the castle, there is no possibility of accommodation, no additional information for families with small children, the castle is not accessible by wheelchair.



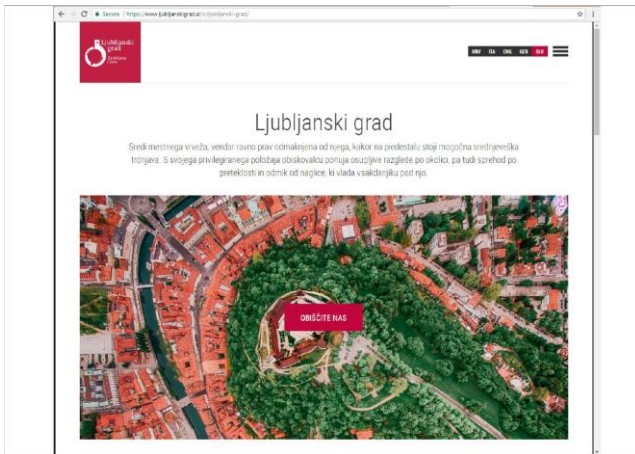
The image of the castle is in general unattractive/unfriendly to visitors unfriendly/unprofessional; however, possibilities for improving the monument to be more friendly to visitors are clearly stated.

Explicit statement: "The castle is not a suitable venue for events" reduces the possibility of expanding public use of the castle. It is necessary to establish why the statement has emerged on the website (potential danger of falling rocks?), the situation must be improved and the statement removed or changed.

Two examples of misleading/incomplete websites stress the urgent need to create an electronic package with all relevant information about Šalek Castle for visitors and experts.

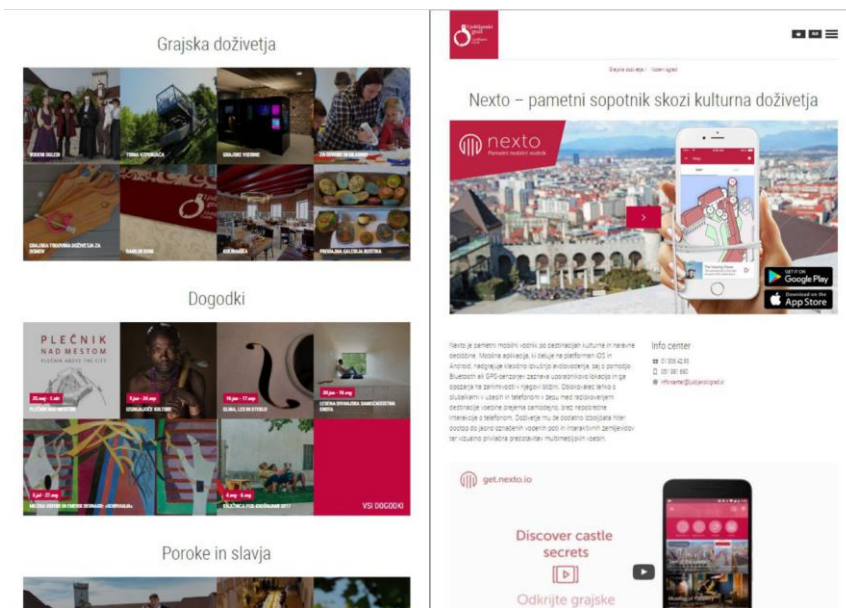
³⁷⁴ http://www.gradovi.net/grad/salek_grad, 20/10/2017.

³⁷⁵ <http://www.burgenwelt.org/slowenien/schallengg/object.php>, 20/10/2017.



Good practices

An example of a good website of the castle – Ljubljana Castle: the main message is "Visit us", which is used as the headline. This is a positive address, which should also be established at Šalek Castle³⁷⁶



There are various possibilities/concepts of electronic information platforms, whether a standard e-guide through the castle or adding audio elements, such as Nexto.³⁷⁷



The logo of Šalek Castle would enhance the visibility of the castle/ruins and also improve the graphic design of documents, information boards, etc. associated with the castle. The logo is derived from the characteristic outline of the defensive tower. The logo was designed by Rok Poles.

A visual identity of the ruins must be created.

³⁷⁶<https://www.ljubljanskigrad.si/sl/ljubljanski-grad/>, 21/10/2017.

³⁷⁷<https://www.ljubljanskigrad.si/sl/ljubljanski-grad/>, <https://www.ljubljanskigrad.si/sl/grajska-dozivetja/vodeni-ogledi/nexto-pametni-sopotnik-skozi-kulturna-dozivetja/>

Temporary interventions

Samples from abroad: classic/material artistic interventions



The presence of the castle in the space can be emphasised with temporary artistic interventions which are not invasive to the structure of the ruins.



246 red ceramic blossoms planted at the Tower of London. Each blossom is a tribute to life of a member of British or imperial forces soldier lost in the Great War.³⁷⁸



Artistic intervention at Carcassone Castle³⁷⁹



Light show / artistic and educational projections



Castle walls can be used as a screen for light shows and artistic/educational projections.



Non-pyrotechnic light show at Hogwarts Castle, permanent or occasional attraction, possible daily repetitions.³⁸⁰

³⁷⁸<http://www.dailymail.co.uk/news/article-2716373/The-sea-red-poppies-honour-Glorious-Dead-William-Kate-Harry-add-888-246-ceramic-flowers-planted-Tower-London-remember-British-life-lost-Great-War.html#ixzz4wE0DyUhY>, 22/10/2017.

³⁷⁹<https://blog.ricksteves.com/blog/changing-europe/>

³⁸⁰<http://www.latimes.com/entertainment/la-et-entertainment-news-updates-june-hogwarts-castle-gets-light-show-1498244060-htlmstory.html>, 22/10/2017.



The show of digitally animated 3D projections/light shows, performed on the façade of Edinburgh Castle. The show was created by architectural mapping technology, which used almost 15km of cables and 42 projectors.³⁸¹

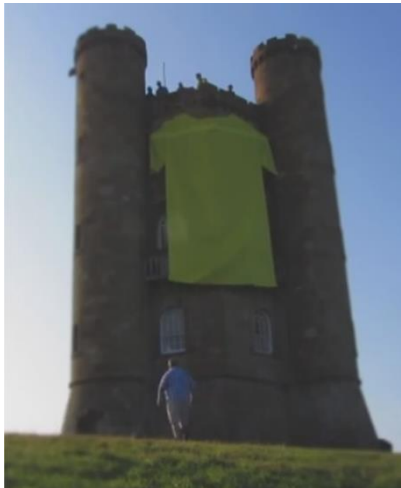


Illumination of Blois Castle in the Loire Valley. A 45-minute-long colourful game of lights on the castle wall accompanied by music tells the stories of love, drama, mystery that occurred at the castle.³⁸²

Castle building as a means of communication



Broadway tower³⁸³



Tower with a yellow shirt "Tour de Britain"³⁸⁴



The proposal for a temporary intervention on Šalek Castle: marking the ruins with a barcode and an inscription "MADE IN CHINA" would be a provocation to raise the public awareness of the uniqueness and irreplaceable role of the Šalek Castle ruins in the actual and historical landscape of the Šalek Valley.



Proposal for temporary intervention on Šalek Castle: placement of inflatable cloud at the top of the ruins as a paraphrase of the saying: "Building castles in the air".

³⁸¹<https://www.timesofmalta.com/articles/view/20160809/arts-entertainment/Kaleidoscopic-light-show-opens-Edinburgh-festival.621501>, 22/10/2017

³⁸²<https://praguebykaty.wordpress.com/tag/chateau-de-blois/>, 22/10/2017.

³⁸³ <https://broadwaytower.co.uk/hail-st-george-england/>

³⁸⁴ <https://broadwaytower.co.uk/tower-wrapped-yellow-jersey-tour-britain/>

4 Part III: MANAGEMENT PLAN

1. INTRODUCTION

The document is a draft of the Management Plan for the Šalek Castle ruins.

The Management Plan for the Šalek Castle ruins is the first management plan for the site of the monument (hereinafter referred to as the Management Plan) and is a mandatory element for the 2020–2025 period, from which the annual work programme, activities and financial frameworks are derived. It is adopted by the Municipal Council of the Municipality of Velenje. It was prepared in cooperation with the Institute for the Protection of the Cultural Heritage of Slovenia, Celje Regional Office. Other baselines, materials and research and analyses relating to the monument area were also taken into consideration.

According to the Cultural Heritage Protection Act (Official Gazette of the Republic of Slovenia, Nos. 16/08, 123/08, 8/11, 90/12 and 113/13 -

hereinafter: ZVKD-1) a management plan must be prepared for managing the cultural monument.

The purpose of the Management Plan is to provide protection and development measures and activities of the Šalek Castle ruins and to establish strategic and implementing policies for comprehensive preservation of the monument. The purpose of drafting the Management Plan is to prepare a long-term management and maintenance strategy for the Šalek Castle ruins.

Due to its archaeological, architectural, urban planning and historical features, the Šalek Castle ruins were declared a protected area through the Decision declaring it the cultural monument of local significance.

Considering the importance of the cultural monument, guidelines for the protection and development of the cultural monument have been drawn up in accordance with legal provisions, which will enable its sustainable development.

In the phase of drafting the Management Plan, the Municipality of Velenje in cooperation with the Velenje Tourist Association carried out several public events within the scope of transnational projects RUINS and HICAPS (Round Table on the topic of Šalek Castle – what to do with it? ŠALEK CASTLE – OUR CULTURAL HERITAGE, Presentation and discussion on the model (framework) of the Management Plan of the Šalek Castle Ruins – internal use), to which different players (decision-makers, associations, representatives of local communities, museum associations, citizens, representatives of the Institute of Cultural Heritage, tourism workers, etc.) were invited with the purpose of preparing an appropriate plan and to provide their involvement from start to finish.

The plan contains starting points and strategies for long-term management and reconstruction and maintenance of the monument site. On the basis of an analysis of the existing situation, the strategic potential for the development of cultural monument is envisaged. The strategic potential is translated into the fundamental concept of protection and development, which represents the basis for further defining of individual measures. The latter are defined in terms of content, time and cost within the Management Plan. In addition to investments, the project foresees activities to revitalise the site of the ruins after their realisation. The purpose of the project is to bring the cultural heritage of Šalek Castle closer to residents and visitors, while attractive content would also attract younger population.

The Management Plan shall be adopted for a period of five years, after which it shall be completed. It is drawn up as a flexible document. It is possible to monitor the implementation of measures, achieving objectives and results, which enables prompt adjustment to new situations and changes. Deviations from the plan, the necessary ongoing changes and additions will be dealt with and updated as necessary by operators and supervisors.

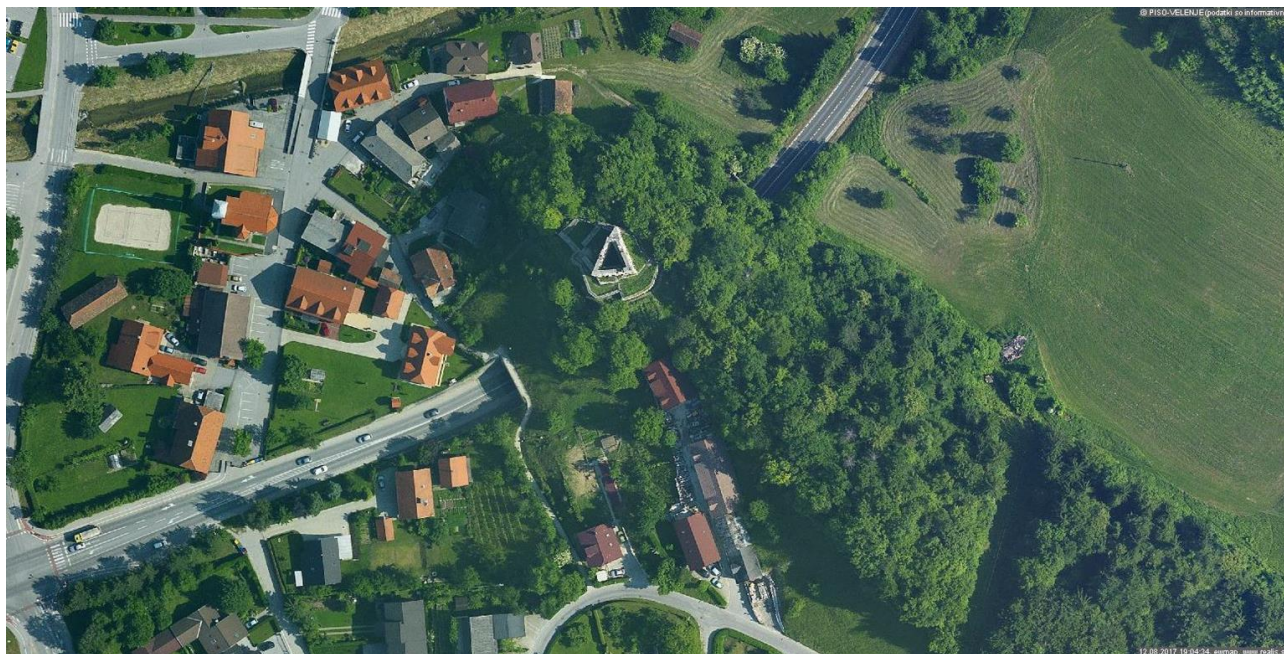
2. DOCUMENT SUMMARY

The respective document presents the site of the Šalek Castle ruins monument. The document includes a description of the heritage, analysis, and evaluation of the situation, as well as protection and development measures, and also the broader context of the monument, its values and significance. The vision for developing the monument and strategic and operational objectives in the field of management are presented below. In addition to the management structure, functions and responsibilities, there are also protection measures against natural and other disasters. The action plan defines the necessary measures and measures to potentially improve the situation and funding sources. The term of the document, the modalities for its completion and the possibilities of modifying it are all specified, due to the fact that this Management Plan is a flexible document.

3. GENERAL DESCRIPTION

In addition to Velenje Castle, Šalek Castle is the key spatial dominant feature of the Velenje part of the Šalek Valley.

The castle's core was built in the 12th century and consists of a mostly preserved triangular defensive tower with five floors, a courtyard, a northern tower – palatium (of which only the basement floor is preserved) and enclosing circular wall. Later, additional facilities were added to the castle core. The castle was abandoned at the end of the 18th century. In the castle yard on the south side, there were three outbuildings, the ruins of one is still preserved but is not part of the protected area. The initial access to the castle in the linear sequence: path - orchard - garden - outbuildings - castle bridge - was from the south and is now privately owned; the current non-original access is by an ascending footpath near the castle. The ruins were stabilised in terms of statics in 1990–1994, and construction works were accompanied by archaeological excavation.



Ortho-image of the area of the Šalek Castle ruins.³⁸⁵

The castle ruins have been proclaimed a monument of local significance – an artistic and architectural monument (profane building heritage) and have a designated influence area.

³⁸⁵ <https://www.geoprostor.net/piso/ewmap.asp?obcina=VELENJE>, 22/10/2017.

4. STARTING POINTS FOR THE PREPARATION OF THE MANAGEMENT PLAN

4.1 European acquis

- UNESCO Convention for the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage (Paris, 16/11/1972);
- The Council of Europe Convention for the Protection of Architectural Heritage of Europe (Granada, 3/10/1985);
- Council of Europe Convention for the Protection of Archaeological Heritage (Valletta, 16/1/1992).
- European Landscape Convention (Florence, 20/10/2000)
- ...

4.2 Slovenian Legal Basis

The fundamental starting point for the preparation of the Management Plan is **the Cultural Heritage Protection Act - ZVKD-1**.

In addition to the applicable legislation, strategic and spatial planning documents of the Municipality of Velenje, expert groundwork and other technical papers regarding Šalek Castle were taken into account as a starting point.

Point 5 of Article 59 of the ZVKD-1 states

"The management of monuments or monument areas shall be carried out on the basis of a management plan."

Article 60 of the ZVKD-1 sets out:

1. The management plan shall be a document setting out the strategic and implementing guidelines for the comprehensive preservation of monuments or monument sites and the method of implementing its protection. The management plan shall be adopted for all monuments and monument sites which have an.

2. The management plan shall be prepared by the operator with the technical assistance of the institute. The management plan shall be adopted by the body which has adopted the act on declaring the monument.

3. The management plan shall contain at least:

- *A review of cultural values, which must be preserved and developed in particular,*
- *A vision of protection and development,*
- *Strategic and implementing objectives of management,*
- *Provisions relating to the management structure and measures to protect against natural and other disasters,*
- *Plan of activities with a financial framework, in particular providing accessibility and management of the visit,*
- *Indicators and method of monitoring the implementation; and*
- *A deadline for the applicability of the plan, method of supplementing and amending the plan.*
- *In the case of joint management of multiple territorially or substantively related monuments, a single management plan may be adopted for all monuments.*
- *The management plan shall be adopted in agreement with the ministry responsible for nature conservation, if the monument site overlaps with the area protected or secured on the basis of regulations in the field of nature conservation. An organisation responsible for nature conservation shall participate in drawing up the management plan.*

4.3 Other documents and expert bases

Decree on the declaration of cultural and historical monuments in the territory of the Municipality of Velenje (Official Gazette of the Municipality of Velenje, 10/1983)

Celje Monument Protection Institute: **Expert groundwork for drafting the Decree on the declaration of cultural and historical monuments in the territory of the Municipality of Velenje.**

The Decree on the Šalek Land-Use Plan, part of the arrangement area S 4/8 in Velenje (the Decree is published in the Official Gazette of the Municipality of Velenje, No. 5/96) - unofficial consolidated text; the site of the Šalek castle is located in the arrangement area S4/18a

4.2. Conditions for external and other arrangements (Article 6)

- *Footpath to the castle: The footpath to the access road section shall be executed with impregnated wooden railway sleepers and paving or filling material on levelled sections.*
- *Surroundings of the castle ruins: The direct area and its related land shall be arranged in accordance with the guidelines of the Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage of Slovenia.*

6. OTHER CONDITIONS FOR EXECUTING CHANGES IN LAND USE, 6.1. Protection and management of natural and cultural heritage (Article 15)

Any interventions in all registered buildings declared cultural monument or heritage are possible only under the conditions and with the consent of the competent Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage of Slovenia.

The area of Šalek Castle is a monument protection area where no new buildings are allowed; only replacement buildings are possible under the conditions of the competent Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage of Slovenia (applies to buildings 16, 17a, b and c).

The area surrounding the Šalek Castle ruins is protected in terms of archaeology (equivalent to the monument protected area). For each intervention in ground layers, the competent Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage of Slovenia must be notified.

Publications on Šalek Castle (selection):

- Brišnik, Danijela, Tone Ravnikar: **Grad Šalek**. Kulturni center Ivana Napotnika Velenje, Založništvo Pozoj, Velenje, 1999.
- Stopar, Ivan: **Grad in naselje Šalek**. Turistično društvo Velenje, Velenje 1975.

Arhitekturni posnetki in rekonstrukcijske risbe razvalin (izbor):

- Dokumentacija v arhivu ZVKDS OE Celje, risal Ivo Gričar.
- 3D rekonstrukcija gradu, Rok Poles.

5. PARTICIPANTS IN THE MANAGEMENT PLAN PREPARATION AND EXECUTION

5.1 Participants in the preparation of the Management Plan

The following people were involved in the preparation of the Management Plan:

- Municipality of Velenje: Helena Knez, Patricija Halilović, Urška Gaberšek, Branka Gradišnik, Marko Vučina, Darja Plaznik, Jernej Korelc, Rudi Vuzem, Bojana Žnider, Drago Martinšek
- Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage of Slovenia, Celje Regional Office: Danijela Brišnik, direktorica, Breda Krajnc, Urška Todosovska-Šmajdek, Milana Klemen, Lucija Čakš Orač
- Šalek Tourist Association: Marija Brložnik
- Rok Poles, author

5.2 Participants in the execution of the Management Plan

The following people will be involved in the implementation of the Management Plan:

- The City Administration of the Municipality of Velenje,
- Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage of Slovenia, Celje Regional Office,
- Velenje Museum,
- Šaleška dolina (Šalek Valley) Tourism Institute
- Velenje Tourist Association
- Interested individuals and companies.

6. CULTURAL HERITAGE - situation analysis and evaluation

6.1 The Šalek Castle ruins - artistic and architectural monument - description

Šalek Castle is probably the oldest and most important castle in the Velenje part of the Šalek Valley. The valley itself is also named after the castle, which is an exception, as valleys are usually named after rivers. The valley was nicknamed "the valley of castles" because supposedly there was the highest concentration of castles in Lower Styria.

The key part of Šalek Castle is still preserved: this is the late Romanesque defensive tower (in the German language called Bergfried, in English keep, in French donjon) and is six floors high.

The defensive tower has a pronounced triangular shape, completely unique in Slovenia, and rarely seen in Europe.

Šalek Castle developed gradually over time from the originally mainly military designed medieval fort to the Renaissance residential building, whereby various improvements were included relating to the new lifestyle (larger glazed windows, stoves, chapel, etc.). Only four old castles in the Šalek Valley were developed in such a way (Šalek, Velenje, Turn and Švarcenštajn), while others were abandoned and replaced by the manors/mansions at lower altitudes.

GEOGRAPHICAL POSITION: The Šalek Castle ruins are situated at the eastern fringe of the Šalek Valley, above the Šalek settlement and the tunnel of the Velenje–Slovenj Gradec road. The castle is located on the steep, rocky end of a limestone hill, which is elevated as a pier above the valley floor right at the point where the old road to Carinthia crossed the River Paka; this position was excellent in terms of strategy and defence and enabled control of the valley and transport route.

FOLKLORE: Franz, the Gadolla knight, compiled knowledge of ruins (1847) and created a basis for "mythology" associated with the castle, which was later used by many authors: the devastating fire was supposedly caused by lightning; the castle reportedly had 36 rooms and an exterior staircase with over 80 steps; when the Turks besieged the castle, it is claimed that cannon balls deflected from the castle due to its triangular shape; the name Šalek supposedly originated from the Slovenian word "skale" (rocks), etc. Janko Orožen, professor at the Celje Grammar School, published folk tales about the castle (1936)³⁸⁶, followed by Štefanija Prisljan from Šalek and most recently Špela Poles who compiled folklore for the publication *Pozojeva grajska pot okoli Velenja* (2011). The process of compiling knowledge, which has been taking place for centuries, has created presumably the largest collection of folklore about an individual building in the Šalek Valley.

HISTORY: The castle was built in the first half of the 12th century. The free knights of Šalek most likely came from Carinthia and earlier from Bavaria. In the 13th century, the initially free family of Šalek was replaced by the new family, also named after Šalek Castle, but subordinated to the diocese in Gurk. The diocese awarded the castle to the Hunnenburg Counts, and later to the counts von Sannegg, on behalf of which it was managed by ministerial servants (Kienberg, Reichenegg). After 1428, the castle was owned by the Sebriach family, in 1575 it was obtained by the Raumschüssls, in 1664 the Teufenbachs, and later the Gabelkhovens, who merged it with their estate of Turn Castle in Škale around 1739. At the end of the 18th century, the castle was abandoned, the owners rapidly changed, the building gradually became ruins, and the landscape management also changed. In the 1970s, activities for renovating the castle started and the road tunnel under the castle was completed in 1977. In 1983, the ruins were protected as a cultural monument, and in 1990 archaeological research and rehabilitation works started.

EXTERIOR: The central element of the ruins is the triangular defensive tower, preserved in five floors, almost to its original height. It is made of limestone rubble; travertine is used at the corners, arches of passages through walls and semi-circular joined door frames. There are traces of roof beam anchorages and

³⁸⁶Much of the material was collected by Orožn pupils and there is a concern that a part of it is fictitious/manipulated.

roofs of secondary constructions visible on the walls, while on the east wall there is a chimney from the fireplace. There was a yard north of the tower, and the basement floor of the second tower – palatium is still preserved. Around the core, foundation walls of the buildings are preserved, which were later completed; stone pavings were found during archaeological excavations. The ruins are surrounded and equipped with fences.

INTERIOR: In the interior, there are remnants of the travertine arches, patches of plaster, roof beam anchorages and sedilia of two top windows. The doors on the floors lead to the courtyard, where there used to be a staircase and open corridors to the palatium, and to the defensive corridor on the side of the moat / access. Walls join together quickly at the top.

EQUIPMENT/FINDINGS: Elements preserved from the castle chapel: the tombstone of Rosina Ursula Rambšisl, votive image of two noblewomen in front of the Virgin of Loreto, and the bell. Archaeological excavation discovered plenty of small elements, including an ivory watch, Šalek beer mug, tableware and stove tiles.

SURROUNDINGS: To the south of the tower there were intermediate wall and defensive walls, followed by the moat with a bridge crossing it and leading to the castle yard with three outbuildings, a garden and an orchard. From there, the path descends the slope to the settlement below the castle. The non-original access to the castle follows a steep path on the slope right below the castle. The most prominent buildings in the Šalek settlement are the Gothic church of St Andrew and the Prislán homestead. On the ridge of the same hill, 300 metres from Šalek Castle, there are the ruins of Eckenstein Castle. On the terrace over the valley across the castle there stands the church of St Martin, a former church / castle chapel of Šalek Castle.

OBTAINING KNOWLEDGE ABOUT THE CASTLE: The castle was first documented by the Austrian castelologist Otto Piper (1905) — this was the first castle in the territory of Slovenia which was scientifically examined. Further analyses of the castle were performed by the Slovenian castelologist Ivan Stopar who included his findings in many publications (1975–1993).³⁸⁷The most recent scientific monograph was printed after the reconstruction of the ruins and was written by historian dr. Tone Ravnikar and archaeologist Daniela Brišnik, who evaluated the rich findings of archaeological excavation in Šalek.

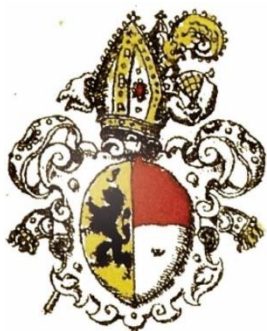
For the Ruins project, I conducted further research of the castle and its surrounding landscape which is based on old cadastral maps, Lidar images of the surface and historical data: the initial access path to the castle was discovered and knowledge about the coat of arms of the owners updated. A reconstruction of the spatial sequences of accessing the castle was made. It was established that the site of the ruins is much larger than the protected area of the monument: following the principle of integrity (comprehensiveness), all parts of the ruins must be discovered and protected in the long run.

Understanding the development of the castle and its wider landscape is the basis for any relevant interventions in the constructed elements. Modern history, therefore, strives for the complete history of the castle and complete analysis of the landscape organised around it.



³⁸⁷Stopar, 1975, 1977, 1982, 1993.

Characteristic images of Šalek Castle through time: 1: Castle with two towers (Vischer's map of Styria,³⁸⁸ 1678); 2: Centrally organised castle (Vischer's Topography,³⁸⁹ 1681); 3: State of the central tower ruins after the repair in 1991.



Škofija Krka



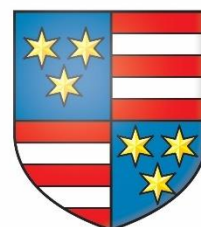
Vovbrški



Žovneški



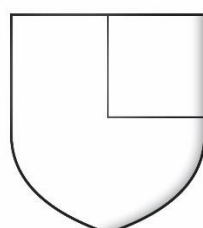
Nikolaj s Šaleka



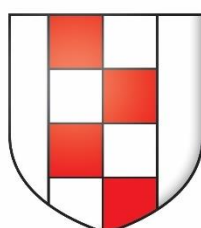
Celjski



Kimberški/Ojstriški



Rifniški (Reicheneck)



Sebriški



Lamberger



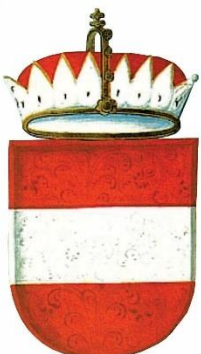
Pernek (Pernegg)?



Racknitz?



Kainach?



deželni knez



Raumschüssel



Teuffenbach



Mauerburg



Gabelkhoven



del Negro



Gadolla



Lapp



Haerdtl

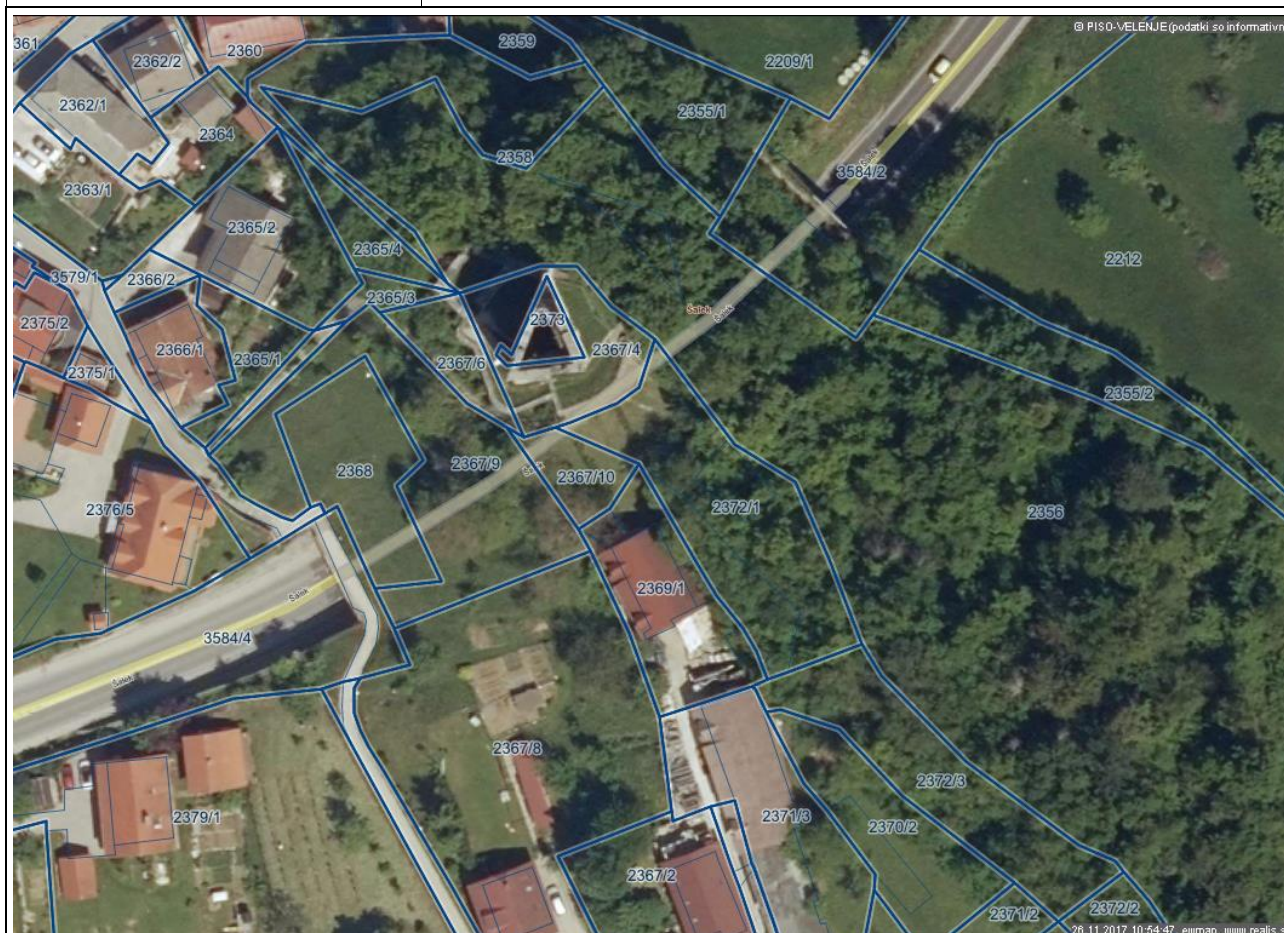
Coats of arms of several owners/landlords of Šalek Castle

³⁸⁸Vischer, 1678.

³⁸⁹Vischer, 1681.

6.2 Location and ownership of the monument

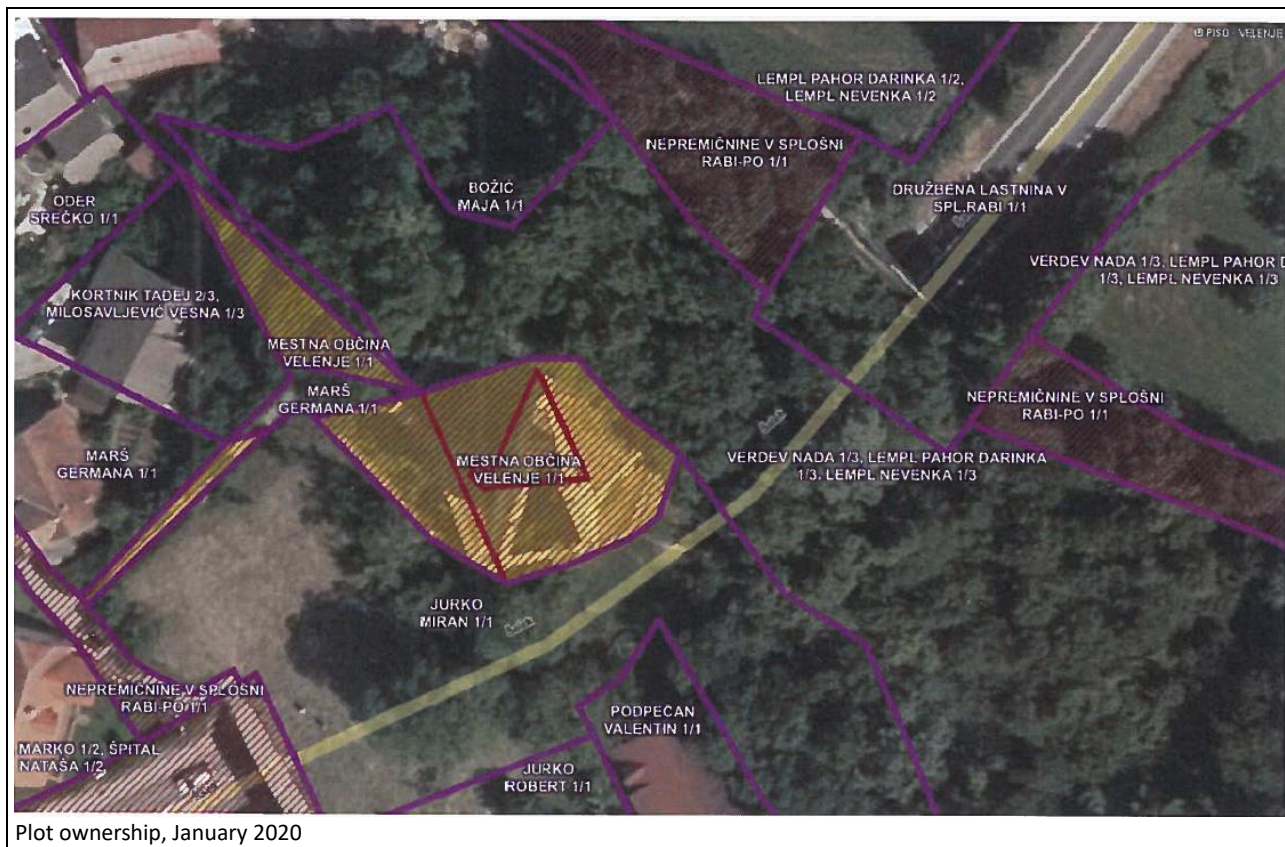
coordinates	$y = 510153.7$ $x = 135292.7$
altitude	432.8m ³⁹⁰
unit registration number:	4329
unit name:	Velenje – Šalek Castle
municipality:	Velenje
cadastral municipality:	964 – Velenje
plot no. - central area:	2373, 2367/4, 2367/6, 2365/3, 2365/4, 2356, 2372/1, 2367/10, 2367/9
plot no. wide area:	2369/1, 2371/13 (whole lots or their parts are included)
owner:	mixed ownership – private, public
type of monument:	monument of local importance
declaration (act):	Decree on the declaration of cultural and historical monuments in the territory of the Municipality of Velenje (Official Gazette of the Municipality of Velenje, 10/1983)
conservation supervision:	Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage of Slovenia, Celje Regional Office



Ortho-image of the area of the Šalek Castle ruins with drawn plot boundaries.³⁹¹

³⁹⁰ Data referenced from: <https://www.geoprostor.net/piso/ewmap.asp?obcina=VELENJE>, 22/10/2017.

³⁹¹ <https://www.geoprostor.net/piso/ewmap.asp?obcina=VELENJE>, 26/11/2017.



In January 2020, Miran Jurko took an initiative with the Municipality of Velenje for the purchase of plots:

plot no.	ID	m2
2372/1	1,029,662	802
2367/9	6,743,119	903
2368	32,156	445
2367/10	6,743,118	145
	IN TOTAL	2,295

6.3 Broader context of the monument

Šalek Castle is the only professionally arranged ruin in the Šalek Valley. The awareness of the importance of the castle and the necessity of its preservation started in the 1970s, to a great extent with descriptions and explanations of dr. Ivan Stopar, and since the 1990s, the historian dr. Tone Ravnikar and archaeologist Danijela Brišnik have been actively engaged with the castle and determined its role in the wider cultural and historical context. The castle has no developed tourist infrastructure; however, it could be nicely arranged in several stages.

6.4 Values and significance

6.4.1 Historical significance

- Šalek Castle is almost certainly the oldest castle in the Šalek Valley and probably the most important castle building in the valley.
- It is probably, the only Romanesque defensive tower with a triangular floor plan in Slovenia, one of the few castles with a triangular tower in Europe.

6.4.2 Aesthetic meaning / visual value

- The typical outline (contour) of the remains of Šalek Castle defensive tower defines the view of the western edge of the Šalek Valley as an immediately recognisable sign in the landscape.

6.4.3 Scientific significance

- Šalek Castle was the first castle in the area of Slovenia which was technically described (Austrian castelologist Otto Piper, 1905).
- The castle ruin is one of the oldest buildings in the wider area and provides evidence of old construction techniques and materials.

6.4.4 Social significance / symbolic / social value

- Šalek Castle is one of the most important/iconic buildings in the history of the Šalek Valley. Not only the settlement at the castle foothills, but also the entire valley was named after the castle. Almost all other valleys in Slovenia are named after rivers running through them.
- The typical outline of the castle ruin was the basis for several logos, which proves the positive connotation of the ruin as an anchor element of local identity.

Due to the above-stated, the Šalek Castle ruins have:

- local importance: exceptional
- regional importance: exceptional
- national importance: large
- global importance: small.

6.5 Analysis and evaluation of the situation

The core of the castle was renovated after archaeological research in the years 1991/94. At that time, the triangular tower was statically restored, in particular its northern corner and the building top, parts of the tower and walls were completed, some facade openings were reconstructed, fences were installed, and the access to the ruins and its illumination was newly arranged.

The buildings in the castle yard have not been properly secured and are partially destroyed, partially reconstructed.

The location of the original access to the castle has not been formally protected and is privately owned and inaccessible.

The slopes of the castle hill are overgrown and reduce the visibility of the castle, and the vegetation also additionally loosens the stones on the slope which are potentially dangerous to visitors and residents under the castle hill.

There is a potential danger of falling rocks from the castle walls which prevents organisation of events at the castle/inside the tower (danger for visitors).

6.6 Protection and development measures

The essential fact guiding the interventions in the area of the Šalek Castle ruins is that the castle is defined as “permanent ruins”, i.e. no alternative functions should to be established, but in particular the visual appearance of the ruins and accessibility of the building and data on the respective area should be improved.

There are two main objectives of the interventions:

1. to ensure the highest possible level of integrity (comprehensiveness) that would enable visitors to imagine / understand what they see (reconstructions, explanations, models, etc.).
2. to meet the expectations of visitors. These are very well evident from websites, where Šalek Castle is marked as a rather unattractive, not visitor-friendly and even dangerous tourist destination (direct warnings are present: "Area not suitable for events",³⁹², followed by the information that there are no maps of the area, no special warnings regarding a visit of the ruins, the description from the motorway to Šalek is misleading /wrong, there is no information on the parking spaces or access by car or on foot, the "open" section states that the castle is not even accessible, there is no information on the entrance fee, there is no food and drinks available at the castle, no accommodations, no information on additional activities for families with small children, etc.).³⁹³ All these statements provide a set of possibilities of how to improve the given situation on the site and in the context of providing information.

general objectives: regular maintenance + additional research + popularisation + design, functional and substantive upgrade (development) of the area

A series of steps is proposed which, first of all, escalate the measure of intervention (from the smallest to the biggest interventions), and then the interventions move from tangible to intangible layers of the site, for the rich folklore calls for establishing a mythological path. Steps:

- **Baseline maintenance work**
- **Safety of visitors and inhabitants**
- **Legal status of the area**
- **Information, guidance** (infrastructure)
- **Contemporary arrangement and better utilisation of the area** (level of building detail)
- **Castle integrity, tourist infrastructure** (level of the building)
- **Authentic access** (landscape reconstruction)
- **Intangible heritage.**

For all interventions, the cultural protection conditions and cultural consent of the competent unit of the Institute for the Protection of the Cultural Heritage of Slovenia must be obtained, and a building permit for construction interventions.

³⁹²http://www.gradovi.net/grad/salek_grad, 20/10/2017.

³⁹³<http://www.burgenwelt.org/slowenien/schallegg/object.php>, 20/10/2017.

6.6.0 Baseline maintenance work

Professional maintenance and restoration of all the preserved and authentic elements of the architecture of the building on the principle of preserving the original floor plan, dimensions and location.

Works of cleaning and maintaining the building and its surroundings, regardless of whether additional renovation of the ruins or its development is carried out: grass mowing, maintenance of paths and platforms, removing of unwanted vegetation, repairing missing and reinforcing unstable parts of walls and rock, i.e. preventing the falling rocks on the castle and below, maintaining waste bins and lighting the castle. Regular conservation monitoring of the ruins by textual and photographic recording of the situation (field commission inspection, drone inspection, archiving of recordings, inspection performed by climbers).

6.6.1 Safety of visitors and inhabitants

Immediate intervention: placement of a mesh on the door of the three-sided tower to prevent the entrance to the tower

The following documents must be provided before further interventions:

- Conservation plan³⁹⁴
- Restoration project³⁹⁵
- Up-to-date recording of the ruins: photogrammetry or laser 3D scan
- Analysis / Report on the static stability of the facility³⁹⁶
- Geological report + rehabilitation plan for castle rock
- Geodetic survey of the situation
- Restoration project of the existing path (at least specification of works)

Execution of renovation works to provide safety in the area of the castle ruins and castle rock.

6.6.2 Legal status of the area

It is required:

- to redetermine the actual volume of the castle with the castle yard that will be protected
- to audit the extent of the impact area
- enter protection in the land register on all relevant lots
- to make a decision on whether the Municipality of Velenje will buy the castle ruins and castle rock in the long term, which would facilitate the management of the area. In this case, the municipality must enter the pre-emptive right for the respective lots (except in the area of land above the settlement and in forests with special purpose)
- to check the protection of views of the castle in spatial planning documents and, if necessary, improve the regimes
- the changes made will require refreshment of the displays in the municipal and national spatial databases (PISO, SITULA).

³⁹⁴Technical card for the historical ruin, mostly drawn up as a detailed expert report, and Documentation model for the ruins of Šalek Castle, Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage, Celje Regional Office, 2018, must be finished

³⁹⁵Possible manufacturers: Smiljan Simerl or the IPCHS Conservation Centre in Ljubljana

³⁹⁶Possible manufacturer: ZRMK

6.6.3 Information, guidance (infrastructure)

BASIC (urgently required) INFRASTRUCTURE:

1. orientation signboards (along the main traffic routes leading to the parking lot in Šalek; in the Šalek settlement they direct the visitor to the path to the castle)
2. explanatory boards: they tell the story (development of the castle, preserved items, archaeological findings, parts of the castle) and are reasonably positioned in the ruins and its surroundings.
3. Monument signboard – construction and installation in accordance with the rules
4. 3D metal model of the current state of the ruins and the castle with two towers in the 14th century – for understanding the space
5. Compilation of an information page on Šalek with all relevant data (location, access, visit regime, information for families, history, plans) in Slovenian and English
6. Execution and implementation of the integrated graphic image.



Various elements of the basic information infrastructure intended to be installed in the wider area of the ruins. The number of explanatory boards should not be overstated; they must not be aggressively shaped (in shape and colour), and they must be carefully placed on sites that are friendly to the visitor and to the ruins in order to prevent visual contamination. The layout of the tables should encourage visitors to walk the entire area of the ruins.

ADDITIONAL INFRASTRUCTURE:

- The installation of the stamp of the Šalek Mountain Trail passing the ruins would increase the attractiveness of the visit for children.³⁹⁷
- issuing a printed publication on the castle and Šalek settlement (Slovenian, English)
- further and new inclusion of ruins in tourist events (now: Starotrški dan (the old borough market day), Šalek Castle is haunted)
- performance of non-aggressive artistic interventions at the ruins
- designing tourist products related to the ruins (now: souvenirs in cooperation with Šalek Primary School)
- Additional research and the digitisation and public accessibility of all historical material associated with the castle in electronic form (on the Castle's website).

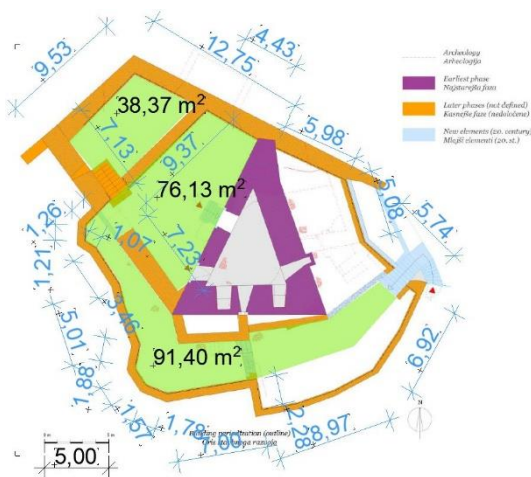
³⁹⁷Analogy: the stamp of the Šalek Mountain Trail at Žovnek Castle.

6.6.4 Contemporary arrangement of the environment and better utilisation of the area (interventions at the level of the architectural detail)

- Replacement of fences
- Installation of integrated benches
- Arrangement of hard-paved surfaces (anti-dust protection)
- Installation of waste bins.

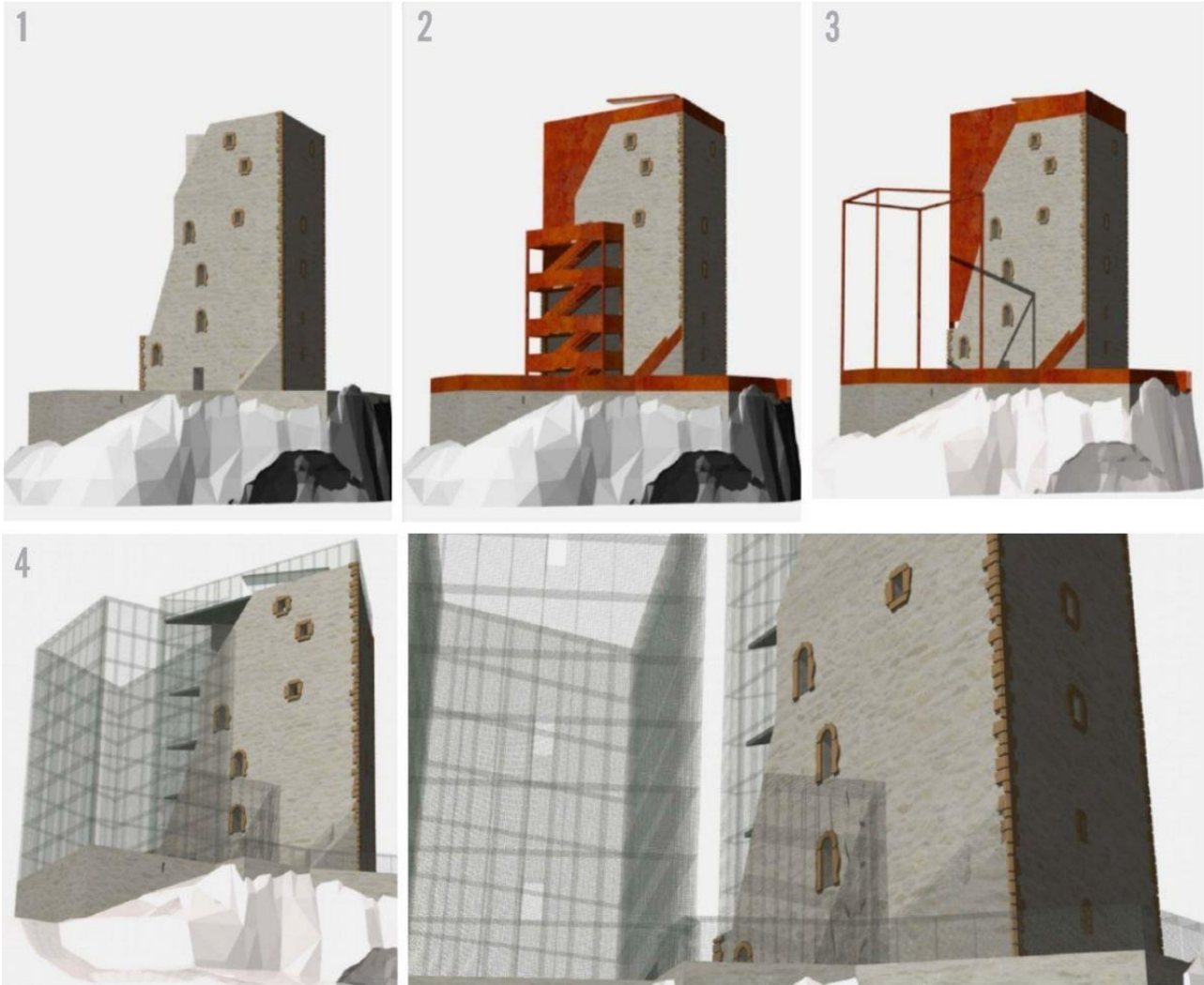


With a new microlocation of the arrangement and a different design of the fence, it would be possible to achieve a more attractive, user-friendly and safe use of the space. The current aggressively shaped fences (with coarse tips below and above) could be replaced with a subdued design to create observation platforms and sitting areas, while access to dangerous areas would be radically prevented. The inner courtyard would be changed to a small events ground.



6.6.5 Castle integrity, tourist infrastructure (building level interventions)

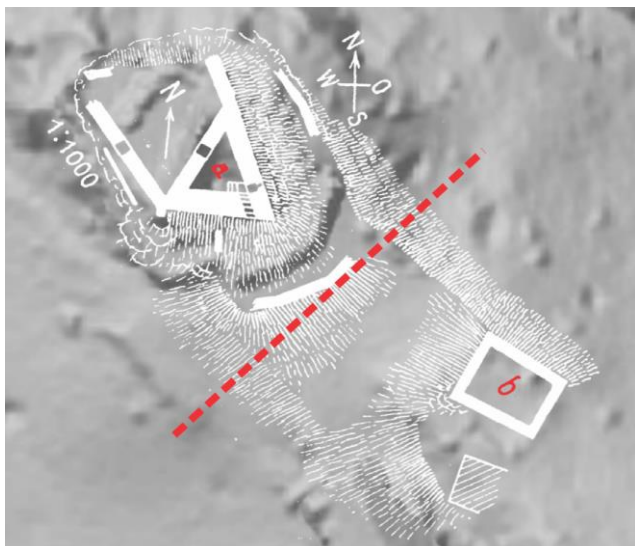
- **in the castle:** In the area of the castle itself, the awareness of the presence of the second castle tower would be raised with its volumetric reconstruction. Vertical communication in the triangular defensive tower would be enabled by installing the stairwell either in or next to the tower, thereby turning the tower into an observation platform (at the top), while inside the tower there would be a place for exhibitions or small events.



The current state of the ruins (1), the appearance with the external staircase,³⁹⁸ supplemented missing walls and the fence of the observation platform in weathering steel (2), volumetric visualisation of the second tower (3) and implementation of the same programme with wire mesh (4) which creates a more transparent look. Taking into account the local climate, also ice (glaze ice) and snow load and also protection against vandalism should be considered in designing interventions.

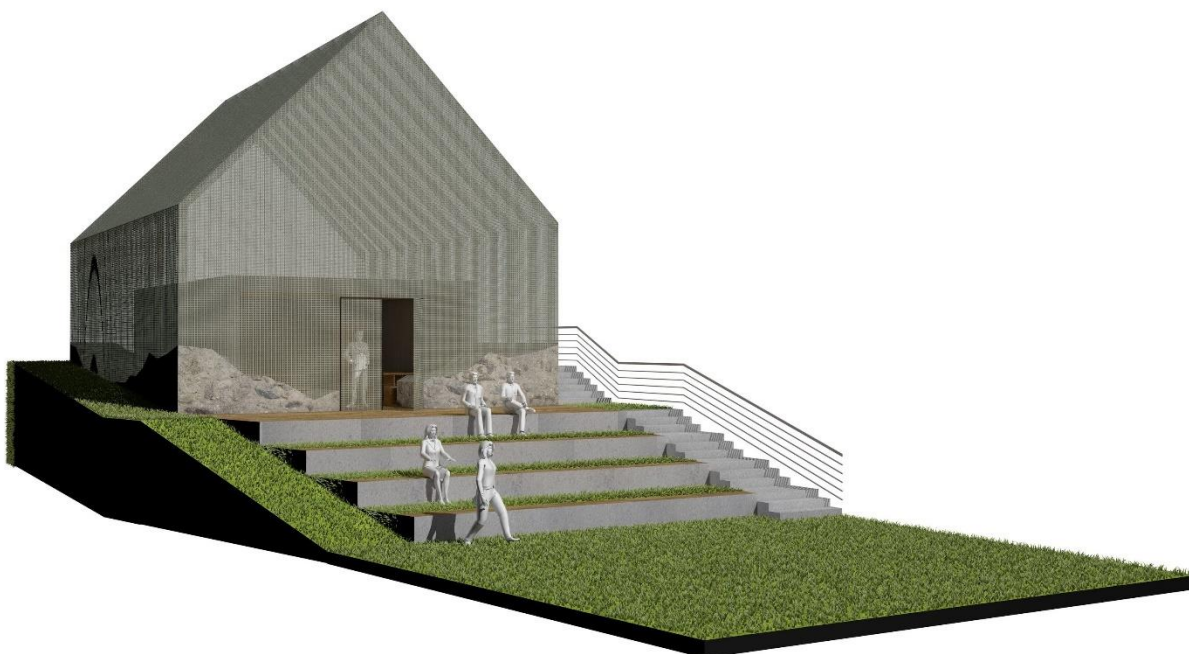


³⁹⁸Basis for the intervention: reconstruction of Šalek Castle in 14th century, drawing by Ivo Gričar, the archive of the Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage, Celje Regional Office.



Separation of interventions to those in the castle and those in front of the castle.

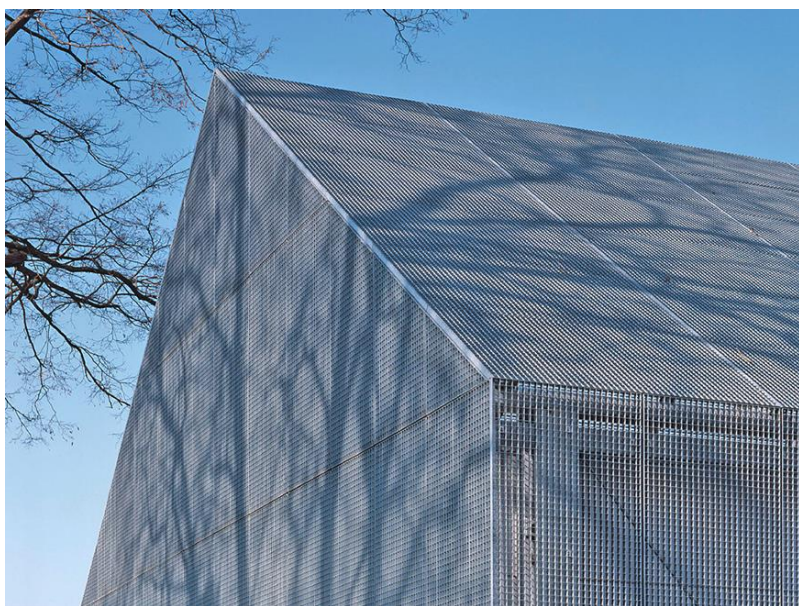
In front of the castle In front of the castle, a small venue for events (summer theatre) would be arranged with seats (benches) on the slope of the castle moat and the area of the stage at the bottom, i.e. in front of the wall. The area for spectators would ascend to the ruins of the service building in the castle yard. Some of its walls are still preserved up to a height of 1.5m and together with old depictions allow the reconstruction of the clean, simple volume of the former building. The preferred material used for reconstruction would be wire mesh/inox system/tin-plated grate: an exterior rim would interrupt the new interior functional core of intervention: sanitary facilities (toilets for men, women and disabled persons), a roofed (perhaps even glazed) sitting area (for resting and snacks), area for exhibiting replicas of findings excavated during archaeological research and replicas of other buildings associated with the castle (votive image, ivory sundial, etc.), small warehouse, place for a vending machine, kitchenette, etc.



Volumetric reconstruction of the service building in the castle yard (with a new functional core protected with wire mesh ascending above the ruins of the building) and seats of the summer theatre at the slope of the castle moat.



Area of the envisaged intervention



An example of the building volume design using tin-plated mesh ³⁹⁹

As the areas of the castle moat and ruins of the building in the castle yard are relatively small, the investment for purchasing the plots should not be too expensive for the Municipality of Velenje (= it is feasible). The area is currently completely unattractive and has no practical value for the owner.

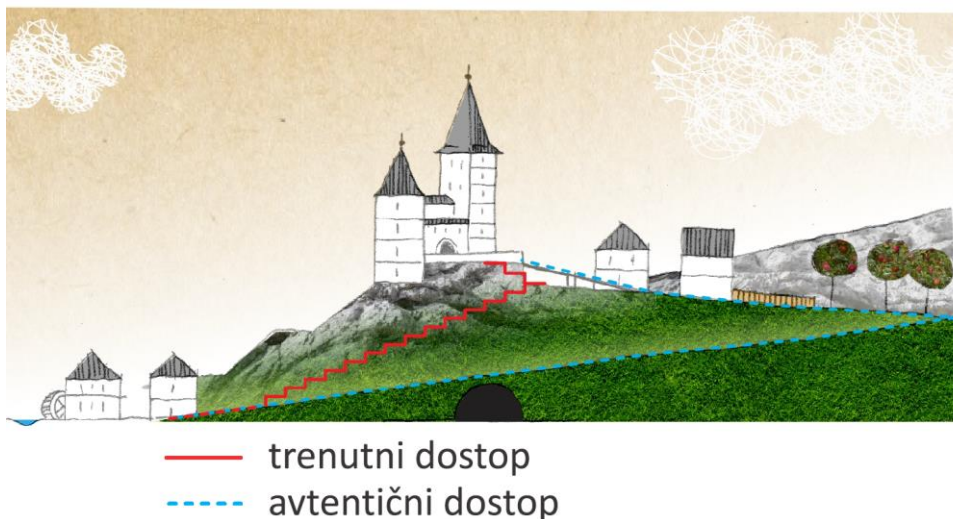
By carrying out the interventions described above, the state of the Šalek Castle ruins would be significantly improved compared to the current situation: it would be more visitor-friendly (benches, toilets, shelter from rain, exhibition), additional activities could be provided, the narrative and demonstrative aspect of the ruins would be significantly higher than it is now.

³⁹⁹ <https://images.app.goo.gl/uPvYoiDVFeDbTtQw5>

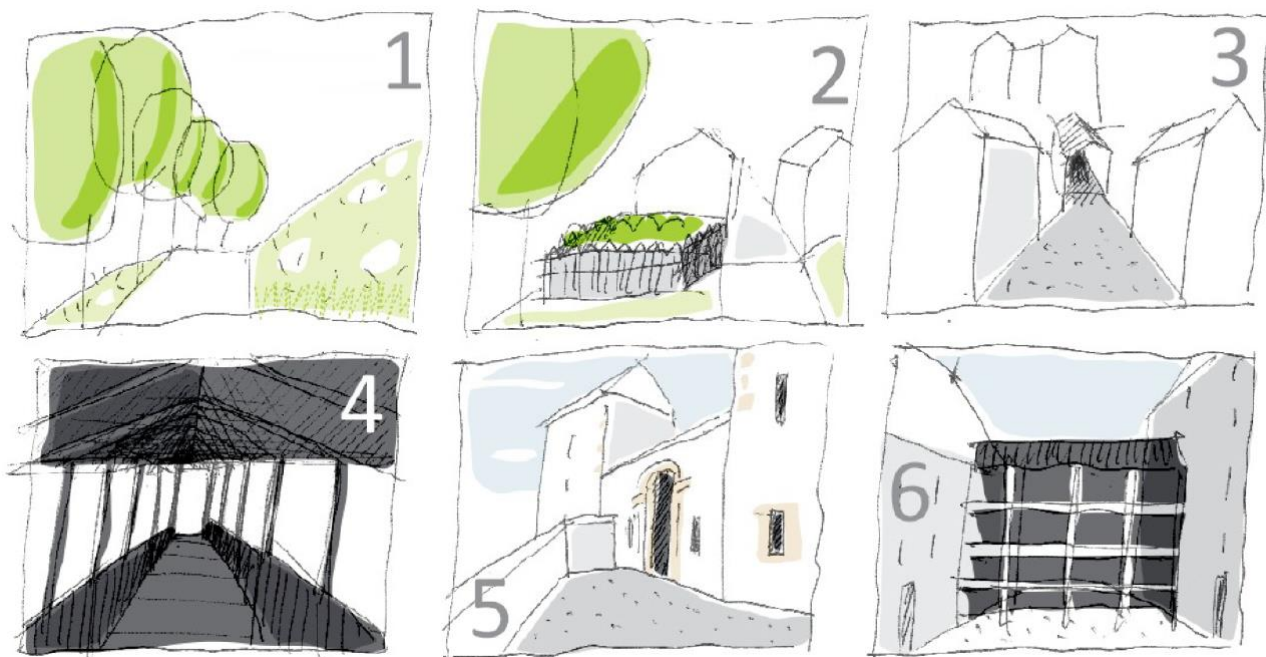
6.6.6 Authentic access (reconstruction of landscape in imagined and actual image)

The reconstruction of the castle based on the landscape: these interventions are a distinctly long-term (currently more or less theoretical) vision of the ideal final state of the area and would recreate the functional integrity of the area as a part of the historical landscape – as depicted on the artwork of Šalek from the 17th century which would provide:

- the original access path to the castle: not the brutally rectangular path up the slope as it is routed today but a gradual path ascending in a wide sweep enabling access to the castle from the eastern side, whereby a series of original spatial sequences based on the function of controlling the visitors or providing safety would be established.



Visitors would approach the castle: following the route (1), past the garden and orchard area (2), through a small courtyard between the service facilities of the court yard (3), along a steep castle passage across the bridge (4), through the entrance in the outer walls into the interbuilding and to the main doors to the castle core (5), and finally reaching the internal courtyard once surrounded by two towers (6). By recreating these sequences, visitors could now experience the expectations and fear of approaching the castle in the past.



Spatial sequences of arrival at Šalek Castle, explained above.

By changing the current access following the non-original staircase through the castle walls with the gallery, the misleading steps could be removed and continuous castle walls reestablished. The

current wood-paved path to the castle should be completely removed since it is non-authentic and creates an incorrect image in visitors. Along the Cesta na vrtače road, a pavement should be built.

- Access for wheelchairs: reconstruction of the castle passage would enable wheelchair access to the level of the castle ground floor;
- Access by car and several parking spaces;
- Reconstruction of the castle garden (traditional wooden fence, aromatic plants and spices) and orchard (apple trees, nut trees, plum trees),⁴⁰⁰ etc.

The level of interpretation/narrative of the area would be very high (difficult superb) and would create an overall mental image of how the place looked and functioned in times when the castle was still the centre of a wider rural estate and the centre of defence. The level of the tourist infrastructure would also be very high (museum shop, guided tours, access by car, access for disabled people, etc.). Some existing buildings would be used again: new linings in metal plates would remove disturbing details and turned them into abstract stereometric designs with new purposes. Other buildings (current large workshop) would be removed in order to allow the original movement through the area.

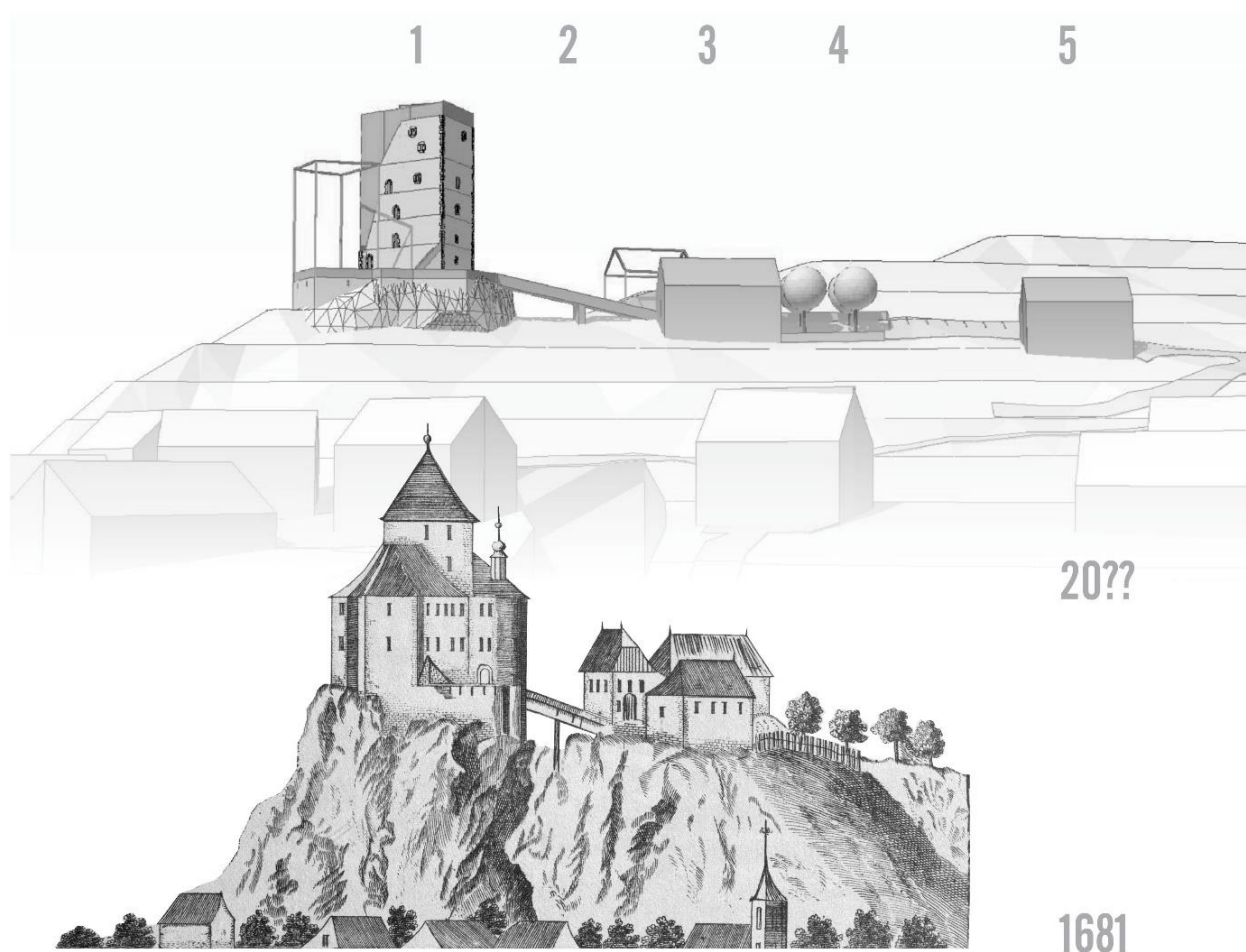
Obviously, the price for achieving such a top level of spatial arrangement will be very high: it would be necessary to purchase additional land (currently privately owned as a residential house and a stone-cutting workshop, they are operating in parts of the premises and would have to be relocated—only the spatial management system is required at the level of the municipality/city), research work and projects will be necessary and the implementation itself is quite extensive. At least two approaches are possible using weathering steel or wire meshes.

As part of the landscape reconstruction, forest on the north-west part of the castle rock, which has been completely bare until recently, would have to be cut, thus the visual role of Šalek Castle in the wider landscape would be underlined.

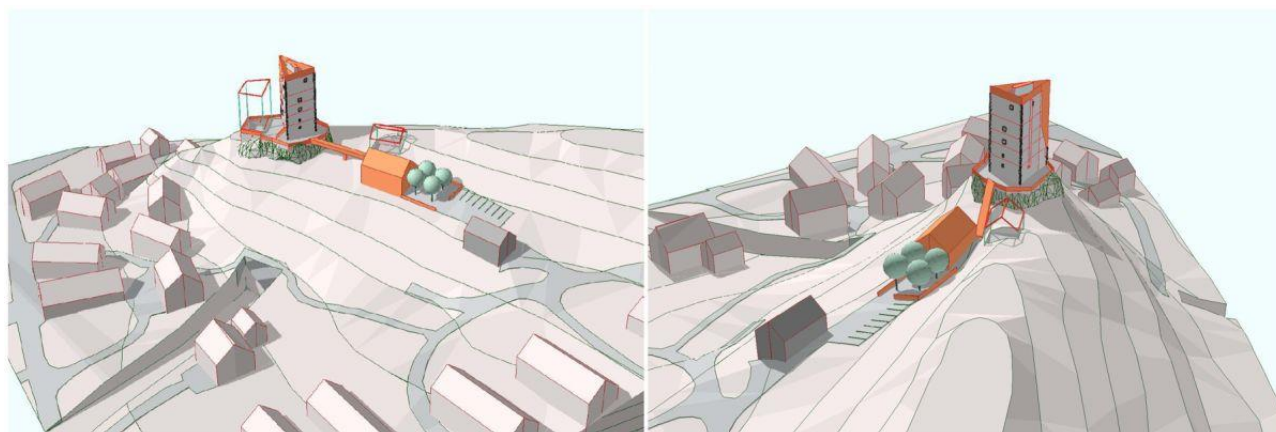


Current state of the of historical access to the castle.

⁴⁰⁰<http://www.buildingconservation.com/articles/garden-archaeology/garden-archaeology.htm>,
<http://www.buildingconservation.com/articles/traditional-orchards/traditional-orchards.htm>, 11/11/2017.



In the perfect landscape reconstruction, the elements of the historical landscape would be reintroduced:⁴⁰¹ the body of the castle would be visually highlighted (1) by additional frame of the second tower and reconstruction of the initial scope of the walls of the three-sided tower; the castle passage would be erected again (2), a complex of outbuildings in the castle yard would be reconstructed (3); as well as the garden and the orchard (4). Instead of the present workshop, a parking lot would be arranged, trees would be cut in the area.



Top view on the reconstructed landscape arrangement

Stages:

- archaeological research of parts of the ruins where reconstruction works would be executed
- reconstruction of the castle yard with service facilities, castle garden and orchard and arrangement of car access to the immediate surroundings of the castle with associated parking spaces and reconstruction of the original access to the castle
- arrangement of the information centre and exhibition about Šalek Castle in the reconstructed service facility

⁴⁰¹Depiction of the castle in the Vischer's Topography, 1681, cut.

- arrangement of the ruins for different events
- removal of the forest around the castle.

6.6.7 Intangible heritage (mythological path)⁴⁰²

In addition to tangible content, the elements of intangible heritage (folk tradition and information on the spatial elements no longer preserved) are also associated with the castle ruins and should also be presented to create a balanced and comprehensive depiction of tangible and intangible heritage.

On a circular path, visitors learn about elements of intangible folk tradition related to the wider area of the castle ruins. Setting up appropriate (low profile) guard rails would provide safe access to the places which are now dangerous due to the steep terrain: a path around the castle rock would be provided on the northern side of the walls, the access to the crack under the castle which is to be closed gradually every year and where stone Turkish balls were found to the stone seat on the castle rock, artificial platforms under the castle, and the access to the castle from the north side (from the ski park area). The highlighted points would be quietly marked with small explanatory boards near benches. There would also be stories told about underground tunnels, springs or wells below the castle rock that never dry up, the former castle mill and granary which stood in the Šalek settlement, the ford across the River Paka above which the bridge was later erected, buildings in the castle yard, keeper of the castle and initial access to the castle, etc. Thus, a broad mental image of the castle as an axis of local spiritual world would be created. The most important points would be quietly marked with small boards and benches with integrated tables to help visitors stay on the right path.⁴⁰³

The set of intangible interventions would also include the establishment of an Internet platform containing all information related to the castle (history, accessibility, offer, contact, etc.).



Šalek Castle is one of the few castles that have their own living elf, the Šalček elf. The selection of folklore / intangible heritage associated with the Šalek Castle is probably the richest section related to a specific place in the Šalek Valley.



The elf is telling a kamishibai fairy tale at Šalek Castle.⁴⁰⁴

⁴⁰² Inspiration: Hrobat Virloget, Kavrečič, 2015, 14, drawing 1.

⁴⁰³ https://assets.publishing.service.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment_data/file/350304/NE63-preparing-a-heritage-management-plan.pdf, p. 24.

⁴⁰⁴ Instagram photo of the Šalek Tourism Association.

7. STRATEGIC AND OPERATIONAL MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES

7.1 Vision for the development of the Šalek Castle ruins

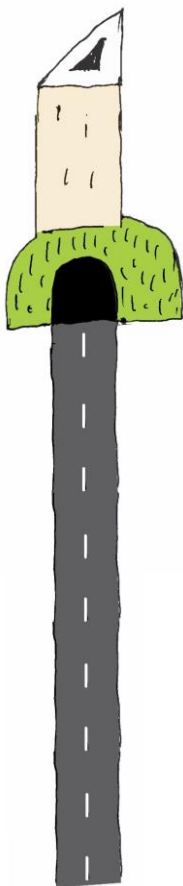
The vision for the development of the Šalek Castle ruins is to become one of the most attractive castle ruins in the territory of the Republic of Slovenia and beyond, friendly to locals and visitors with interesting cultural and tourist contents.

7.2 Strategic objectives for the development of the Šalek Castle ruins

- Comprehensive conservation of cultural heritage and cultural/historical landscape
- Promotion of experiencing and learning about castle heritage using modern technologies
- Increasing the importance of cultural monument of the Šalek Castle ruins
- Increasing the visibility of the Šalek Castle ruins in Slovenia and abroad
- Enabling sustainable development of the Šalek Castle ruins and its stronger integration in the modern-day living
- Satisfaction of locals, tourists, employees and other visitors.

7.3 Operational management objectives of the Šalek Castle ruins for the 2020–2025 period

- Establishing the basic tourist infrastructure
- Achieving the growth of tourism and general visits to the ruins
- Strengthening the appropriate activities at the ruins and in its surrounding area
- Establishing and offering at least three new tourist products related to the ruins
- Preparing at least one project for calls within the framework of financial mechanisms.



8. MANAGEMENT STRUCTURE, FUNCTIONS AND RESPONSIBILITIES

According to the Cultural Heritage Protection Act, management means: performing the tasks necessary to fulfil the purpose for which the property has been declared a monument, and in particular includes managing and organising maintenance, use, accessibility, presentation to the public and monitoring.

8.1 Manager:

The manager of the Šalek Castle ruins is Velenje Museum represented by its director.

Until the official decision is made by the manager of the area of the Šalek Castle ruins monument, the site is managed by the Municipal Authority of the Municipality of Velenje.

8.1.1 Tasks of the manager

- Execution of the Management Plan
- Preparation of changes and amendments to the Management Plan
- Adopts annual work programmes on the basis of the management plan and performs or takes care of performing the tasks defined in the plan
- Adopts and implements annual work programmes
- Prepares annual reports.

8.2 Technical Committee:

To assist in the performance of management tasks, the Mayor appoints an expert committee consisting of:

- 1 member of the Municipality of Velenje
- 1 member of the Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage, Celje Regional Office
- 1 member of the of the Velenje Tourist Board
- 1 member of the Šalek Valley Tourism Office

The Rules of Procedure shall be adopted by the Expert Committee at its first meeting. The term of the Expert Committee shall be 5 years.

8.2.1 Tasks of the Expert Committee

- Determining the adequacy of the Management Plan in the light of professional guidelines
- Discussing topics in the field of expert work related to the Šalek Castle ruins
- Suggesting solutions based on professional knowledge.

8.3 Competencies, decision-making and implementation processes, implementation monitoring, duration of the plan

- The Management Plan is adopted by the City Council of the Municipality of Velenje for a period of five years.
- In cooperation with the Municipal Administration of the Municipality of Velenje, Velenje Museum prepares a Management Plan and annual work programmes.
- The City Council of the Municipality of Velenje approves the annual programmes, reviews the annual reports and monitors the effects.
- Changes to the Management Plan are adopted in the same way as the Management Plan.
- The initiative to change the Management Plan can be taken by the local community, councillors of the Municipal Council, the manager or individuals. The initiative must be substantiated and contain proposals for solutions / changes.

9. MEASURES FOR PROTECTION AGAINST NATURAL AND OTHER DISASTERS

The Šalek Castle ruins are located in an area where natural and other disasters are possible. On the basis of the assessment of the threat of natural and other disasters, the City of Velenje has developed protection and rescue plans for different disaster scenarios.

In accordance with the Natural and Other Disasters Protection Act (Official Gazette RS, No. 64/1994, 33/2000 decision of the Constitutional Court: U-I-313/98, 87/2001- ZMatD, 41/2004- ZVO-1, 28/2006, 51/2006 UPB1, 97/2010) several measures and tasks are being implemented in the field of protection and rescue that can prevent the risk of an accident or which can reduce the adverse effects of the accident.

Table: **Review of the measures and tasks of protection and rescue**

Flood	Protection and rescue measures	Tasks of protection and rescue
Given the position of ruin 35 above the valley floor, there is no flood risk.		
Earthquake	Protection and rescue measures	Tasks of protection and rescue
Depending on the earthquake rate, different types of damage to the structure could occur on the ruins.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Urban development, construction and other technical measures - Evacuation of potential visitors present at the ruins site during the earthquake - Protection of the cultural heritage - Assessment of damage and usability of the building 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Emergency medical assistance - Psychological assistance - Rescue from the ruins
Fire in the natural environment	Protection and rescue measures	Tasks of protection and rescue
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Notifications - Alarm system - Temporary withdrawal - Evacuation - Protection of the area and its surroundings - Insurance of infrastructure facilities and installations - Protection of the cultural heritage 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Fire-fighting and fire rescue - Rescue of people - Emergency medical assistance
Military attack – war	Protection and rescue measures	Tasks of protection and rescue
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Evacuation of people - Protection of the cultural heritage 	

10. ACTIVITIES PLAN WITH FINANCIAL FRAMEWORK

Activities for the maintenance, renovation and rejuvenation of the ruins of Šalek Castle

Tasks	Activities	Time-line Course	Indi-ca-tor	Participants	Num-ber of units	Cost / Year or / task EUR	Year	
0. URGENT ONGOING MAINTENANCE								
Regular maintenance and cleaning works on the premises and their immediate and wider vicinity	Annually							
	Mowing of grass at the ruins and their vicinity	annually	m2	Municipality of Velenje Concessionaire	7	To be included in the concession	From 2021	
	Maintenance of beaten paths	annually	m1	-II- IPCHS	2	To be included in the concession	From 2021	
	disposal of unwanted vegetation	annually	kpl	-II- IPCHS	1 in the spring	To be included in the concession	From 2021	
	of the walls and arches of the ruins and of the rocky part of the castle hill on the NW, N and NE side with removal						From 2021	
	fortification of the missing and unstable parts of walls and parts of rocks = prevention of the falling of rocks at the castle and below it	annually	kpl	-II-, mountain climbers, construction company IPCHS	1 in the spring	To be included in the concession	From 2021	
	maintenance of waste containers	continuous	PCS	Municipality of Velenje Concessionaire	3	To be included in the concession	From 2021	
	Maintenance of the illumination of ruins – covered in the scope of maintenance of public lighting in the Municipality of Velenje	annually	kpl	Municipality of Velenje Concessionaire IPCHS	2	To be included in the concession		
	Once every 5 years							
	Maintenance of fences at the castle and on the running path	every 4–5 years	m1	Municipality of Velenje Concessionaire IPCHS	1	To be included in the concession	2025	
Regular conservation monitoring with textual records and photographic fixation of the situation	Field commission inspection	annually		Velenje Museum, Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage of Slovenia, Regional Unit Celje, Tourist Society	2	500.00	2025	
	inspection by using a drone, archiving of footage	every 4–5 years	kpl	Velenje Museum, spec. contrac.	1	500.00	2025	
	inspection with the help of climbers	every 4–5 years	kpl	mountain climbers	1	2,000.00	2025	
IN TOTAL ANNUALLY			Excluding VAT		3,000.00			
			VAT 22%		660.00			
			price including VAT		3,660.00			
Provision of funding:	- Budget of the Municipality of Velenje							

Tasks	Activities	Time-line Course	Indicator	Participants	Number of units	Cost / Year or / task EUR	Year
1. SAFETY OF VISITORS AND INHABITANTS							
	Emergency interventions						
	Shutting off the door of the three-sided tower with mesh, coordination regarding design with the Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage of Slovenia, and implementation	3 months	kpl	City Municipality of Velenje (CMV); Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage of Slovenia (IPCHS), Celje Regional Office (CRO)	1	4,000.00	2020
	Fire safety study	3 months	kpl	Municipality of Velenje	1	RUINS	
	Documents required						
	Conservation plan/restoration project	3 months	kpl	Smiljan Simerl IPCHS	1	10,000.00	2020 / 2021
	contemporary shot of the ruin: 3D photogrammetry, 3D scan, manual measurements, recorded in 2d in dwg 1:50 (floor plans, cross-sections, façades, colour orthophoto (DOF) of all external and internal façades	3 months	kpl	Smiljan Simerl IPCHS	1	10,500.00	2020 / 2021
	Analysis / Report on static stability of the facility, e.g. ZRMK	3 months	kpl	ZRMK	1	18,300.00	2021
	Geological report + rehabilitation plan for castle rock	1 month	kpl	Geologist	1	2,500.00	2021
	Geodetic survey	1 month	kpl	Land surveyor	1	Obtained	
	restoration project of the existing path	1 month	kpl	Architect, builder IPCHS	1	1,500.00	2021
	Baseline renovation of the castle, castle rock and pathway in accordance with the terms and conditions of the IPCHS, Celje RO	6 months	kpl	Builder IPCHS	1	40,000.00	2022-2023
IN TOTAL				Excluding VAT		86,800.00	86,800.00
				VAT 22%		19,096.00	
				price including VAT		105,896.00	
Provision of funding:	- Budget of the Municipality of Velenje						

Tasks	Activities	Time-line Course	Indi-ca-tor	Partici-pants	Num-ber of units	Cost / Year or / task EUR	Year
Year LEGAL STATUS OF THE AREA - regulated by City Municipality of Velenje as part of regular work							
Regulation of existing legal situation							
New regulation of legal state of ruins	New identification of scope of protected monument site	Single	kpl	IPCHS, Municipality of Velenje premises	1	500	2020 / 2021
	New determinations of the influential area	Single	kpl	IPCHS, Municipality of Velenje premises	1	500	2020 / 2021
	Entry of the protected status in the land register for all respective plots	Single	kpl	Municipality of Velenje	1	500	2020 / 2021
	Ownership structure – establishment and entry of the Municipality's pre-emption right, unless not necessary (building plot within settlement, protected forest)	Single	kpl	Municipality of Velenje	1	500	2020 / 2021
	Protection views of the castle from traffic routes – analysis of views and entry into spatial planning documents	Single	kpl	Municipality of Velenje	1	500	2020 / 2021
	Refreshment of displays in municipal and national spatial databases (PISO, SITULA)	Single	kpl	Municipality of Velenje, IPCHS, Ministry of Culture	1	500	2020 / 2021
IN TOTAL				Excluding VAT		3,000.00	
				VAT 22%		660.00	
				price including VAT		3,660.00	
Provision of funding:	- Budget of the Municipality of Velenje						

Tasks	Activities	Time-line Course	Indi-cator	Partici-pants	Number of units	Cost / Year or / task EUR	Year
3. INFORMATION, GUIDANCE							
Information infrastructure							
Basic signboard at beginning of the footpath to the castle by giving the information on the regime, the key ...	Planning, coordination, supply and installation of signboards (1 koi)	Single	PCS	Municipality of Velenje Velenje Museum, architect spec. contract. IPCHS	1	2,500.00	2021
Installation of additional signboards	Planning, coordination, supply and installation of signboards (3 PCS)	Single	PCS	Velenje Museum, architect spec. contract. IPCHS	3	3,500.00	2026 →
Installation of explanatory plaques	Planning, coordination, supply and installation of signboards (3 PCS)	Single	PCS	Velenje Museum, architect spec. contract.	3	4,500.00	2026 →
Installation of the type of monument plaque	Planning, coordination, supply and installation of the plaque	Single	PCS	Velenje Museum, architect, spec. contract.	1	1,500.00	2026 →
Installation of a 3D model of the ruins and castle reconstruction in the 14th century	Planning, coordination, supply and installation of the model (3D model, 3D print, casting, base, foundation)	Single	PCS	Velenje Museum, architect, spec. contract., IPCHS	1	8,000.00	2026 →
Regulation of the internet information page on Šalek Castle	Definition of content, translation, design, photos, drawings, scanning	Single	PCS	Velenje Museum, architect Designer, translator IPCHS		7,000.00	2026 →
Overall graphic identity	Implementation, coordination with existing graphic identities, implementation	Single	PCS	Architect / designer		1,000.00	2026 →
IN TOTAL BASIC				Excluding VAT		28,000.00	
				VAT 22%		6,160.00	
				price including VAT		34,160.00	
Promotion – recommendations / proposals at annual level - opportunity to acquire funds in tenders							
Issuing a printed publication on the castle and the Šalek settlement	Project fees: text, photographs, drawings, translations, design, printing, marketing	Single	Copies	Velenje Museum, architect Designer Printer IPCHS	1000 SLJ 1000 AJ	9,000.00	2026 →
Inclusion of ruins in tourist events	Implementation and flying of flags, temporary panels, etc.	annually	kpl	Tourism Office, Šalek Tourist Association, Velenje Museum	2	1,000.00	Ongoing

performance of non-aggressive artistic interventions at the ruins	Rising awareness of the castle presence in the area and its extraordinary historical relevance	Once a year	PCS	CM of Velenje, designer / artist, IPCHS	1	10,000	2026 →
Design of tourist products related to ruins	Content profiling of the product Prototype design Product implementation Product placement	During a period of 5 years	kpl	Šaleška dolina (Šalek Valley) Tourism Institute, Municipality of Velenje Velenje Museum, Šalek Tourist Association, Designer Executor	3	15,000	2026 →
Additional research and the digitisation and public accessibility of all historical material associated with the castle in electronic form (on the Castle's website)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Overview of archive resources in Slovenia and abroad (documentary material, old land registry, land register, photo databases): high resolution scans of all material (600–1000 dpi), new transcripts and new translations of all documents, 3D scan of seals - Overview of physical findings relating to Šalek Castle, in Slovenia and abroad (headstone of Šaleks in Austria, etc.), documentation, 3D scans - Overview of Turn Castle, discovery and documentation of stone elements transferred from Šalek to Turn (architectural measurements, rubbings and sign replicas, 3D scans) - To define whether there are still supposedly stone Turkish balls to be found in the cave under the castle - Additional collecting of all oral tradition preserved in the field and linked to the castle and the Šalek settlement - Digitalisation of material from already completed archaeological research - New photographs of archaeological findings for the purposes of representations - Make 3D replicas 	During a period of 5 years	kpl	Velenje Museum, specialist contractors – historians, architects, ethnologists, 3D scan and simulation contractors	1	30,000	2026 →
IN TOTAL ADDITIONAL				Excluding VAT		65,000.00	
				VAT 22%		14,300.00	
				price including VAT		79,300.00	
Provision of funding:	- Budget of the Municipality of Velenje						

Tasks	Activities	Time-line Course	Indi-ca-tor	Partici-pants	Number of units	Cost / Year or / task EUR	Year
4. CONTEMPORARY ARRANGEMENT AND BETTER UTILISATION OF THE AREA							
	Interventions at the level of construction detail						
Replacement of fences	The plan, coordination with IPCHS, Celje RO, a tender for a contractor, removal of existing fences, supply and installation of new fences. Assessment of EUR 300/m1 of the fence. Fence length:	6 months	kpl	Architect ZVKDS OE Celje (Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage, Celje Regional Office) Builder	1	34,500.00	2024
	115.08						
Installation of integrated benches	The plan, coordination with IPCHS, Celje RO, a tender for a contractor, supply and installation of new benches. Assessment of EUR 300/m1 for the benches. Bench length:	6 months	kpl	Architect ZVKDS OE Celje (Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage, Celje Regional Office) Builder	1	6,000.00	2025
	19.8						
Arrangement of hard-paved surfaces	routes, yard - anti-dust hard-paved sand platform (As MAK or equivalent): the plan, a tender for a contractor, coordination with IPCHS, Celje RO, implementation. Assessment of EUR 70/m2 for the terrain. Surface area:	6 months	kpl	Architect ZVKDS OE Celje (Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage, Celje Regional Office) Builder	1	14,420.00	2028
	205.9						
Installation of waste bins	The plan, coordination with IPCHS, Celje RO, a tender for a contractor, supply and installation. Assessment of 5 pcs	6 months	kpl	Architect ZVKDS OE Celje (Institute for the Protection of Cultural Heritage, Celje Regional Office) Builder	1	1,500.00	2025
New illumination of the castle	Coordination of the Adesco plan with the IPCHS, additional sockets	6 months	kpl	Municipality of Velenje	1		
IN TOTAL						Excluding VAT	56,420.00
						VAT 22%	12,412.40
						price including VAT	68,832.40
Provision of funding:	- Budget of the Municipality of Velenje - Tenders for Slovenian and European funds - Contribution of the Šalek Tourism Association in the form of volunteer work - Contribution from locals, visitors – ways of integration must be defined						

Tasks	Activities	Time-line Course	Indi-ca-tor	Partici-pants	Num-ber of units	Cost / Year or / task EUR	Year
5. CASTLE INTEGRITY, TOURIST INFRASTRUCTURE							
Interventions at the level of architecture							
a) In the castle:							
Reconstruction Architecture of the defensive tower (stairwell to the top of the tower, upgrade of missing walls, observation platform at the tower top) and the volume reconstruction of the second = the residential tower	Survey of the situation – verification (not needed if 3D scan and new plan documentation are prepared beforehand)	1 month	kpl	Land surveyor Architect spec. contrac. IPCHS	1	7,000.00	2030→
	Project: conceptual design, project for the obtaining a building permit, project for execution, project of executed works Coordination, obtaining a building permit	1 year	kpl	Architect Structural engineer Electro-design engineer, mechanical engineer, fire safety engineer... IPCHS	1	19,900.00	2030→
	Tender, execution of works	1 year	kpl	Builder	1	250,000.00	2030→
B) In front of the castle:							
Volume reconstruction of service facility and functional core (toilet, tea kitchen...), spectators' stand, platform in front of the defensive wall, fences at dangerous places	purchase of additional parts of the castle area	5 months	kpl	Municipality of Velenje	1	20,000.00	Real-time – when sold – checking
	archaeological research of parts of the ruins where reconstruction works would be executed	3 months	kpl	Archaeologist IPCHS Velenje Museum Municipality of Velenje	1	10,000.00	2030→
	Tender for the project, project, coordination with IPCHS, Celje RO, obtaining of building permit	6 months	kpl	Municipality of Velenje Design engineers IPCHS, Celje RO	1	19,900.00	2030→
	Selection of contractor, execution of works	1 year	kpl	Builder	1	250,000.00	2030→
	Obtaining operating permit	2 months	kpl	Design engineer	1		
	Manager training		kpl		1		
IN TOTAL				Excluding VAT		576,800.00	
				VAT 22%		126,896.00	
				price including VAT		703,696.00	
Provision of funding:	- Budget of the Municipality of Velenje - Tenders for Slovenian and European funds in various programmes						

A stylized, handwritten inscription in a cursive script, likely representing the name 'Šalek'. The letters are fluid and interconnected, with a prominent 'S' at the beginning and a long, sweeping tail at the end.

Šalek inscription from the document

Tasks	Activities	Time-line Course	Indi-ca-tor	Partici-pants	Num-ber of units	Cost / Year or / task EUR	Year
6. ORIGINAL ACCESS - purposes, finding suitable opportunities: real-time verification, if the possibility for execution of activities arises							
Interventions at the landscape level							
Archaeological re-search of parts of ruins where reconstruc-tion works would be executed	Archaeological research Geophysical (georadar, resistance...): Special objectives: - Determine the extent and residues of garden and original access, including a passage for the needs of possible reconstructions - Examination of terraces under the castle and other buildings connected to the castle (pigsties, where the bones are supposed to be found, cave under the castle...) - Definition of whether there was a prehistoric set-tlement on the castle hill	5 years	kpl	Archaeolo-gist IPCHS Velenje Mu-seum Municipality of Velenje	1	40,000.00	
	Purchase of residential buildings and stone-cutting workshops	20 years	kpl	Municipality of Velenje	1	350,000.00	
reconstruction of the castle yard with ser-vice facilities, castle garden and orchard and arrangement of car access to the immediate surroun-dings of the castle with associated parking spaces and reconstruction of the original access to the castle	Tender for the project, project, coordination with IPCHS, Celje RO, obtaining of building permit	6 months	kpl	Municipality of Velenje Project de-signers IP-CHS, Celje RO	1	19,900.00	
	Selection of contractor, execution of works	1 year	kpl	Builder	1	1,000,000.00	
arrangement of the information centre and exhibition about Šalek Castle in the reconstructed ser-vice facility	Design of internal and external equipment and ex-hibitions, multimedia presentations, replicas	5 months	kpl	Architect / Designer IPCHS	1	15,000.00	
	Execution of internal and external equipment and exhibitions	5 months	kpl	Joiner, crea-tor of print ma-terials	1	50,000.00	
	Execution of replica documents and facilities for exhibitions based on 3D scans: key documents with seals, enlargements of seals, coat-of-arms and tombstones of noble owners, votive image, typical dishes, stove tiles with furnace reconstruc-tion, ivory watch) Replica or original of stone Turkish balls	5 months	kpl	Specialist contractor (3D prints or restoration replicas)	10	45,000.00	
arrangement of the ruins for different events	Small items of equipment, informing, training of staff, thematic training sessions for tourist guides and visitors, informational material	1 month	kpl	Šaleška do-lina (Šalek Valley) Tour-ism Institute, Museum Ve-lenje, IPCHS	1	2,000	
removal of the forest around the castle	Coordination with stakeholders, selection of con-tractor, implementation					20,000.00	
IN TOTAL				Excluding VAT		1,501,900.00	
				VAT 22%		330,418.00	
				price including VAT		1,832,318.00	
Provision of funding:	- Budget of the Municipality of Velenje						

Tasks	Activities	Time-line Course	Indi-ca-tor	Partici-pants	Num-ber of units	Cost / Year or / task EUR	Year
7. INTANGIBLE HERITAGE- - purposes, finding suitable opportunities: real-time verification, if the possibility for execution of activities arises							
“Mythological” path around the castle							
Arrangement of a mythological-folklore path around the wider vicinity of the castle by integrating folk tradition, special places, memories of old elements of Šalek and access to the castle at the “back” = northern side	Project - definition of content, design, determination of the trail	3 months	kpl	Velenje Museum, the folk tradition collector, architect / designer, mountain climber	1	4,000.00	Up to 2025
	Arrangement of paths / accesses	6 months	kpl	Builder, spec. creator, mountain trail makers, IPCHS	1	5,000.00	2026→
	Fences at exposed locations	6 months	kpl	Builder, spec. creator, IPCHS	1	15,000.00	2026→
	6 benches / location marks - on benches, small plaques, QR codes	6 months	kpl	Builder, spec. creator	1	6,000.00	2026→
	Additional internet content - electronic version of the route and information	3 months	kpl	Information scientist, Designer	1	3,000.00	2026→
IN TOTAL				Excluding VAT		33,000.00	
				VAT 22%		7,260.00	
				price including VAT		40,260.00	
Provision of funding:	- Budget of the Municipality of Velenje						



Šalek beer mug seals.

References:

- Aquilin Julius Caesar: *Beschreibung des Herzogthum Steyermarks*. II del, Grätz 1786.
<https://books.google.si/books?id=slwAAAAcAAJ&pg=PA501&lpg=PA501&dq=kainach+schallegg&source=bl&ots=95LkfyW-Hu&sig=ACfU3U3CWGIWUglXmcCVelG5tKKyGzqx7w&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=2ahUKEwiqqzbyufjAhWhItIsKHWA6A5YQ6AEwAXoECAAQAQ#v=onepage&q=kainach%20schallegg&f=false>
- Brišnik, Danijela, Tone Ravnikar: *Grad Šalek*. Kulturni center Ivana Napotnika Velenje, Muzej Velenje, Založništvo Pozoj, Velenje, 1995.
- Brišnik, Danijela, Tone Ravnikar: *Grad Šalek*. Kulturni center Ivana Napotnika Velenje, Založništvo Pozoj, Velenje, 1999.
- Brišnik, Danijela: *Od kamnitih sekir do terre sigillate*. And: Velenje, razprave o zgodovini mesta in okolice, Mestna občina Velenje, Velenje, 1999.
- Brišnik, Danijela: *Od poznoantičnih loncev do šaleške pivske čaše*. IN: Velenje, razprave o zgodovini mesta in okolice, Mestna občina Velenje, Velenje, 1999.
- Brodar, Mitja: *Ledenodobni ljudje v Šaleški dolini..* IN: Velenje, razprave o zgodovini mesta in okolice, Mestna občina Velenje, Velenje, 1999.
- Byloff, Fritz: *Hexenglaube und Hexenverfolgung in den österreichischen Alpenländern*, Severus, Fraktur, 2011 reprint of the original from 1934, 47.
- Franciscejski kataster*, Abecedni seznam lastnikov zemljišč. Alphabetisches Verzeichniz der Gemeinde Schallegg, Bezirk Wöllann, Cillier Kreis. SI AS 177/C/F/C400/s/PUA.
- Jakič, Ivan: *Vsi slovenski gradovi*. Leksikon slovenske grajske zapuščine. DZS, Ljubljana 1997.
- Gadolla, vitez Franz: *Contributions to the topography and history of some castles and mansions in the Celje district*. Critically acclaimed and investigated, 1847. IN: Šaleški gradovi viteza Gadolle, Knjižnica Velenje, Velenje 2015.
- Golec Boris: *Domoznalec Franc vitez Gadolla*. IN: Šaleški gradovi viteza Gadolle. Knjižnica Velenje, Velenje, 2015.
- Golec Boris: *»Mali štajerski Valvasor«, polihistorjev pozabljeni potomec Franc vitez Gadolla (1797-1866)*. IN: SLO, slovenski zgodovinski magazin, 13/2017, Založba Družina, Ljubljana 2017.
<http://www.druzina.si/flip/revije/slo/13/mobile/index.html#p=11>
- Gubo, Andreas: *Geschichte der Stadt Cilli vom Ursprung bis auf die Gegenwart*. Moser, 1909.
- Guštin, Mitja: *Celjske čaše*. Srednjeveške in zgodnjenovoveške lončene čaše na Slovenskem. IN: Srednjeveško Celje (Medieval Celje), Archaeologia Historica Slovenica 3, Filozofska fakulteta, Ljubljana 2001
- Guštin, M., M. Jezeršek, N. Prošek: *Katalog keramičnih najdb iz Celja*. - V: Srednjeveško Celje, Archaeologia Historica Slovenica 3, 195 ff, Ljubljana 2001.
- Hesekiel, George: *Der Capitain der Königin*. IN: Deutsche Roman-Zeitung, Otto Janke, Berlin, 1871.
<https://books.google.si/books?id=15FSAAAACAAJ&pg=PA505&dq=krebs+wappen+schwarz&hl=sl&sa=X&ved=0ahUKewimj-GylZrjAhXtpYsKHL7AycQ6AEICTAA#v=onepage&q=krebs%20wappen%20schwarz&f=false>
- Janežič, Špela: *Vila in posestvo Herberstein v Velenju*, diplomatska naloga. Univerza v Mariboru, Pravna fakulteta, Velenje 2003.
- Janisch, Josef Andreas: *Topographisch-statistisches Lexikon von Steiermark, mit historischen Notizen und Anmerkungen*, Graz, Leykam, 1878.
- Komelj, Ivan: *Grad kot spomeniškovarstveni problem v času med obema vojnama*. IN: Varstvo spomenikov XXV, Zavod RS za varstvo naravne in kulturne dediščine, Ljubljana 1983.
https://www.zvkds.si/sites/www.zvkds.si/files/upload/files/publications/025_1983_varstvo_spomenikov.pdf
- Kos, Dušan: *Vitez in grad*. Vloga gradov v življenju plemstva na Kranjskem, Slovenske Štajerskem in Slovenskem Koroške do začetka 15. stoletja. Založba ZRC, ZRC Sazu, Ljubljana 2005.
- Kozjak, 1992: *Terenski zapiski raziskovalnega tabora Paški Kozja 1992*. Kulturni center Ivana Napotnika Velenje, skupina za starejšo zgodovino, mentorica Danijela Brišnik. Tipkopis.

- Lojen, Peter, Rok Poles: *Sanacija ruševin gradu Šalek*. Seminarska naloga za predmet Arhitekturne konstrukcije, FAGG, 1992/93.
- Mihelak, Vinko: *Velenje – stoletje na razglednicah*. Mestna občina Velenje, Velenje 2009.
- Mlinšek, Fran: *Mlinškovo berilo*, (i)zbrani etnološki in slovstveni zapiski. Uredila Jože Hudales in Ivo Stropnik. Kulturni center Ivana Napotnika, Velenje, 1991. <https://www.dlib.si/details/URN:NBN:SI:DOC-LEEICYNV>
- Morlot, Adolphe: *Einige Bemerkungen über die geologischen Verhältnisse von Untersteier*, 1852. https://books.google.si/books?id=g_sTAAAAQAAJ&printsec=frontcover&hl=sl&source=gbs_ge_summary_r&cad=0#v=onepage&q&f=false.
- Orožen, Ignac: *Celska kronika*. Celje, 1854.
- Orožen, Ignaz: *Das Bisthum und die Dioezese lavant., V. Das Dekanat Schallthal*. Graz 1884.
- Orožen, Janko: *Gradovi in graščine v narodovem izročilu*. Celje, 1936.
- Otto Piper: *Österreichische Burgen– 4*, Wien 1905. <http://daten.digitale-sammlungen.de/~db/0007/bsb00070356/images/index.html?id=00070356&groesser=&fip=yztsewqeaayaenewqxdsydwqyztseayae nxdsyd&no=17&seite=181, 7/11/2017>.
- Petru, Peter: *Arheološka obdobja – poznoantična doba*. http://www.savel-hobi.net/leksikon/zgodovina_sl/poznoanticna.htm
- Pintarič, Katja: *Odnosi med trgov Ljutomer in njegovim lastnikom ob koncu 17. stoletja*. Diplomsko delo, Univerza v Mariboru, Maribor 2011.
- Planko Lado, *Upellae*. IN: Šaleški razgledi 2010. http://www.knjiznica-velenje.si/filelib/2010-knjiznica/domoznanstvo/saleski_razgledi/planko_upellae.pdf.
- Pleterski, Andrej: *Nevidna srednjeveška Evropa. Župa Bled*. Institut za arheologijo ZRC SAZU, Ljubljana 2011. http://iza.zrc-sazu.si/Si/Dela/Zupa_Bled.pdf
- Poles, Rok, et al.: *Sakralna dediščina Šaleške doline*. Pozoj, Velenje, 1998.
- Poles, Rok, Špela: *Grad Ekenštajn in graščina Gorica*. IN: Velenje, zbornik raziskovalnega tabora 1999, 2000. Erico, Velenje, 2001.
- Poles, Rok: *Sakralna dediščina velenjskega dela Šaleške doline v luči kontinuitete identitete*. IN: Velenje, razprave o zgodovini mesta in okolice, Mestna občina Velenje, Velenje, 1999, p. 121-161.
- Poles, Špela: *Izvir Bele vode*.
- Poles, Rok, Špela: *Pozojeva grajska pot okoli Velenja*. Mestna občina Velenje, Velenje, 2011.
- Poles, Rok, Špela: *Villa Bianca, zgodba o ponovnem rojstvu vile*. Berivka, d.o.o., Velenje, 2011.
- Poles, Rok: *Gospodje Dobrnski in cerkev sv. Janeza Krstnika v Šentjanžu na Peči (Vinski Gori)*. IN: Kronika 62/2014 št. 3, Iz zgodovine Dobrne. Zveza zgodovinskih društev Slovenije, Ljubljana 2014.
- Prislan, Štefanija: *Šaleški zvon*. Univerza za tretje življenjsko obdobje, Velenje, 1999.
- Rajšp, Vincenc: *Slovenija na vojaškem zemljevidu 1763-1787*, zvezek 5. Arhiv Republike Slovenije, Založba ZRC, Ljubljana 1999.
- Ravnikar, Tone, Rok Poles: *Grbi nekaterih pomembnejših rodbin Šaleške doline*. IN: Šaleški razgledi, 12, Kulturni center Ivana Napotnika, Založništvo Pozoj, Velenje 1996
- Ravnikar, Tone: Po zvezdnih poteh: *Šaleška in Savinjska dolina v visokem srednjem veku. Muzej Velenje, Velenje, 2007*.
- Ravnikar, Tone: *Razvoj grajske mreže v Šaleški dolini do konca srednjega veka*. IN: Šaleški gradovi viteza Gadolle, Knjižnica Velenje, Velenje 2015.
- Ravnikar, Tone: *Šaleška dolina med 10. in 17. stoletjem*. Muzej Velenje, Velenje 2005.
- Ravnikar, Tone: *V primežu medplemiških prerivanj*, Pedagoški inštitut, Ljubljana 2010.
- Reichert, Carl: *Einst und jetz. Album Steiermarks, III. Band, Graz 1865*.
- Repanšek Luka: *Keltska dediščina v toponimiji jugovzhodnega alpskega prostora*. Založba ZRC, SAZU, Ljubljana 2016.

- Sapač, Igor: *Arhitekturna zgodovina gradu Lemberg*. IN: Kronika 3, 62/2014.
- Schmutz, Carl: *Historisch-topographisches Lexicon von Steyermark*. Kienreich, Graz 1822–1823.
- Seher Anton: *Zgodovina premogovnika Velenje*, 2. knjiga. Premogovnik Velenje, Velenje 1998.
- Snoj, Marko: *Etimološki slovar slovenskih zemljepisnih imen*. Založba Modrijan, Založba ZRC, Ljubljana 2009.
- Stopar, Ivan: *Grad in naselje Šalek*. Turistično društvo Velenje, Velenje 1975.
- Stopar, Ivan: *Grajski objekti z območja Slovenske Štajerske na Vischerjeve zemljevidu iz leta 1678*. And: Celjski zbornik 1971-72, description of the depiction of Šalek Castle on the map of 1678: p. 418.
- Stopar, Ivan: *Razvoj srednjeveške grajske arhitekture na Slovenskem Štajerskem*. Slovenska matica, Ljubljana 1977.
- Stopar, Ivan: *Gradovi, graščine in dvorci na slovenskem Štajerskem*, 1982.
- Stopar, Ivan: *Velenjski grad*. IN: Prispevi k zgodovini Šaleške doline, Šaleši razgledi 2, Kulturni center Ivana Napotnika Velenje, Velenje 1989. http://www.knjiznica-velenje.si/filelib/2010-knjiznica/domoznanstvo/saleski_razgledi/12_prispevki_ki_zgodovini_aleke_doline_letu_1989_zv_2.pdf
- Stopar, Ivan: *Grajske stavbe v vzhodni Sloveniji, IV. Knjiga. Med Solčavskim in Kobanskim*, 1993.
- Šašel, Jaro: *Upellae – Vitanje?* IN: Zgodovinski časopis 4-4, 1954.
- Šifer, Peter: *Grad Turn v Hrastovcu*, arhitekturni posnetek. P&A projektini atelje, št. projeta 577/10, Velenje 2010. Iz arhiva MO Velenje.
- Umek, Smiljan, Franc Čačovič: *Predlog za izvedbo sanacije ruševin gradu Šalek nad Velenjem*. IRMK, 1975.
- Vijanski, Janko: *Povest od jezera v skalski dolini*. IN: Kmetijske in rokodelske novice, 1857, 19.
- Valvasor, Johann Weichard von: *Deß Hochlöblichen Hertzogthums Crain Topographisch-Historischer beschreibung*, 9. knjiga, 3. del, Nürnberg 1689.
- Vischer, Matthäus Vischer: *Styriae Ducatus Fertillissimi Nova Geographica Descriptio*. 1678. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Styriae_Ducatus_Fertillissimi_Nova_Geographica_Descriptio_1678.jpg, 18/11/2017.
- Vischer, Georg Matthäus: *Topographia Ducatus Styriae*. Grätz 1681, depiction of Šalek Castle. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Vischer_-_Topographia_Ducatus_Stiriae_-_374_Schallegg_-_Salek.jpg, 18/11/2017.
- Zimmermann, Peter: *Gradovi Šaleške doline pri Gadolli in Pircheggerju*. IN: Šaleški gradovi viteza Gadolle, Knjižnica Velenje, Velenje 2015.

Elektronski viri so navedeni v opombah k besedilu.

IV. APPENDICES, EXCURSIONS

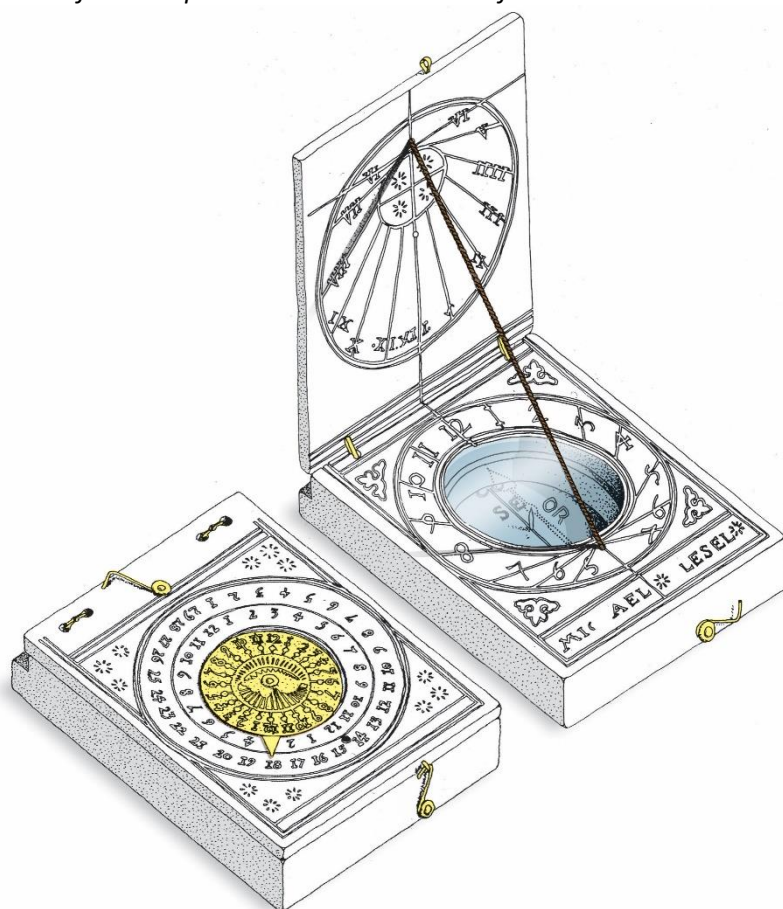
IV.1: About a sundial that could also be used at night

Some new surprising details on the ivory flap sundial found at Šalek Castle

During the renovation of Šalek Castle almost 30 years ago, the tiny portable sundial was found and is now exhibited at the Velenje Museum. The Internet age makes it possible to use some details to complete the description by the archaeologist Daniela Brišnik, who said:

Ivory flap sundial. Marks and ornaments are engraved, the plate indicating moon phases is made of bronze. Height 5.1cm, width 3.7cm, thickness 1cm. Inventory no. MV 65.

A tiny sundial, which can easily fit in the hand, is made of two folding ivory plates, between which a thread was initially attached as semi-axis. The bottom plate had a compass engraved, which is unfortunately not preserved. The lid shows a bronze gilded moondial. All markings are engraved. At several places, the sundial is embellished with little suns and tiny plant ornament. On the bottom plate, below the compass, the name Michael Lesel is engraved, most likely the name of the maker or the person who commissioned the sundial. In the 16th and 17th centuries, the horizontally-vertical flap sundials (or Nuremberg compasses) were the specialty of Nuremberg workshops. They are rare in Slovenia and are recorded only in the inventory log of the National Museum of Slovenia with Germany indicated as their place of origin. Among the recorded sundials, only one is made of ivory and dates back to the 16th–17th century. Markova and Stolberg date the sundial of this shape and similar dimensions from Joanneum in Graz back to 1602.⁴⁰⁵



Portable ivory sundial
from Šalek, closed and open.
Partial reconstruction R. P.

The sundial is an instrument that measures hours by throwing a shadow of the Sun on the dial. Sundials in various forms were the most widely used daily means to measure time in the medieval and early Modern

⁴⁰⁵Daniela Brišnik, Tone Ravnikar: Grad Šalek. Kulturni center Ivana Napatnika, Založništvo Pozoj, Velenje, 1999, str. XIV, 39.

Age Europe.⁴⁰⁶ Even after the occurrence of mechanical clocks, sundials were indispensable during the entire 19th century and used to check/set unreliable and expensive mechanical clocks which frequently broke down.

The ivory sundial from Šalek has the shape of diptych dial: two rectangular plates (leaves) are joined by two pivots (šarnir) so the sundial opens/closes as a lying book or double picture. Thus, it can be folded into the form of a small flat box suitable for carrying in the pocket. Owners kept sundials in small leather pouches or cases. Ivory flap pocket sundials were popular in the 16th and the 17th centuries - "they were a quintessential Renaissance 'gadget' [*luxury item*] - the name "watch" underestimates their ambition and creativity – it was an equivalent of a smartphone of the 16th century with a multitude of applications."⁴⁰⁷

When the watch opens, the thread between both plates inside strains as a gnomon that casts shadow to the dial and also ensures that the watch is opened at the right angle. Since the shadow falls upon different latitudes of the Earth under different angles, the design of the watch had to be adapted to the location of use in order to be accurate. That is why some large and more complex models have holes for the thread at several heights and lists of places for the user to know where to place the thread and thus "set" the sundial.⁴⁰⁸ Two dials are on both inside surfaces: on the vertical plane with Roman numerals and on the horizontal plane with Arabic numerals.

The bottom plate has a round indent for a (lost) glazed compass, which was used to align the watch according to the north celestial pole = levelling with the rotation axis of the Earth.⁴⁰⁹ At the bottom of the indent, there are remnants of markings visible between the circular traces of rotation, i.e. SE (septentriones = north), ME (meridies = south), OR (oriens = east), OC (occidens = west) and a line, with which the magnetic needle had to be aligned and which is deviated by approximately 4 degrees. In the indent for the compass, the master watchmaker sometimes impressed his own mark. The watch needed to be held horizontally during use.

The watch has two locks: one to be fixed in the closed and the other to be fixed in the open position, when in use. The bottom plate has a profile on the edge, to which the top plate was fixed.

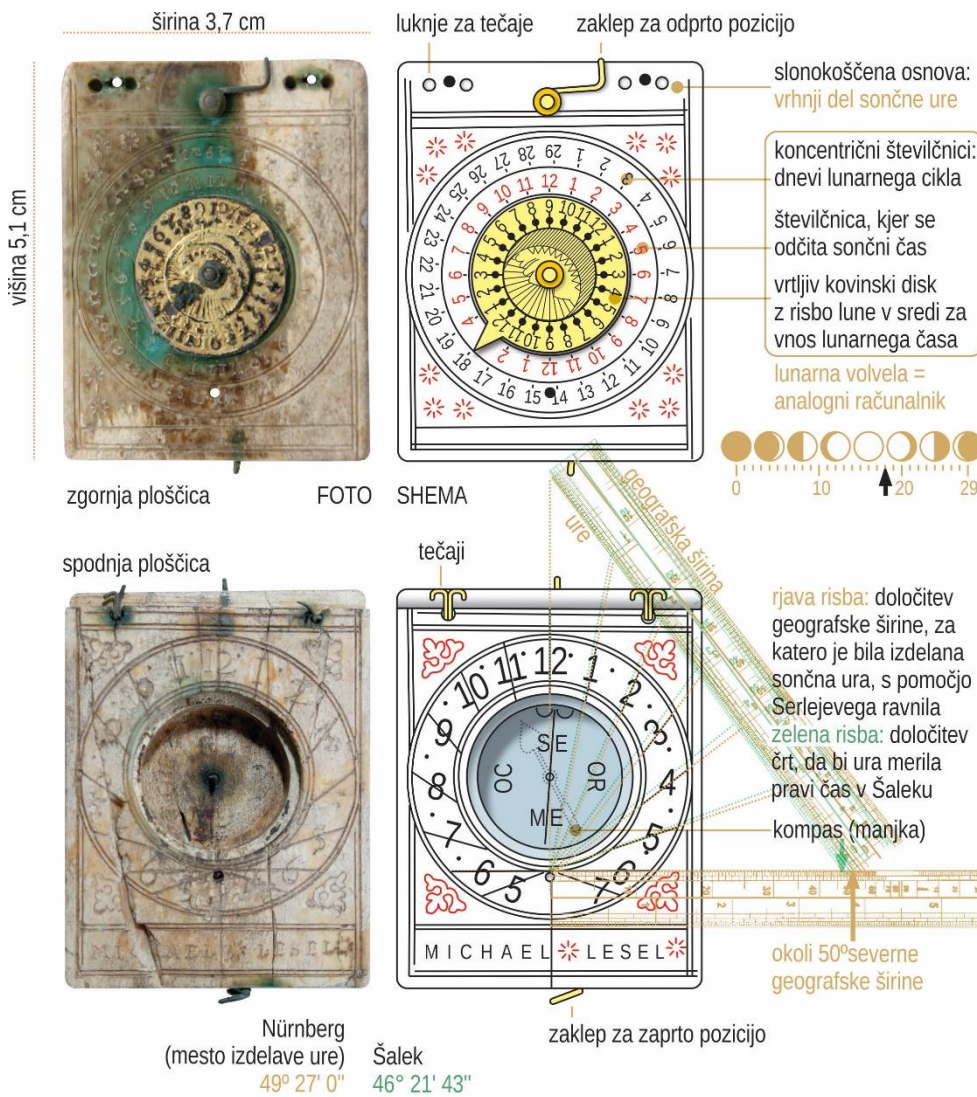
The watch is made of solid ivory and therefore very valuable—only wealthy traders and nobles could afford watches made of ivory or silver, cheaper models were made of wood and copper. Ivory is very durable and can be easily repaired. Mathematical markings and decorations were engraved (cut into)/imprinted (hewed in, hallmarked) into a smooth surface, and the cuts were filled with different colours—often red, black and green hues. Colours are no longer visible, the appearance of the watch is changed due to old age of the discoloured ivory and green copper stains.

⁴⁰⁶<https://www.mhs.ox.ac.uk/epact/article.php?ArticleID=17>; https://www.lot-art.com/auction-lots/Presumably-English-ivory-pocket-sundial-with-compass-Back-engraved-with-city-names-front-with/9121-presumably_english-19.4-bruun

⁴⁰⁷<https://www.hsm.ox.ac.uk/diptych-sundial-and-portrait-of-lewis-evans>

⁴⁰⁸https://www.liverpoolmuseums.org.uk/kids/games-quizzes/sun/sd1_moreinfo.html

⁴⁰⁹<https://ehive.com/collections/3918/objects/84059/sundial-diptych-pocket-ivory-and-brass>



Reconstruction of the lunar volvelle on the cover of the watch and verification of the dial with the Serle ruler. Drawing R.P.

There is the so-called lunar volvelle⁴¹⁰ indicated on the lid of the sundial from Šalek (frequently the lunar volvelle was imprinted on the bottom side of the sundial, while the top was covered by the compass with a wind rose) which was used to harmonise lunar and solar time. The lunar volvelle (wheel map) consists of a perforated metal disc with a smiling moon in the side view, and the dial for lunar time surrounding it. The motif was imprinted on the metal (engraved in more expensive models) and gilded. The disk could be rotated. It is surrounded also by two additional concentric dials: the outer scale represents the days of the lunar cycle, while the inner scale shows the solar cycle. Today, a triangular hand is missing on the disc at number 12; the hand was also long and reached to the outer ring of the dial. The numbers on the outer dial are turned outside, while the number on the inner dial are facing inward. Construction points are also seen.

⁴¹⁰Lloyd distinguishes between lunar dials and lunar volvelles. Steven A. Lloyd: Lunar Volvelles and Moondials in Baroque Germany. Journal for the History of Astronomy, Vol.20, NO.2/61/JUN, P.121, 1989. <http://adsabs.harvard.edu/full/1989JHA....20..121L>

They were used by the watchmaker master to determine positions of numbers: outer ring had to be divided into 29 parts (day of the lunar cycle = 12.3 degrees), while the inner ring was divided into 24 parts (hours of the day = 15 degrees, two series from 1 to 12). Both dials start with 1 at the same point and increase the value to the right. Finally, the sundial was set to the 18th day after the new moon = 3 days after the full moon.



Master craftsman sign
Michaela Lesla⁴¹¹



An example of the lunar volvelle with a clearly visible image of the moon.

If the moon was sufficiently bright at night and the user knew what day it was in the lunar month, the sundial could also be used at night. The instrument was opened and the shadow of the gnomon cast by the moonlight: this was lunar time. Then the sundial was closed and lunar time was converted to solar time using the lunar volvelle. The rotating disc and its hand were set to an appropriate day according to the last new moon on the outer dial of the volvelle. Then the read hour had to be found on the innermost – bronze dial for lunar time and the right time was read (solar time) on the middle scale, which was usually red. Volvelle – an early example of analogue computer⁴¹² - replaced a mathematical operation: however, 49 minutes had to be added to the read (lunar) time for each day in the lunar cycle in order to get the right time.⁴¹³

Michael Lesel imprinted his name on the sundial. At the beginning of the 17th century, the Lesel family was one of the six most important families of the so-called compass makers (Kompassmacher – at that time the word *Kompass* meant portable sundial with a compass) where the craft was passed on from generation to generation. These families were Ducher, Troschel, Miller, Karner, Lesel in Reinmann,⁴¹⁴ and often their members intermarried.⁴¹⁵

Many sundials of Michael Lesel are larger and significantly more complex than the Šalek sundial and have many different types of dials and rotating discs as a bonus which provide for reading various extra (exotic) information: the season, total length of day (Quantitas Diei), the time according to the time systems used at the time (the Italian system started to count hours from 1 to 24 at the sunset; the Babylon system started to count hours from 1 to 24 at the sunrise; the normal system counts the hours twice from 1 to 12, i.e. at midnight and at noon)⁴¹⁶, where the Sun is in the zodiac + other lunar data, the date of traditional Julian calendar and the date of the new Gregorian calendar, which was gradually adopted from 1582 to the middle of the 18th century⁴¹⁷ ... hours can be adjusted for use at different locations, the instructions for use are written ... These complex sundials - as contemporary "stylish" computer games - offer more possibilities as the user usually used, and follow the luxury fashion trends. Lesel's sundials were also very lavishly decorated with different attractive and colourful decoration motifs: plant tendrils and fruit, animals, dishes, landscapes, sun faces, winds and putti which with hourglasses, skulls and snakes remind us about the unstoppable passing of time and omnipresence of death (in the spirit of Latin proverbs written on sundials

⁴¹¹Sundial from the Harvard University Collection of the Historical Scientific Instruments, No. 7559

<http://waywiser.fas.harvard.edu/objects/3013/rectangular-ivory-diptych-sundial;jsessionid=DA9F3F0EBA997EAC7E0C416C7E100DEE?ctx=01bf4a67-62eb-46b8-9612-663c8c513088&idx=0>

⁴¹²<https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Volvelle>

⁴¹³<https://www.mhs.ox.ac.uk/epact/article.php?ArticleID=17>: Robert van Gent: Sundial. For volvelles: Lloyd: Lunar Volvelles.

⁴¹⁴Steven Lloyd: Ivory Diptych Sundials, 1570-1750, Harvard University. Collection of Historical Scientific Instruments, P. 45

⁴¹⁵Hester Higton: Sundials: An Illustrated History of Portable Dials. Philip Wilson Publishers, 2001.

⁴¹⁶320026818_These_Are_Not_Your_Mother's_Sundials_Or_Time_and_Astronomy's_Authority: Sara J. Schechner.

<http://www.antique-horology.net/Editorial/schechner.pdf>

⁴¹⁷<https://www.mfah.org/art/detail/90778?returnUrl=%2Fart%2Fsearch%3Fclassification%3DMiscellaneous>

of other makers: Sic transit gloria mundi – Thus passes worldly glory; Hora fugit, mors venit – Time passes, death advances, Tempore omnia mutantur – Time changes everything, Soli deo gloria – Glory to God alone, etc.). Miniature luxury Renaissance scientific instruments were changed into artistic items.



More complex sundial of Michael Lesel, source: web⁴¹⁸



1: 1613-1629, 91 x 71 mm
Collection of Historical Scientific Instruments, Harvard University

2: 1629, 117 x 78 mm
History of Science Museum, Oxford

3: 1612, 111 x 72 mm
The Royal Museum, Greenwich

4: 1600-1650, 111 x 70 mm
Landesmuseum Württemberg

5: 1609, 94 x 53 mm
The British Museum, London

The Šalek sundial is one of the most basic (and therefore affordable) models—due to its small size (sundial measures approximately only 5 x 4 cm) there is almost no room for other features⁴¹⁹ - it is very similar to many sundials which were later made by the Karners' workshop⁴²⁰ - similar design, pivots and pins and decorations (trefoils, little suns). The similarity of design is not surprising since Lesen married into the Karner family.⁴²¹

⁴¹⁸1: <http://waywiser.fas.harvard.edu/objects/3013/rectangular-ivory-diptych-sundial?ctx=4ad9a8a7-0f06-4097-b0f0-683988a22d35&idx=0>

2: <http://www.mhs.ox.ac.uk/collections/imu-search-page/record-details/?TitInventoryNo=80367&querytype=field&thumbnails=on>

3: <https://collections.rmg.co.uk/collections/objects/10600.html>

4: <https://bildarchiv.landesmuseum-stuttgart.de/P/Bildarchiv/231696/231696.jpg>

5:

https://www.britishmuseum.org/research/collection_online/collection_object_details/collection_image_gallery.aspx?partid=1&assetid=386533001&objectid=55159

⁴¹⁹The sundial of the same maker and analogue shape as the Šalek sundial was auctioned in 2009 at the Bloss auction house in Merzhaus. https://www.bloss-auktionen.de/seiten/Katalog_liste_new.php?auktion=A50&language=delhre&page=38&decode=true&printVersion=printVersion

⁴²⁰Royal Museums Greenwich, ID AST0414,

⁴²¹Lloyd, Ivory Diptych, str. 78. <https://bawue.museum-digital.de/index.php?t=people&id=64659>



Karner
konec 17. stol.
na prodaj na spletu

Albrecht Karner
1650
na prodaj na spletu

Sundials,
similar to the
one
from Šalek

zgodnje 18. stol.
do sredina 18. stol.
Leonhard Andreas Karner
National Maritime
Museum,
Greenwich, London

Of course, we have to ask ourselves whether the sundial from Šalek was accurate. No, in Šalek it was not. With so-called reverse planning, we can establish for which latitude the sundial was made by using the Serle ruler⁴²². The ruler, which was used for making sundials for over 250 years, has the ratio for hours and the ratio for latitude harmonised. The lines on the dial marking the hours are extended. Subsequently, the ruler is leaned against the corners on both rectangular lines (from hour 6 and 12) and continuously slides along both lines until the extended lines from the dial cover the lines on the ruler. The point is marker on the horizontal line and the distance is measured from the respective point to the hole for gnomon: this value is around 50 on this sundial, meaning that it was designed to be used at locations of this latitude. One location is in particular conspicuous: Nuremberg in Germany. In addition to Paris and Dieppe and Augsburg and Munich, Nuremberg was the leading European centre for making and trading sundials during the 1600–1650 period; there Michael Lesel made this sundial. And, yes, in Nuremberg, this sundial was accurate... the latitude of Nuremberg is $49^{\circ}27'0''^{423}$, while the latitude of Šalek is $46^{\circ}21'43''^{424}$. The rough raw material for sundials—elephant tusks—came from Africa, while the final products were part of global trade. Similar examples of flap sundials are kept in Adler Planetarium in Chicago, the Harvard University Collection of the Historical Scientific Instruments (82 pieces), the Wipple Museum in Cambridge, National Maritime Museum in Greenwich, etc.⁴²⁵

Let us finish with what we can read between the lines: in the 17th century, people used this sundial to measure and live a somewhat different time than we have today. Today, all the hours are equally long throughout the year, while sometimes people oriented by the Sun and the hours of the daylight time were a lot longer in summer than in winter⁴²⁶—only at the equinoxes were the hours as long as they are today

⁴²²https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dialing_scales

⁴²³<https://sl.wikipedia.org/wiki/N%C3%BCrnberg>

⁴²⁴https://sl.wikipedia.org/wiki/Grad_%C5%A0alek

⁴²⁵http://michel.lalos.free.fr/cadrans_solaires/doc_cadrans/cadrans_portatifs/cs_diptyques_nuremberg.html

⁴²⁶<http://www.counton.org/museum/floor2/gallery4/gal3p1.html>

IV.2: Why is St Christopher in Šalek depicted as the provincial prince?



St Christopher, the parish church of St Andrew, Šalek, kept by the Velenje Museum. Photo, Velenje Museum.

Special items of sculpture work in the church in Šalek are two statues of St Christopher (height 92cm) and St Nicholas (height 98cm), which are both kept at the Velenje Museum. The statues stood at the top of the altar crown in the form of a Gothic transparent gable (Wimperg). The statues and the crown are the central part of the old, late Gothic whole and were later (1617) used on the "golden altar". Emilijan Cevc writes that their creation was decided in the aesthetic canon of fine plastic of the Danube school, which was being established in Upper Austria and Styria during the first half of the 16th century.⁴²⁷



The top part of the large altar in Šalek before the statues were relocated to the museum

Christopher is portrayed carrying the baby Jesus on his left hand. In his right hand, there is a knotty stick missing, which is, however, still visible in the old photos: the stick was broken to splinters at the middle, which is consistent with the legend of the saint: the task of the giant Ophoros was to carry the travellers across the river. One night, he hears tiny voice from another bank and wades across the water and puts the crying baby on his shoulder. With every step across the river, the baby is getting heavy: the great giant leans on the stick and the stick breaks; the giant is surprised: Baby, you're so heavy, I feel like I am carrying the whole world! The baby laughs: Like you said, so it is – I am Jesus the Saviour, and I bear all the sins of the world. Then baby immerses the giant in the water, baptises him and tells him to be named Christophoros - the bearer of Christ from now on. And that he should plant the

⁴²⁷Cevc, Kiparstvo, 62, 64.

broken stick into the slope: instantly, it miraculously grew green and blossomed and bore fruit.

To this point, the portrayal of the Christophoros complies with the legendary tradition which is supposed to originate precisely in the south Alpine area.⁴²⁸ But what is completely unusual are the Christophoros' clothes: on many depictions, the giant is wearing a simple cape or just a sash around his waist, his hair is held up by a pad of woven fabric. Šalek's Christopher is definitively not adequately dressed to carry people across the water: his is wearing an elaborate hat, trimmed with ermine skins, and the coat with wide overcoat made of ermine skins with black tail tops. In order to prevent the coat from getting get soaked, the angles are tucked into the belt. Christopher also has straight and artistically curled hair, and his beard is combed into two prongs. The legend does not mention that St Christopher was of noble birth. According to the Dress Code of the Maximilian I, Holy Roman Emperor from 1519, who prescribed the types of cloths and fur to be worn by certain groups of people also in the Slovenian territory, the ermine and sable fur was considered a sign of the privileged and was used only for clothing of the highest ranks of nobility – rulers as a status symbol and a sign of prestige.⁴²⁹ Therefore, the headgear and coat of Christ are not usual pieces of clothing, but rather ruling insignia – purple princely/(arch)duke hat (in German: Kurhut⁴³⁰ / Herzogshut) and coat: Christopher is depicted as a provincial prince, or vice versa, the provincial prince as Christopher.

This kind of iconography, where the ruler is declared as the 'Carrier of Christ' (Chisto-phorus), has been relatively rare in sculpture, while analogies can be found in painting. The most famous is probably the fragment of a late Gothic fresco above the side portal of the cathedral in Graz (1464),⁴³¹ where St Christopher is supposed to be portrayed with facial features and clothes of Emperor Frederick III,⁴³² which commissioned the building and decoration of the church.



St Christopher, cathedral in Graz

The beginning of the personification of St Christopher with local noblemen/commissioners of paintings are evident for example in the painting of St Christopher in the chapel of Lichtenberg Castle (near Stuttgart, Germany, in the second quarter of the 13th century), where the saint bears the Lichtenberger's coat of arms

⁴²⁸<https://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Christophorus>

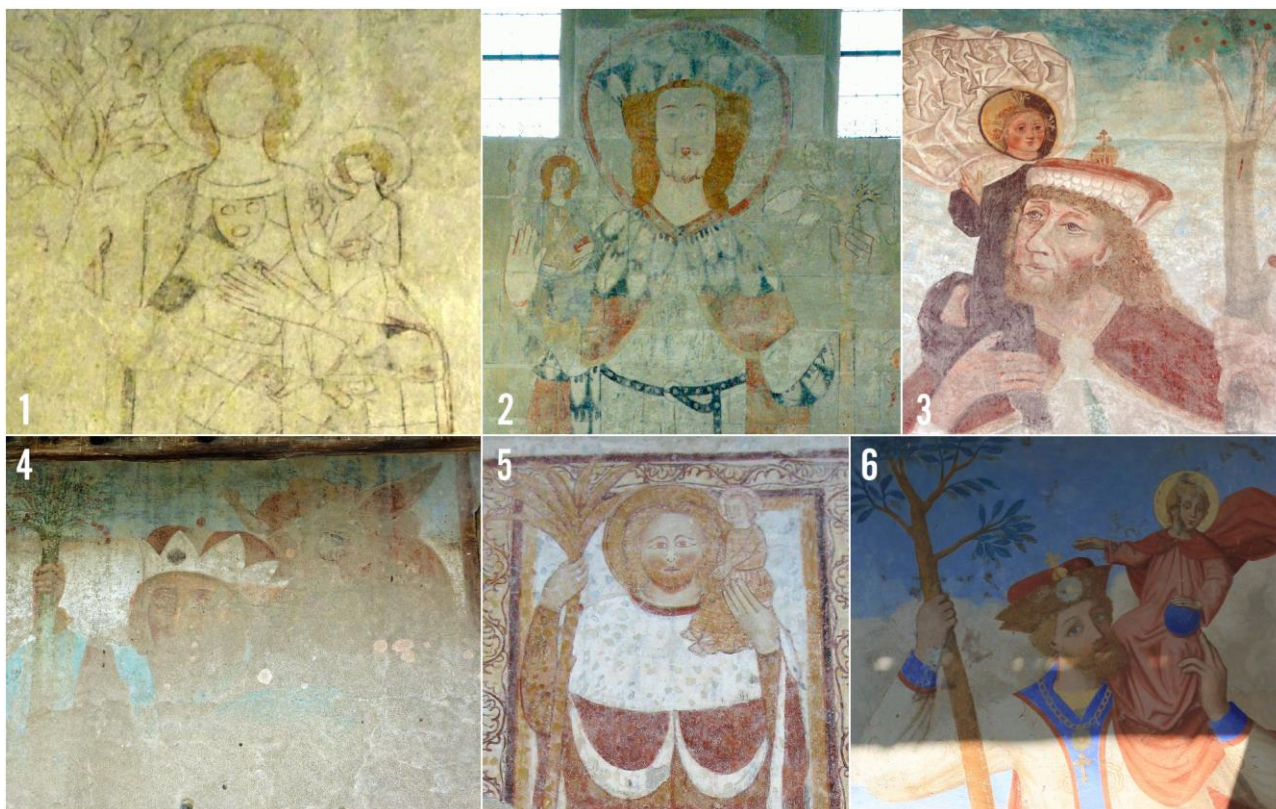
⁴²⁹Vlasta Cah – Žerovnik: Mehka dlaka - ostri spori. IN: Dnevnik, 3/1/2009. <https://www.dnevnik.si/1042233535/vec-vsebin/1042233535> . Also: Saša Bojc: Razstava francoske visoke mode v Parizu. **Interesting details from the history of clothing in the Slovenian territory are revealed by the curator, dr. Mateja Kos from the National Museum of Slovenia.** <https://www.delo.si/druzba/panorama/razstava-francoske-visoke-mode-v-parizu.html> . Also: Sergij Vilfan: Predpisi o obleki in blagu v policijskih redih 16. stoletja. pp. 27, 28. http://www.etno-muzej.si/files/etnolog/pdf/Slovenski_etnograf_19_1949_vilfan_predpisi.pdf.

⁴³⁰<http://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kurhut>

⁴³¹https://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Grazer_Dom

⁴³²https://www.meinbezirk.at/graz/c-lokales/grazer-dom-auf-augenhoehe-mit-kaiser-friedrich-iii_a3554940

on his chest (1).⁴³³ St Christopher is dressed as a provincial prince in the church in Schöngrabern (around 1350),⁴³⁴ where he perhaps embodies the margrave Saint Leopold III/ Leopold the Good, the patron of Lower Austria (2)⁴³⁵. The series of depiction of St Christopher in princely robes is continued in St Christopher in the St Vincent and St Christopher church in Heiligenblut (Austria, 1470–80) (3), in the ossuary in Weißenkirchen in der Wachau (Austria) (4), on the church in Masone (Italy)⁴³⁶ (4), the tradition dates almost all the way to the modern time with Christopher's frescos by the painter Medard Skuk from the beginning of the 20th century in Železna kapla (1910)⁴³⁷ (6), in Griffen⁴³⁸, in Globasnica.⁴³⁹



Depictions of St Christopher as a nobleman/ruler

According to E. Cevc, St. Christopher in Šalek was supposedly created between 1525 and 1530, while F. Stele believed that creating of his clothing was similar to the works of the Renaissance painter Cranach.⁴⁴⁰

There was a large picture of St Christopher on the external wall of the Šalek church, on the diagonal line of the presbytery, while the stone savings box with an iron lid still stands by the church. The members of Christopher's brotherhood⁴⁴¹ put money into the box against drinking and swearing. They had to dismount their horses and say their prayers at the Christopher's image. For a short period, the church was also named after St Christopher.⁴⁴²

⁴³³https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Burg_Lichtenberg_-_Burgkapelle_-_Christophorus.jpg?uselang=de

⁴³⁴https://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pfarrkirche_Sch%C3%B6ngrabern

⁴³⁵http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Sch%C3%B6ngrabern_Christophorus.jpg?uselang=de; <https://www.flickr.com/photos/112388998@N03/12013114366/>; <https://sl.wikipedia.org/wiki/Babenber%C5%BEani>

⁴³⁶[https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/Category:St._Michael_\(Mazon\)#/media/File:StMichaelFresco1.JPG](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/Category:St._Michael_(Mazon)#/media/File:StMichaelFresco1.JPG)

⁴³⁷https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Eisenkappel_-_St_Margaretha_-_Christophorus2.JPG

⁴³⁸https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Kirche_Lind_bei_Griffen2.JPG?uselang=de

⁴³⁹http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Kirche_Wackendorf_-_Chrisotphorus.JPG?uselang=de

⁴⁴⁰Stele, Zapiski XXII (9. 8. 1923), str. 1-2.

⁴⁴¹'At the start of the century, the Styria, Carinthia and Carniola nobles lived so dissolutely and indecently that the Styria land governor, baron Siegmund von Dietrichstein decided to cure the habit of swearing, drinking and other sins among the brotherhood of St Christopher in Graz on 22 June 1517.' Orožen, Celska, 126.

⁴⁴²Poles et al., Sakralna.

The haircut and the style of combing the beard into two prongs are similar to, for example, the depiction of Ernest the Iron on his tombstone.⁴⁴³ The bare feet of the prince Christopher indicate a hint to humility, required for "bearing Christ", but definitively it is an explicit statement of the provincial prince supporting the Catholic side during the time of Reformation; Protestants did not recognise miracles and did not like the worshipping of saints.



St Leopold III, the patron of Austria⁴⁴⁴ – example of the garment of the provincial prince worn by St. Christopher in Šalek.



Ernst the Iron with carefully arranged hair and beard similar to the St Christopher in Šalek⁴⁴⁵

Perhaps a very peculiar sculpture of St Christopher may be associated with the fact that Šalek Castle was also owned by the provincial prince at one time. When?

According to some records, the Counts of Celje acquired the Šalek Castle in their possession = allodium.⁴⁴⁶ However, after the extinction of the Counts of Celje, the castle was not immediately (as we would expect according to the succession agreement with the Habsburgs) passed into the possession of the principality: supposedly, the Bishop of Krka still granted Šalek in fief (according to the fief records of the bishop from Krka, the castle was held in fief by Sigmund Sobraški). The replacement of the head owner (the Krka diocese – the Habsburgs) is still evident from the information that the provincial prince supposedly granted the castle in fief to Erazem Raumschüssl.⁴⁴⁷

Something else is also important: Christopher holds Jesus and Jesus holds the globe, the sign of ruling power. Is this perhaps the visualisation of the thought on the divine origin of the world order = that the ruler receives the power from/through God?

⁴⁴³https://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ernst_der_Eiserne

⁴⁴⁴ https://sl.wikipedia.org/wiki/Babenber%C5%BEani#/media/Slika:Herzog_Leopold_III._Babenberg.jpg

⁴⁴⁵ https://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ernst_der_Eiserne#/media/Datei:Herzog_Ernst_tomb-slab.jpg

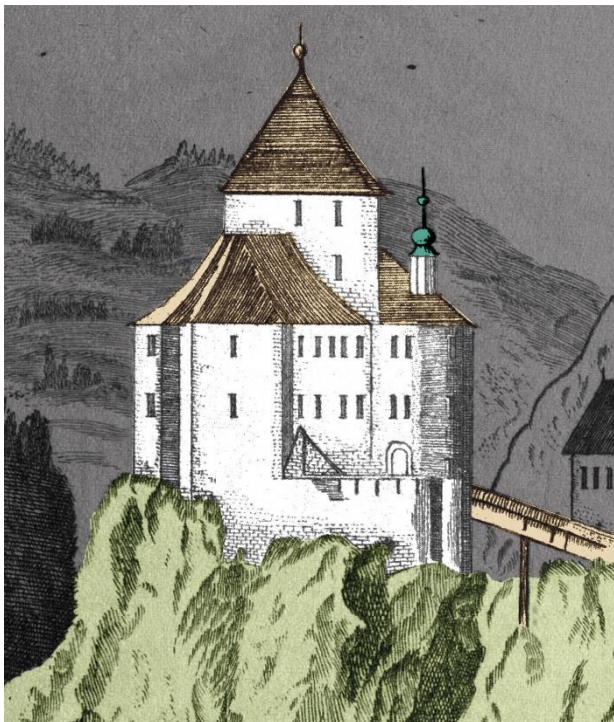
⁴⁴⁶https://sl.wikipedia.org/wiki/Grad_%C5%A0alek

⁴⁴⁷Pirchegger,

IV.3: Damage restoration tender after the castle fire in 1676

In 1975, Dr Ivan Stopar wrote about Šalek Castle⁴⁴⁸: *'In the middle of winter, the castle burned down, and building expert Primož Pšerničnik from Šoštanj estimated the damage to 2866 florins on 10 January 1676.'*

Stopar quoted the data from the work of Rochus Kolbach "Štajerski stavbni mojster" (Styria building master), on which he wrote: *'The author has systematically examined the fire reports of Styria castles in the 17th and the 18th century and released a large collection of warnings on this material. He was interested in the names of the local building masters, reporters, and complete acts have not been published so far.'*



Šalek Castle in the Vischer's Topography, cut, coloured.

Dr. Kolbach wrote in the record of damage about the buildings caused by fire and their reconstruction: *'When in the 17th or the 18th century a "wildfire", lightning or kindled fire turned the church, vicarage, mill, farm and also the castle to ashes, a great part of costs for reconstruction could be covered from "open assets". In any case, the parish priest or landlord addressed such a request to the Province. The construction and carpentry master had to make a preliminary inspection and present an estimate of costs. All these documents were kept in their archive group "fire damage" (Feyerschäden). They are kept in ten large cardboards (Schuber).⁴⁴⁹ And then in cardboard 146 he wrote: '1676, 10 January, Šalek, castle 1866 fl., Primus Pschernitschnikh, Šoštanj'.*

When I asked the Styria Regional Archive in Graz whether they still have this document, they sent me free copies as an aid for my research (thank you!)—now this document is marked as Laa. A., Antiquum, XIII, Sch. 146.

⁴⁴⁸Stopar, Ivan: *Grad in naselje Šalek*. Turistično društvo Velenje, Velenje 1975, p. 24.

⁴⁴⁹ Kolbach dr. Rochus: *Feuerschaden – Wiederbauer*. IN: Steirische Baumeister, tausendundein Werkmann, Domverlag, Graz 1961, p. 463, 467.

The document indicates that the then owner of Šalek Castle was Otto Friedrich, baron Teuffenbach, that seven arches were completely destroyed in the fire, while the other arches deteriorated to a degree that they had to be reinforced with clamps (schließen) in order to prevent the roof and roofing from completely burning down and to select expert craftsmen and address them to present estimates according to their knowledge and for specific craft to repair the damage in Šalek Castle. The separate "specification" says: Primož Pšerničnik (Primosch Pschernitschnighk), inhabitant of a borough and mason in Šoštanj, unveils that his work with material will come to . . . 400 F[lorin] – Krz [kreutzers - Austrian copper coins] Urban Napotnik (Napotnickh), inhabitant of a borough and potter in Šoštanj, for three destroyed stoves . . . 22 F 30 Krz

Anton Perčnik (Anthoni Pertschnighk), inhabitant of a borough and carpenter in Šoštanj, says that the payment for his masterwork [meisterschaft] and the required large and small wood, also for boards, shingles [schinkel] /.../ will amount to . . . 1650 F – Krz

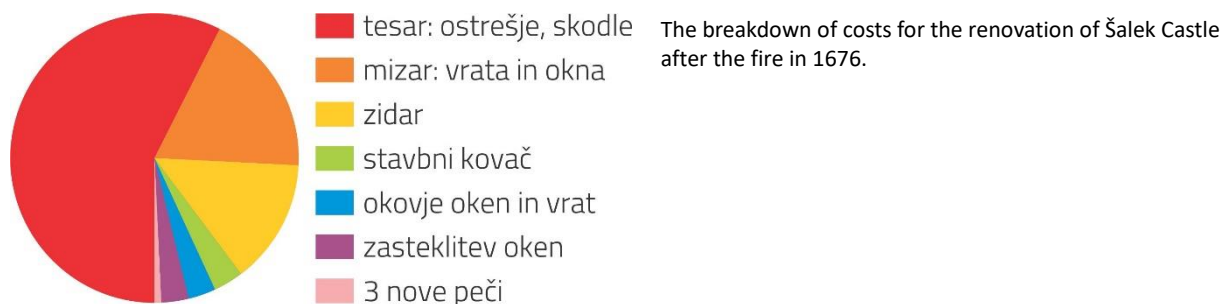
Andrej Novak (Andrea Nouackh), inhabitant of a borough and blacksmith in Šoštanj from iron for locksmithing [eysen zum schlößen] and for his work [macherlohn] . . . 94 F – Krz

Matjaž Markud (Mathias Markhudt?), citizen and carpenter in Slovenj Gradec in for /.../ 13 doors and 15 windows, for the wood and work required . . . 523 F 30 Krz

Gašper Naberžnik (Casper Naberssigg), locksmith and citizen in Slovenj Gradec, frames for 13 doors and 15 windows . . . 89 F 30 Krz

Andrej Grilec (Andreas Grilliz), glazier and citizen in Celje, for glass for 15 windows and payment for work . . . 87 F – Krz
2866 F 30 Krz in total.

After the fire in 1676, the castle had to be substantially renovated. New roofing and roof were the most expensive – almost two thirds of all costs. Almost a quarter of the cost was charged by the carpenter for new windows and doors, a little less by the mason, while a blacksmith, locksmith and glazier were also needed.



Adding up the costs they miscalculated by 40 kreutzers.

We also know a little more about the castle itself: if seven arches were ruined and the others were in poor condition, this means that the majority of rooms in the castle were arched: today only the remnants of the arches are seen in three floors of the three-sided tower. Three stoves, 13 doors and 15 windows were newly constructed. Vischer's graphics depict 20 windows, and presumably, there were at least twice that number on the facades which are not visible: this means that at least one third of new windows were needed. They intended to cover the roof with shingles, since a safer (more fire-proof) stony – slate-like or brick roofing was most likely too expensive or not available in the middle of winter; since it is heavier more wood would be required for the roofing.

In 1681, only five years after the fire, the Topography of Styria by Georg Mattheus Vischer was published, which includes the first precise depiction of Šalek Castle⁴⁵⁰ (a slightly older map of the same author shows a scarce image of the castle). The shiny image of the completely renovated castle from 1681 is supposedly the work of Šoštanj craftsmen: a carpenter Perčnik and a mason Pšerničnik; perhaps also a potter Napotnik made one of the stove tiles found by archaeologists, and a blacksmith Novak, whose nails were found. The

⁴⁵⁰Vischer, Matthäus Vischer: *Styriae Ducatus Fertillissimi Nova Geographica Descriptio*. 1678.

https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Styriae_Ducatus_Fertillissimi_Nova_Geographica_Descriptio_1678.jpg, 18/11/2017.

old budget definitively indicates that Šoštanj was the centre of construction industry in the Šalek Valley in the second half of the 17th century; no craftsmen from Velenje or its surroundings were included, experts came from Slovenj Gradec and Celje.

PRIMOSCH PSCHERNITSCHNIGKH


Names of craftsmen, Šoštanj borough inhabitants, who placed offers for renovating the Šalek Castle.

URBAN NAPOTNICKH


ANTHONI PERTSCHNIGKH


ANDREA NOUACKH


Two years after the fire (1678), the castle lord, baron Otton Friedrich Teuffenbach and his wife Jožefa Katarina Elizabeta, nee Ruess von Ruessenstein zu Wiederdries, had a son Ferdinand Leopold, who is mentioned as an owner of Šalek Castle in 1708; he had sisters Anna Cecilia and Frančiška Elizabeta and a brother Karl. In 1722, Georg Ignaz, baron Mauerburg supposedly acquired the castle by marrying Jožefa Katarina Elizabeta, nee baroness Teuffenbach. However, he died in 1730, barely 42 years old. Karel Leopold, baron Gabelkhoven, became the guardian of his underage daughters. He managed to cunningly get the castle in the possession of his family and almost immediately joined the Šalek lordship with the Turn lordship. Due to their occupations, the Gabelkhovens no longer lived in the Šalek Valley in the third quarter of the 18th century and Turn and Šalek estates were rented out. In 1785, when the cartographer Bodoky measured and surveyed the area of Šalek for the first (Josephine) military map of the Habsburg Monarchy, he wrote that Šalek Castle was a solid building on a small hill, but it was not large and could accommodate fifty soldiers at most. Soon after this, the castle was abandoned and the roofs removed, since the buildings with roofs were taxed. Only the roof over the oldest, triangular tower was kept. They also sold the entire fertile land: according to the Franciscan cadastre from 1825, the owner of the Šalek estate only had in his possession forests on Koželj and two plots with the castle core: the Šalek ruin and the ruin of one service facility in the castle yard. Therefore, historical records (at present) do not confirm the folk tradition written by the knights Gadolla which was referenced by almost all who described the castle: supposedly, the castle burnt down for the second time during the ball of the castle lords and ladies when it was struck by lightning and turned it into ashes (around 1770).⁴⁵¹

⁴⁵¹Poles, Rok: The draft of the management plan and the long-term vision, the Šalek Castle ruins, Slovenia. Working version 2 June 2019, and sources referenced in it. The Interreg Central Europe RUINS project.

IV.4: Further research possibilities

1. Verification whether there is a record on the death of the baron Oton Teuffenbach, which could provide new information on Šalek. Perhaps there are records on some other owners.
2. Verification of the data which were sent from Šalek for tax assessment purposes.
3. Copy, transcription and translation of complete replies to the Gotha questionnaire
4. The Theresian cadastre of Šalek
5. Provincial information board: when the estate was sold, who was the seller
6. Overview of places where Šalek is supposed to have possession, according to the Josephine cadastre.
7. Re-examination of Turn Castle in order to identify two missing portals from Šalek – a semicircular portal for cabbage cellar (is this the portal from the outside? Was the inscription removed?) and the rectangular portal to the washhouse with a small sign
8. Timeline of stove tiles
9. reproductions, transcripts, translations, comments of all key documents associated with Šalek
10. Did the Counts of Celje actually achieved that Šalek became allodium?
11. When was Šalek exactly taken over by the provincial prince
12. Missing coats-of-arms of the owners
13. ...